Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality

FIRST ADDENDUM TO THIRD EDITION

Volume 1
Recommendations

World Health
Organization

WHO Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

World Health Organization.
Guidelines for drinking-water quality [electronic resource] :
incorporating first addendum. Vol. 1, Recommendations. – 3rd ed.

Electronic version for the Web.

1.Potable water – standards. 2.Water – standards. 3.Water quality – standards. 4.Guidelines. I. Title.

ISBN 92 4 154696 4 (NLM classification: WA 675)

© World Health Organization 2006

All rights reserved. Publications of the World Health Organization can be obtained from WHO Press, World Health Organization, 20 Avenue Appia, 1211 Geneva 27, Switzerland (tel: +41 22 791 3264; fax: +41 22 791 4857; email: bookorders@who.int). Requests for permission to reproduce or translate WHO publications – whether for sale or for noncommercial distribution – should be addressed to WHO Press, at the above address (fax: +41 22 791 4806; email: permissions@who.int).

The designations employed and the presentation of the material in this publication do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the World Health Organization concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries. Dotted lines on maps represent approximate border lines for which there may not yet be full agreement.

The mention of specific companies or of certain manufacturers' products does not imply that they are endorsed or recommended by the World Health Organization in preference to others of a similar nature that are not mentioned. Errors and omissions excepted, the names of proprietary products are distinguished by initial capital letters.

All reasonable precautions have been taken by WHO to verify the information contained in this publication. However, the published material is being distributed without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied. The responsibility for the interpretation and use of the material lies with the reader. In no event shall the World Health Organization be liable for damages arising from its use.

Contents

Preface xv
Acknowledgements xviii
Acronyms and abbreviations used in text xx

1. Introduction 1
1.1 General considerations and principles 1
1.1.1 Microbial aspects 3
1.1.2 Disinfection 5
1.1.3 Chemical aspects 6
1.1.4 Radiological aspects 7
1.1.5 Acceptability aspects 7
1.2 Roles and responsibilities in drinking-water safety management 8
1.2.1 Surveillance and quality control 8
1.2.2 Public health authorities 10
1.2.3 Local authorities 11
1.2.4 Water resource management 12
1.2.5 Drinking-water supply agencies 13
1.2.6 Community management 14
1.2.7 Water vendors 15
1.2.8 Individual consumers 15
1.2.9 Certification agencies 16
1.2.10 Plumbing 17
1.3 Supporting documentation to the Guidelines 18

2. The Guidelines: a framework for safe drinking-water 22
2.1 Framework for safe drinking-water: requirements 22
2.1.1 Health-based targets 24
2.1.2 System assessment and design 25
2.1.3 Operational monitoring 26
2.1.4 Management plans, documentation and communication 27
2.1.5 Surveillance of drinking-water quality 28

2.2 Guidelines for verification 29
  2.2.1 Microbial water quality 29
  2.2.2 Chemical water quality 30
2.3 National drinking-water policy 31
  2.3.1 Laws, regulations and standards 31
  2.3.2 Setting national standards 32
2.4 Identifying priority drinking-water quality concerns 34
  2.4.1 Assessing microbial priorities 35
  2.4.2 Assessing chemical priorities 35

3. Health-based targets **37**
3.1 Role and purpose of health-based targets 37
3.2 Types of health-based targets 39
  3.2.1 Specified technology targets 41
  3.2.2 Performance targets 41
  3.2.3 Water quality targets 42
  3.2.4 Health outcome targets 43
3.3 General considerations in establishing health-based targets 43
  3.3.1 Assessment of risk in the framework for safe drinking-water 44
  3.3.2 Reference level of risk 44
  3.3.3 Disability-adjusted life-years (DALYs) 45

4. Water safety plans **48**
4.1 System assessment and design 51
  4.1.1 New systems 52
  4.1.2 Collecting and evaluating available data 53
  4.1.3 Resource and source protection 56
  4.1.4 Treatment 59
  4.1.5 Piped distribution systems 61
  4.1.6 Non-piped, community and household systems 64
  4.1.7 Validation 67
  4.1.8 Upgrade and improvement 67
4.2 Operational monitoring and maintaining control 68
  4.2.1 Determining system control measures 68
  4.2.2 Selecting operational monitoring parameters 68
  4.2.3 Establishing operational and critical limits 70
  4.2.4 Non-piped, community and household systems 71
4.3 Verification 71
  4.3.1 Verification of microbial quality 72
  4.3.2 Verification of chemical quality 73
  4.3.3 Water sources 73
  4.3.4 Piped distribution systems 74

4.3.5 Verification for community-managed supplies 74
4.3.6 Quality assurance and quality control 75
4.4 Management procedures for piped distribution systems 76
4.4.1 Predictable incidents ("deviations") 77
4.4.2 Unforeseen events 77
4.4.3 Emergencies 78
[4.4.4 Deleted in first addendum to third edition]
4.4.5 Preparing a monitoring plan 80
4.4.6 Supporting programmes 80
4.5 Management of community and household water supplies 81
4.6 Documentation and communication 82

5. Surveillance 84
5.1 Types of approaches 85
5.1.1 Audit 86
5.1.2 Direct assessment 87
5.2 Adapting approaches to specific circumstances 88
5.2.1 Urban areas in developing countries 88
5.2.2 Surveillance of community drinking-water supplies 88
5.2.3 Surveillance of household treatment and storage systems 89
5.3 Adequacy of supply 90
5.3.1 Quantity (service level) 90
5.3.2 Accessibility 91
5.3.3 Affordability 92
5.3.4 Continuity 92
5.4 Planning and implementation 93
5.5 Reporting and communicating 95
5.5.1 Interaction with community and consumers 96
5.5.2 Regional use of data 96

6. Application of the Guidelines in specific circumstances 99
6.1 Large buildings 99
6.1.1 Health risk assessment 100
6.1.2 System assessment 100
6.1.3 Management 101
6.1.4 Monitoring 101
6.1.5 Independent surveillance and supporting programmes 102
6.1.6 Drinking-water quality in health care facilities 102
6.1.7 Drinking-water quality in schools and day care centres 103
6.2 Emergencies and disasters 104
6.2.1 Practical considerations 105
6.2.2 Monitoring 106
6.2.3 Microbial guidelines 107

6.2.4 Sanitary inspections and catchment mapping 108
6.2.5 Chemical and radiological guidelines 108
6.2.6 Testing kits and laboratories 109
6.3 Safe drinking-water for travellers 109
6.4 Desalination systems 111
6.5 Packaged drinking-water 113
6.5.1 Safety of packaged drinking-water 113
6.5.2 Potential health benefits of bottled drinking-water 114
6.5.3 International standards for bottled drinking-water 114
6.6 Food production and processing 115
6.7 Aircraft and airports 116
6.7.1 Health risks 116
6.7.2 System risk assessment 116
6.7.3 Operational monitoring 116
6.7.4 Management 117
6.7.5 Surveillance 117
6.8 Ships 117
6.8.1 Health risks 117
6.8.2 System risk assessment 118
6.8.3 Operational monitoring 119
6.8.4 Management 119
6.8.5 Surveillance 120

7. Microbial aspects **121**
7.1 Microbial hazards associated with drinking-water 121
7.1.1 Waterborne infections 121
7.1.2 Persistence and growth in water 124
7.1.3 Public health aspects 125
7.2 Health-based target setting 126
7.2.1 Health-based targets applied to microbial hazards 126
7.2.2 Risk assessment approach 126
7.2.3 Risk-based performance target setting 131
7.2.4 Presenting the outcome of performance target development 133
7.2.5 Issues in adapting risk-based performance target setting to national/local circumstances 133
7.2.6 Health outcome targets 134
7.3 Occurrence and treatment of pathogens 135
7.3.1 Occurrence 136
7.3.2 Treatment 137
7.4 Verification of microbial safety and quality 142
7.5 Methods of detection of faecal indicator bacteria 143

7.6 Identifying local actions in response to microbial water quality problems and emergencies 144
  7.6.1 Boil water and water avoidance advisories 144
  7.6.2 Actions following an incident 144c

8. Chemical aspects **145**
8.1 Chemical hazards in drinking-water 145
8.2 Derivation of chemical guideline values 147
  8.2.1 Approaches taken 148
  8.2.2 Threshold chemicals 149
  8.2.3 Alternative approaches 152
  8.2.4 Non-threshold chemicals 154
  8.2.5 Data quality 154
  8.2.6 Provisional guideline values 155
  8.2.7 Chemicals with effects on acceptability 156
  8.2.8 Non-guideline chemicals 156
  8.2.9 Mixtures 156
8.3 Analytical aspects 157
  8.3.1 Analytical achievability 157
  8.3.2 Analytical methods 158
8.4 Treatment 166
  8.4.1 Treatment achievability 166
  8.4.2 Chlorination 171
  8.4.3 Ozonation 172
  8.4.4 Other disinfection processes 172
  8.4.5 Filtration 173
  8.4.6 Aeration 175
  8.4.7 Chemical coagulation 175
  8.4.8 Activated carbon adsorption 176
  8.4.9 Ion exchange 177
  8.4.10 Membrane processes 178
  8.4.11 Other treatment processes 178
  8.4.12 Disinfection by-products – process control measures 179
  8.4.13 Treatment for corrosion control 180
8.5 Guideline values for individual chemicals, by source category 184
  8.5.1 Naturally occurring chemicals 184
  8.5.2 Chemicals from industrial sources and human dwellings 185
  8.5.3 Chemicals from agricultural activities 187
  8.5.4 Chemicals used in water treatment or from materials in contact with drinking-water 188
  8.5.5 Pesticides used in water for public health purposes 190
  8.5.6 Cyanobacterial toxins 192
8.6 Identifying local actions in response to chemical water quality problems and emergencies 196
  8.6.1 Trigger for action 196a
  8.6.2 Investigating the situation 196a
  8.6.3 Talking to the right people 196b

8.6.4 Informing the public 196b
8.6.5 Evaluating the significance to public health and individuals 196b
8.6.6 Determining appropriate action 196e
8.6.7 Consumer acceptability 196e
8.6.8 Ensuring remedial action, preventing recurrence and updating the water safety plan 196e
8.6.9 Mixtures 196f
8.6.10 Water avoidance advisories 196f

9. Radiological aspects **197**
9.1 Sources and health effects of radiation exposure 198
9.1.1 Radiation exposure through drinking-water 200
9.1.2 Radiation-induced health effects through drinking-water 200

9.2 Units of radioactivity and radiation dose 201
9.3 Guidance levels for radionuclides in drinking-water 202
9.4 Monitoring and assessment for dissolved radionuclides 204
    9.4.1 Screening of drinking-water supplies 204
    9.4.2 Strategy for assessing drinking-water 205
    9.4.3 Remedial measures 205
9.5 Radon 206
    9.5.1 Radon in air and water 206
    9.5.2 Risk 207
    9.5.3 Guidance on radon in drinking-water supplies 207
9.6 Sampling, analysis and reporting 207
    9.6.1 Measuring gross alpha and gross beta activity concentrations 207
    [9.6.2 Deleted in first addendum to third edition]
    9.6.3 Measuring radon 208
    9.6.4 Sampling 209
    9.6.5 Reporting of results 209

10. Acceptability aspects **210**
10.1 Taste, odour and appearance 211
    10.1.1 Biologically derived contaminants 211
    10.1.2 Chemically derived contaminants 213
    10.1.3 Treatment of taste, odour and appearance problems 219
10.2 Temperature 220

11. Microbial fact sheets **221**
11.1 Bacterial pathogens 222
    11.1.1 *Acinetobacter* 222
    11.1.2 *Aeromonas* 224
    11.1.3 *Bacillus* 225
    11.1.4 *Burkholderia pseudomallei* 226
    11.1.5 *Campylobacter* 228
    11.1.6 *Escherichia coli* pathogenic strains 229
    11.1.7 *Helicobacter pylori* 231
    11.1.8 *Klebsiella* 232
    11.1.9 *Legionella* 233
    11.1.10 *Mycobacterium* 235
    11.1.11 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 237
    11.1.12 *Salmonella* 239
    11.1.13 *Shigella* 240
    11.1.14 *Staphylococcus aureus* 242
    11.1.15 *Tsukamurella* 243

11.1.16 *Vibrio* 244
11.1.17 *Yersinia* 246
11.2 Viral pathogens 247
11.2.1 Adenoviruses 248
11.2.2 Astroviruses 250
11.2.3 Caliciviruses 251
11.2.4 Enteroviruses 253
11.2.5 Hepatitis A virus 254
11.2.6 Hepatitis E virus 256
11.2.7 Rotaviruses and orthoreoviruses 257
11.3 Protozoan pathogens 259
11.3.1 *Acanthamoeba* 259
11.3.2 *Balantidium coli* 261
11.3.3 *Cryptosporidium* 262
11.3.4 *Cyclospora cayetanensis* 264
11.3.5 *Entamoeba histolytica* 265
11.3.6 *Giardia intestinalis* 267
11.3.7 *Isospora belli* 268
11.3.8 Microsporidia 270
11.3.9 *Naegleria fowleri* 272
11.3.10 *Toxoplasma gondii* 274
11.4 Helminth pathogens 275
11.4.1 *Dracunculus medinensis* 276
11.4.2 *Fasciola* spp. 278
11.5 Toxic cyanobacteria 279
11.6 Indicator and index organisms 281
11.6.1 Total coliform bacteria 282
11.6.2 *Escherichia coli* and thermotolerant coliform bacteria 284
11.6.3 Heterotrophic plate counts 285
11.6.4 Intestinal enterococci 287
11.6.5 *Clostridium perfringens* 288
11.6.6 Coliphages 289
11.6.7 *Bacteroides fragilis* phages 292
11.6.8 Enteric viruses 294

12. Chemical fact sheets **296**
12.1 Acrylamide 296
12.2 Alachlor 297
12.3 Aldicarb 298
12.4 Aldrin and dieldrin 300
12.5 Aluminium 301
12.6 Ammonia 303

12.7 Antimony 304
12.8 Arsenic 306
12.9 Asbestos 308
12.10 Atrazine 308
12.11 Barium 310
12.12 Bentazone 311
12.13 Benzene 312
12.14 Boron 313
12.15 Bromate 315
12.16 Brominated acetic acids 316
12.17 Cadmium 317
12.18 Carbofuran 319
12.19 Carbon tetrachloride 320
12.20 Chloral hydrate (trichloroacetaldehyde) 321
12.21 Chlordane 323
12.22 Chloride 324
12.23 Chlorine 325
12.24 Chlorite and chlorate 326
12.25 Chloroacetones 329
12.26 Chlorophenols (2-chlorophenol, 2,4-dichlorophenol, 2,4,6-trichlorophenol) 329
12.27 Chloropicrin 331
12.28 Chlorotoluron 332
12.29 Chlorpyrifos 333
12.30 Chromium 334
12.31 Copper 335
12.32 Cyanazine 337
12.33 Cyanide 339
12.34 Cyanogen chloride 340
12.35 2,4-D (2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid) 340
12.36 2,4-DB 342
12.37 DDT and metabolites 343
12.38 Dialkyltins 345
12.39 1,2-Dibromo-3-chloropropane (DBCP) 346
12.40 1,2-Dibromoethane (ethylene dibromide) 347
12.41 Dichloroacetic acid 349
12.42 Dichlorobenzenes (1,2-dichlorobenzene, 1,3-dichlorobenzene, 1,4-dichlorobenzene) 350
12.43 1,1-Dichloroethane 352
12.44 1,2-Dichloroethane 353
12.45 1,1-Dichloroethene 354
12.46 1,2-Dichloroethene 355

12.47 Dichloromethane 357
12.48 1,2-Dichloropropane (1,2-DCP) 358
12.49 1,3-Dichloropropane 359
12.50 1,3-Dichloropropene 360
12.51 Dichlorprop (2,4-DP) 361
12.52 Di(2-ethylhexyl)adipate 362
12.53 Di(2-ethylhexyl)phthalate 363
12.54 Dimethoate 364
12.54(a) 1,4-Dioxane 366
12.55 Diquat 366a
12.56 Edetic acid (EDTA) 367
12.57 Endosulfan 368
12.58 Endrin 369
12.59 Epichlorohydrin 370
12.60 Ethylbenzene 372
12.61 Fenitrothion 373
12.62 Fenoprop (2,4,5-TP; 2,4,5-trichlorophenoxy propionic acid) 374
12.63 Fluoride 375
12.64 Formaldehyde 377
12.65 Glyphosate and AMPA 379
12.66 Halogenated acetonitriles (dichloroacetonitrile, dibromoacetonitrile, bromochloroacetonitrile, trichloroacetonitrile) 380
12.67 Hardness 382
12.68 Heptachlor and heptachlor epoxide 383
12.69 Hexachlorobenzene (HCB) 385
12.70 Hexachlorobutadiene (HCBD) 386
12.71 Hydrogen sulfide 387
12.72 Inorganic tin 388
12.73 Iodine 389
12.74 Iron 390
12.75 Isoproturon 391
12.76 Lead 392
12.77 Lindane 394
12.78 Malathion 396
12.79 Manganese 397
12.80 MCPA [4-(2-methyl-4-chlorophenoxy)acetic acid] 399
12.81 Mecoprop (MCPP; [2(2-methyl-chlorophenoxy) propionic acid]) 401
12.82 Mercury 402
12.83 Methoxychlor 403
12.84 Methyl parathion 404

12.84(a) Methyl *tertiary*-butyl ether (MTBE) 405
12.85 Metolachlor 405a

12.86 Microcystin-LR 407
12.87 Molinate 408
12.88 Molybdenum 410
12.89 Monochloramine 411
12.90 Monochloroacetic acid 412
12.91 Monochlorobenzene 413
12.92 MX 414
12.93 Nickel 415
12.94 Nitrate and nitrite 417
12.95 Nitrilotriacetic acid (NTA) 420
12.96 Parathion 421
12.97 Pendimethalin 422
12.98 Pentachlorophenol (PCP) 424
12.99 Permethrin 425
12.99(a) Petroleum products 426a
12.100 pH 426b
12.101 2-Phenylphenol and its sodium salt 427
12.102 Polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) 428
12.103 Propanil 430
12.104 Pyriproxyfen 431
12.105 Selenium 432
12.106 Silver 434
12.107 Simazine 435
12.108 Sodium 436
12.109 Styrene 437
12.110 Sulfate 438
12.111 2,4,5-T (2,4,5-trichlorophenoxyacetic acid) 439
12.112 Terbuthylazine (TBA) 440
12.113 Tetrachloroethene 442
12.114 Toluene 443
12.115 Total dissolved solids (TDS) 444
12.116 Trichloroacetic acid 445
12.117 Trichlorobenzenes (total) 446
12.118 1,1,1-Trichloroethane 447
12.119 Trichloroethene 448
12.120 Trifluralin 450
12.121 Trihalomethanes (bromoform, bromodichloromethane, dibromochloromethane, chloroform) 451
12.122 Uranium 454
12.123 Vinyl chloride 456
12.124 Xylenes 458
12.125 Zinc 459

Annex 1 Bibliography **461**

Annex 2 Contributors to the development of the third edition of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* **467**

[**Annex 3 Deleted in first addendum to third edition**]

Annex 4 Chemical summary tables **488**

Index 494

Preface

Access to safe drinking-water is essential to health, a basic human right and a component of effective policy for health protection.

The importance of water, sanitation and hygiene for health and development has been reflected in the outcomes of a series of international policy forums. These have included health-oriented conferences such as the International Conference on Primary Health Care, held in Alma-Ata, Kazakhstan (former Soviet Union), in 1978. They have also included water-oriented conferences such as the 1977 World Water Conference in Mar del Plata, Argentina, which launched the water supply and sanitation decade of 1981–1990, as well as the Millennium Development Goals adopted by the General Assembly of the United Nations (UN) in 2000 and the outcome of the Johannesburg World Summit for Sustainable Development in 2002. Most recently, the UN General Assembly declared the period from 2005 to 2015 as the International Decade for Action, "Water for Life."

Access to safe drinking-water is important as a health and development issue at a national, regional and local level. In some regions, it has been shown that investments in water supply and sanitation can yield a net economic benefit, since the reductions in adverse health effects and health care costs outweigh the costs of undertaking the interventions. This is true for major water supply infrastructure investments through to water treatment in the home. Experience has also shown that interventions in improving access to safe water favour the poor in particular, whether in rural or urban areas, and can be an effective part of poverty alleviation strategies.

In 1983–1984 and in 1993–1997, the World Health Organization (WHO) published the first and second editions of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* in three volumes as successors to previous WHO International Standards. In 1995, the decision was made to pursue the further development of the Guidelines through a process of rolling revision. This led to the publication of addenda to the second edition of the Guidelines, on chemical and microbial aspects, in 1998, 1999 and 2002; the publication of a text on *Toxic Cyanobacteria in Water*; and the preparation of expert reviews on key issues preparatory to the development of a third edition of the Guidelines.

In 2000, a detailed plan of work was agreed upon for development of the third edition of the Guidelines. As with previous editions, this work was shared between WHO Headquarters and the WHO Regional Office for Europe (EURO). Leading the process of the development of the third edition were the Programme on Water Sanitation and Health within Headquarters and the European Centre for Environment and Health, Rome, within EURO. Within WHO Headquarters, the Programme on Chemical Safety provided inputs on some chemical hazards, and the Programme on Radiological Safety contributed to the section dealing with radiological aspects. All six WHO Regional Offices participated in the process.

This revised Volume 1 of the Guidelines is accompanied by a series of publications providing information on the assessment and management of risks associated with microbial hazards and by internationally peer-reviewed risk assessments for specific chemicals. These replace the corresponding parts of the previous Volume 2. Volume 3 provides guidance on good practice in surveillance, monitoring and assessment of drinking-water quality in community supplies. The Guidelines are also accompanied by other publications explaining the scientific basis of their development and providing guidance on good practice in implementation.

This volume of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* explains requirements to ensure drinking-water safety, including minimum procedures and specific guideline values, and how those requirements are intended to be used. The volume also describes the approaches used in deriving the guidelines, including guideline values. It includes fact sheets on significant microbial and chemical hazards. The development of this third edition of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* includes a substantive revision of approaches to ensuring microbial safety. This takes account of important developments in microbial risk assessment and its linkages to risk management. The development of this orientation and content was led over an extended period by Dr Arie Havelaar (RIVM, Netherlands) and Dr Jamie Bartram (WHO).

Since the second edition of WHO's *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality*, there have been a number of events that have highlighted the importance and furthered understanding of various aspects of drinking-water quality and health. These are reflected in this third edition of the Guidelines.

These Guidelines supersede those in previous editions (1983–1984, 1993–1997 and addenda in 1998, 1999 and 2002) and previous International Standards (1958, 1963 and 1971). The Guidelines are recognized as representing the position of the UN system on issues of drinking-water quality and health by "UN-Water," the body that coordinates amongst the 24 UN agencies and programmes concerned with water issues. This edition of the Guidelines further develops concepts, approaches and information in previous editions:

- Experience has shown that microbial hazards continue to be the primary concern in both developing and developed countries. Experience has also shown the value of a systematic approach towards securing microbial safety. This edition includes significantly expanded guidance on ensuring microbial safety of drinking-water, building on principles – such as the multiple-barrier approach and the importance of source protection – considered in previous editions. The Guidelines are accompanied by documentation describing approaches towards fulfilling requirements for microbial safety and providing guidance to good practice in ensuring that safety is achieved.

- Information on many chemicals has been revised. This includes information on chemicals not considered previously; revisions to take account of new scientific information; and, in some cases, lesser coverage where new information suggests a lesser priority.
- Experience has also shown the necessity of recognizing the important roles of many different stakeholders in ensuring drinking-water safety. This edition includes discussion of the roles and responsibilities of key stakeholders in ensuring drinking-water safety.
- The need for different tools and approaches in supporting safe management of large piped supplies versus small community supplies remains relevant, and this edition describes the principal characteristics of the different approaches.
- There has been increasing recognition that only a few key chemicals cause large-scale health effects through drinking-water exposure. These include fluoride, arsenic and nitrate. Other chemicals, such as lead, selenium and uranium, may also be significant under certain conditions. Interest in chemical hazards in drinking-water was highlighted by recognition of the scale of arsenic exposure through drinking-water in Bangladesh and elsewhere. The revised Guidelines and associated publications provide guidance on identifying local priorities and on management of the chemicals associated with large-scale effects.
- WHO is frequently approached for guidance on the application of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* to situations other than community supplies or managed utilities. This revised edition includes information on application of the Guidelines to several specific circumstances and is accompanied by texts dealing with some of these in greater detail.

The *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* are kept up to date through a process of rolling revision, which leads to periodic release of documents that may add to or supersede information in this volume. This version of the Guidelines integrates the third edition, which was published in 2004, with the first addendum to the third edition, published in 2005.

The Guidelines are addressed primarily to water and health regulators, policy-makers and their advisors, to assist in the development of national standards. The Guidelines and associated documents are also used by many others as a source of information on water quality and health and on effective management approaches.

Acknowledgements

The preparation of the current edition of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* and supporting documentation covered a period of eight years and involved the participation of over 490 experts from 90 developing and developed countries. The contributions of all who participated in the preparation and finalization of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality*, including those individuals listed in Annex 2, are gratefully acknowledged.

The work of the following Working Groups was crucial to the development of the third edition of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality*:

Microbial aspects working group

Ms T. Boonyakarnkul, Department of Health, Thailand (*Surveillance and control*)
Dr D. Cunliffe, SA Department of Human Services, Australia (*Public health*)
Prof. W. Grabow, University of Pretoria, South Africa (*Pathogen-specific information*)
Dr A. Havelaar, RIVM, The Netherlands (Working Group coordinator; *Risk assessment*)
Prof. M. Sobsey, University of North Carolina, USA (*Risk management*)

Chemical aspects working group

Mr J.K. Fawell, United Kingdom (*Organic and inorganic constituents*)
Ms M. Giddings, Health Canada (*Disinfectants and disinfection by-products*)
Prof. Y. Magara, Hokkaido University, Japan (*Analytical achievability*)
Dr E. Ohanian, EPA, USA (*Disinfectants and disinfection by-products*)
Dr P. Toft, Canada (*Pesticides*)

Protection and control working group

Dr I. Chorus, Umweltbundesamt, Germany (*Resource and source protection*)
Dr J. Cotruvo, USA (*Materials and additives*)
Dr G. Howard, DfID, Bangladesh, and formerly Loughborough University, United Kingdom (*Monitoring and assessment*)
Mr P. Jackson, WRc-NSF, United Kingdom (*Treatment achievability*)

The WHO coordinators were:

—Dr J. Bartram, Coordinator, Programme on Water Sanitation and Health, WHO Headquarters, and formerly WHO European Centre for Environmental Health
—Mr P. Callan, Programme on Water Sanitation and Health, WHO Headquarters, on secondment from National Health and Medical Research Council, Australia

Ms C. Vickers acted as a liaison between the Working Groups and the International Programme on Chemical Safety, WHO Headquarters.

Ms Marla Sheffer of Ottawa, Canada, was responsible for the editing of the Guidelines. Mr Hiroki Hashizume provided support to the work of the Chemical Aspects Working Group. Ms Mary-Ann Lundby, Ms Grazia Motturi and Ms Penny Ward provided secretarial and administrative support throughout the process and to individual meetings.

The preparation of these Guidelines would not have been possible without the generous support of the following, which is gratefully acknowledged: the Ministry of Health of Italy; the Ministry of Health, Labour and Welfare of Japan; the National Health and Medical Research Council, Australia; the Swedish International Development Cooperation Agency, Sweden; and the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Acronyms and abbreviations used in text

AAS	atomic absorption spectrometry
AD	Alzheimer disease
ADI	acceptable daily intake
AES	atomic emission spectrometry
AIDS	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
AMPA	aminomethylphosphonic acid

BaP	benzo[*a*]pyrene
BDCM	bromodichloromethane
BMD	benchmark dose
bw	body weight

CAC	Codex Alimentarius Commission
CAS	Chemical Abstracts Service
CICAD	Concise International Chemical Assessment Document
CSAF	chemical-specific adjustment factor
Ct	product of disinfectant concentration and contact time

DAEC	diffusely adherent *E. coli*
DALY	disability-adjusted life-year
DBCM	dibromochloromethane
DBCP	1,2-dibromo-3-chloropropane
DBP	disinfection by-product
DCA	dichloroacetic acid
DCB	dichlorobenzene
DCP	dichloropropane
DDT	dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane
DEHA	di(2-ethylhexyl)adipate
DEHP	di(2-ethylhexyl)phthalate
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid

EAAS	electrothermal atomic absorption spectrometry
EAEC	enteroaggregative *E. coli*
EBCT	empty bed contact time
EC	electron capture
ECD	electron capture detector
EDTA	edetic acid; ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid
EHC	Environmental Health Criteria monograph
EHEC	enterohaemorrhagic *E. coli*
EIEC	enteroinvasive *E. coli*
ELISA	enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
EPEC	enteropathogenic *E. coli*
ETEC	enterotoxigenic *E. coli*
EURO	WHO Regional Office for Europe
FAAS	flame atomic absorption spectrometry
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations
FD	fluorescence detector
FID	flame ionization detector
FPD	flame photodiode detector
GAC	granular activated carbon
GAE	granulomatous amoebic encephalitis
GC	gas chromatography
GL	guidance level (used for radionuclides in drinking-water)
GV	guideline value
HACCP	hazard analysis and critical control points
HAd	human adenovirus
HAstV	human astrovirus
HAV	hepatitis A virus
Hb	haemoglobin
HCB	hexachlorobenzene
HCBD	hexachlorobutadiene
HCH	hexachlorocyclohexane
HEV	hepatitis E virus
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HPC	heterotrophic plate count
HPLC	high-performance liquid chromatography
HRV	human rotavirus
HuCV	human calicivirus
HUS	haemolytic uraemic syndrome

IAEA	International Atomic Energy Agency
IARC	International Agency for Research on Cancer
IC	ion chromatography
ICP	inductively coupled plasma
ICRP	International Commission on Radiological Protection
IDC	individual dose criterion
IPCS	International Programme on Chemical Safety
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
JECFA	Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives
JMPR	Joint FAO/WHO Meeting on Pesticide Residues
K_{ow}	octanol/water partition coefficient
LI	Langelier Index
LOAEL	lowest-observed-adverse-effect level
MCB	monochlorobenzene
MCPA	4-(2-methyl-4-chlorophenoxy)acetic acid
MCPP	2(2-methyl-chlorophenoxy) propionic acid; mecoprop
metHb	methaemoglobin
MMT	methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl
MS	mass spectrometry
MTBE	methyl *tertiary*-butyl ether
MX	3-chloro-4-dichloromethyl-5-hydroxy-2(5H)-furanone
NAS	National Academy of Sciences (USA)
NOAEL	no-observed-adverse-effect level
NOEL	no-observed-effect level
NTA	nitrilotriacetic acid
NTP	National Toxicology Program (USA)
NTU	nephelometric turbidity unit
P/A	presence/absence
PAC	powdered activated carbon
PAH	polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbon
PAM	primary amoebic meningoencephalitis
PCP	pentachlorophenol
PCR	polymerase chain reaction
PD	photoionization detector
PMTDI	provisional maximum tolerable daily intake

PT	purge and trap
PTDI	provisional tolerable daily intake

PTWI	provisional tolerable weekly intake
PVC	polyvinyl chloride
QMRA	quantitative microbial risk assessment
RDL	reference dose level
RIVM	Rijksinstituut voor Volksgezondheid en Milieu (Dutch National Institute of Public Health and Environmental Protection)
RNA	ribonucleic acid
SI	Système international d'unités (International System of Units)
SOP	standard operating procedure
SPADNS	sulfo phenyl azo dihydroxy naphthalene disulfonic acid
TBA	terbuthylazine
TCB	trichlorobenzene
TCU	true colour unit
TD_{05}	tumorigenic dose$_{05}$, the intake or exposure associated with a 5% excess incidence of tumours in experimental studies in animals
TDI	tolerable daily intake
TDS	total dissolved solids
THM	trihalomethane
TID	thermal ionization detector
TPH	total petroleum hydrocarbons
UF	uncertainty factor
UNICEF	United Nations Children's Fund
UNSCEAR	United Nations Scientific Committee on the Effects of Atomic Radiation
USA	United States of America
US EPA	United States Environmental Protection Agency
UV	ultraviolet
UVPAD	ultraviolet photodiode array detector
WHO	World Health Organization
WHOPES	World Health Organization Pesticide Evaluation Scheme
WQT	water quality target
WSP	water safety plan
YLD	years of healthy life lost in states of less than full health, i.e., years lived with a disability
YLL	years of life lost by premature mortality

1
Introduction

1.1 General considerations and principles

The primary purpose of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* is the protection of public health.

Diseases related to contamination of drinking-water constitute a major burden on human health. Interventions to improve the quality of drinking-water provide significant benefits to health.

Water is essential to sustain life, and a satisfactory (adequate, safe and accessible) supply must be available to all. Improving access to safe drinking-water can result in tangible benefits to health. Every effort should be made to achieve a drinking-water quality as safe as practicable.

Safe drinking-water, as defined by the Guidelines, does not represent any significant risk to health over a lifetime of consumption, including different sensitivities that may occur between life stages. Those at greatest risk of waterborne disease are infants and young children, people who are debilitated or living under unsanitary conditions and the elderly. Safe drinking-water is suitable for all usual domestic purposes, including personal hygiene. The Guidelines are applicable to packaged water and ice intended for human consumption. However, water of higher quality may be required for some special purposes, such as renal dialysis and cleaning of contact lenses, or for certain purposes in food production and pharmaceutical use. Those who are severely immunocompromised may need to take additional steps, such as boiling drinking-water, due to their susceptibility to organisms that would not normally be of concern through drinking-water. The Guidelines may not be suitable for the protection of aquatic life or for some industries.

The Guidelines are intended to support the development and implementation of risk management strategies that will ensure the safety of drinking-water supplies through the control of hazardous constituents of water. These strategies may include national or regional standards developed from the scientific basis provided in the Guidelines. The Guidelines describe reasonable minimum requirements of safe practice to protect the health of consumers and/or derive numerical “guideline values” for constituents of water or indicators of water quality. In order to define mandatory limits, it is preferable to consider the guidelines in the context of local or national environmental, social, economic and cultural conditions.

The main reason for not promoting the adoption of international standards for drinking-water quality is the advantage provided by the use of a risk–benefit approach (qualitative or quantitative) in the establishment of national standards and regulations. Further, the Guidelines are best implemented through an integrated preventive management framework for safety applied from catchment to consumer. The Guidelines provide a scientific point of departure for national authorities to develop drinking-water regulations and standards appropriate for the national situation. In developing standards and regulations, care should be taken to ensure that scarce resources are not unnecessarily diverted to the development of standards and the monitoring of substances of relatively minor importance to public health. The approach followed in these Guidelines is intended to lead to national standards and regulations that can be readily implemented and enforced and are protective of public health.

The nature and form of drinking-water standards may vary among countries and regions. There is no single approach that is universally applicable. It is essential in the development and implementation of standards that the current and planned legislation relating to water, health and local government are taken into account and that the capacity to develop and implement regulations is assessed. Approaches that may work in one country or region will not necessarily transfer to other countries or regions. It is essential that each country review its needs and capacities in developing a regulatory framework.

The judgement of safety – or what is an acceptable level of risk in particular circumstances – is a matter in which society as a whole has a role to play. The final judgement as to whether the benefit resulting from the adoption of any of the guidelines and guideline values as national or local standards justifies the cost is for each country to decide.

Although the Guidelines describe a quality of water that is acceptable for lifelong consumption, the establishment of these Guidelines, including guideline values, should not be regarded as implying that the quality of drinking-water may be degraded to the recommended level. Indeed, a continuous effort should be made to maintain drinking-water quality at the highest possible level.

An important concept in the allocation of resources to improving drinking-water safety is that of incremental improvements towards long-term targets. Priorities set to remedy the most urgent problems (e.g., protection from pathogens; see section 1.1.1) may be linked to long-term targets of further water quality improvements (e.g., improvements in the acceptability of drinking-water; see section 1.1.5).

The basic and essential requirements to ensure the safety of drinking-water are a "framework" for safe drinking-water, comprising health-based targets established by a competent health authority; adequate and properly managed systems (adequate infrastructure, proper monitoring and effective planning and management); and a system of independent surveillance.

A holistic approach to drinking-water supply risk assessment and risk management increases confidence in the safety of drinking-water. This approach entails systematic assessment of risks throughout a drinking-water supply – from the catchment and its source water through to the consumer – and identification of the ways in which these risks can be managed, including methods to ensure that control measures are working effectively. It incorporates strategies to deal with day-to-day management of water quality, including upsets and failures.

The Guidelines are applicable to large metropolitan and small community piped drinking-water systems and to non-piped drinking-water systems in communities and in individual dwellings. The Guidelines are also applicable to a range of specific circumstances, including large buildings, travellers and conveyances.

The great majority of evident water-related health problems are the result of microbial (bacteriological, viral, protozoan or other biological) contamination. Nevertheless, an appreciable number of serious health concerns may occur as a result of the chemical contamination of drinking-water.

1.1.1 Microbial aspects

Securing the microbial safety of drinking-water supplies is based on the use of multiple barriers, from catchment to consumer, to prevent the contamination of drinking-water or to reduce contamination to levels not injurious to health. Safety is increased if multiple barriers are in place, including protection of water resources, proper selection and operation of a series of treatment steps and management of distribution systems (piped or otherwise) to maintain and protect treated water quality. The preferred strategy is a management approach that places the primary emphasis on preventing or reducing the entry of pathogens into water sources and reducing reliance on treatment processes for removal of pathogens.

The potential health consequences of microbial contamination are such that its control must always be of paramount importance and must never be compromised.

In general terms, the greatest microbial risks are associated with ingestion of water that is contaminated with human or animal (including bird) faeces. Faeces can be a source of pathogenic bacteria, viruses, protozoa and helminths.

Faecally derived pathogens are the principal concerns in setting health-based targets for microbial safety. Microbial water quality often varies rapidly and over a wide range. Short-term peaks in pathogen concentration may increase disease risks considerably and may trigger outbreaks of waterborne disease. Furthermore, by the time microbial contamination is detected, many people may have been exposed. For these reasons, reliance cannot be placed solely on end-product testing, even when frequent, to ensure the microbial safety of drinking-water.

Particular attention should be directed to a water safety framework and implementing comprehensive water safety plans (WSPs) to consistently ensure drinking-water safety and thereby protect public health (see chapter 4). Management of microbial drinking-water safety requires a system-wide assessment to determine potential hazards that can affect the system (see section 4.1); identification of the control measures needed to reduce or eliminate the hazards, and operational monitoring to ensure that barriers within the system are functioning efficiently (see section 4.2); and the development of management plans to describe actions taken under both normal and incident conditions. These are the three components of a WSP.

Failure to ensure drinking-water safety may expose the community to the risk of outbreaks of intestinal and other infectious diseases. Drinking-water-borne outbreaks are particularly to be avoided because of their capacity to result in the simultaneous infection of a large number of persons and potentially a high proportion of the community.

In addition to faecally borne pathogens, other microbial hazards (e.g., guinea worm [*Dracunculus medinensis*], toxic cyanobacteria and *Legionella*) may be of public health importance under specific circumstances.

The infective stages of many helminths, such as parasitic roundworms and flatworms, can be transmitted to humans through drinking-water. As a single mature larva or fertilized egg can cause infection, these should be absent from drinking-water. However, the water route is relatively unimportant for helminth infection, except in the case of the guinea worm.

Legionella bacteria are ubiquitous in the environment and can proliferate at the higher temperatures experienced at times in piped drinking-water distribution systems and more commonly in hot and warm water distribution systems. Exposure to *Legionella* from drinking-water is through inhalation and can be controlled through the implementation of basic water quality management measures in buildings and through the maintenance of disinfection residuals throughout the piped distribution system.

Public health concern regarding cyanobacteria relates to their potential to produce a variety of toxins, known as "cyanotoxins." In contrast to pathogenic bacteria, cyanobacteria do not proliferate within the human body after uptake; they proliferate only in the aquatic environment before intake. While the toxic peptides (e.g., microcystins) are usually contained within the cells and thus may be largely eliminated by filtration, toxic alkaloids such as cylindrospermopsin and neurotoxins are also released into the water and may break through filtration systems.

Some microorganisms will grow as biofilms on surfaces in contact with water. With few exceptions, such as *Legionella*, most of these organisms do not cause illness in healthy persons, but they can cause nuisance through generation of tastes and odours or discoloration of drinking-water supplies. Growth following drinking-water treatment is often referred to as "regrowth." It is typically reflected in measurement of increasing heterotrophic plate counts (HPC) in water samples. Elevated HPC occur especially in stagnant parts of piped distribution systems, in domestic plumbing, in some bottled water and in plumbed-in devices such as softeners, carbon filters and vending machines.

While water can be a very significant source of infectious organisms, many of the diseases that may be waterborne may also be transmitted by other routes, including person-to-person contact, droplets and aerosols and food intake. Depending on circumstance and in the absence of waterborne outbreaks, these routes may be more important than waterborne transmission.

Microbial aspects of water quality are considered in more detail in chapter 7, with fact sheets on specific microorganisms provided in chapter 11.

1.1.2 Disinfection

Disinfection is of unquestionable importance in the supply of safe drinking-water. The destruction of microbial pathogens is essential and very commonly involves the use of reactive chemical agents such as chlorine.

Disinfection is an effective barrier to many pathogens (especially bacteria) during drinking-water treatment and should be used for surface waters and for groundwater subject to faecal contamination. Residual disinfection is used to provide a partial safeguard against low-level contamination and growth within the distribution system.

Chemical disinfection of a drinking-water supply that is faecally contaminated will reduce the overall risk of disease but may not necessarily render the supply safe. For example, chlorine disinfection of drinking-water has limitations against the protozoan pathogens – in particular *Cryptosporidium* – and some viruses. Disinfection efficacy may also be unsatisfactory against pathogens within flocs or particles, which protect them from disinfectant action. High levels of turbidity can protect microorganisms from the effects of disinfection, stimulate the growth of bacteria and give rise to a significant chlorine demand. An effective overall management strategy incorporates multiple barriers, including source water protection and appropriate treatment processes, as well as protection during storage and distribution in conjunction with disinfection to prevent or remove microbial contamination.

The use of chemical disinfectants in water treatment usually results in the formation of chemical by-products. However, the risks to health from these by-products are extremely small in comparison with the risks associated with inadequate disinfection, and it is important that disinfection not be compromised in attempting to control such by-products.

Disinfection should not be compromised in attempting to control disinfection by-products (DBPs).

Some disinfectants such as chlorine can be easily monitored and controlled as a drinking-water disinfectant, and frequent monitoring is recommended wherever chlorination is practised.

Disinfection of drinking-water is considered in more detail in chapter 8, with fact sheets on specific disinfectants and DBPs provided in chapter 12.

1.1.3 Chemical aspects

The health concerns associated with chemical constituents of drinking-water differ from those associated with microbial contamination and arise primarily from the ability of chemical constituents to cause adverse health effects after prolonged periods of exposure. There are few chemical constituents of water that can lead to health problems resulting from a single exposure, except through massive accidental contamination of a drinking-water supply. Moreover, experience shows that in many, but not all, such incidents, the water becomes undrinkable owing to unacceptable taste, odour and appearance.

In situations where short-term exposure is not likely to lead to health impairment, it is often most effective to concentrate the available resources for remedial action on finding and eliminating the source of contamination, rather than on installing expensive drinking-water treatment for the removal of the chemical constituent.

There are many chemicals that may occur in drinking-water; however, only a few are of immediate health concern in any given circumstance. The priority given to both monitoring and remedial action for chemical contaminants in drinking-water should be managed to ensure that scarce resources are not unnecessarily directed towards those of little or no health concern.

Exposure to high levels of fluoride, which occurs naturally, can lead to mottling of teeth and, in severe cases, crippling skeletal fluorosis. Similarly, arsenic may occur naturally, and excess exposure to arsenic in drinking-water may result in a significant risk of cancer and skin lesions. Other naturally occurring chemicals, including uranium and selenium, may also give rise to health concern when they are present in excess.

The presence of nitrate and nitrite in water has been associated with methaemoglobinaemia, especially in bottle-fed infants. Nitrate may arise from the excessive application of fertilizers or from leaching of wastewater or other organic wastes into surface water and groundwater.

Particularly in areas with aggressive or acidic waters, the use of lead pipes and fittings or solder can result in elevated lead levels in drinking-water, which cause adverse neurological effects.

There are few chemicals for which the contribution from drinking-water to overall intake is an important factor in preventing disease. One example is the effect of fluoride in drinking-water in increasing prevention against dental caries. The Guidelines do not attempt to define minimum desirable concentrations for chemicals in drinking-water.

Guideline values are derived for many chemical constituents of drinking-water. A guideline value normally represents the concentration of a constituent that does not result in any significant risk to health over a lifetime of consumption. A number of provisional guideline values have been established based on the practical level of treatment achievability or analytical achievability. In these cases, the guideline value is higher than the calculated health-based value.

The chemical aspects of drinking-water quality are considered in more detail in chapter 8, with fact sheets on specific chemical contaminants provided in chapter 12.

1.1.4 Radiological aspects

The health risk associated with the presence of naturally occurring radionuclides in drinking-water should also be taken into consideration, although the contribution of drinking-water to total exposure to radionuclides is very small under normal circumstances.

Formal guideline values are not set for individual radionuclides in drinking-water. Rather, the approach used is based on screening drinking-water for gross alpha and gross beta radiation activity. While finding levels of activity above screening values does not indicate any immediate risk to health, it should trigger further investigation into determining the radionuclides responsible and the possible risks, taking into account local circumstances.

The guidance values recommended in this volume do not apply to drinking-water supplies contaminated during emergencies arising from accidental releases of radioactive substances to the environment.

Radiological aspects of drinking-water quality are considered in more detail in chapter 9.

1.1.5 Acceptability aspects

Water should be free of tastes and odours that would be objectionable to the majority of consumers.

In assessing the quality of drinking-water, consumers rely principally upon their senses. Microbial, chemical and physical water constituents may affect the appearance, odour or taste of the water, and the consumer will evaluate the quality and acceptability of the water on the basis of these criteria. Although these substances may have no direct health effects, water that is highly turbid, is highly coloured or has an objectionable taste or odour may be regarded by consumers as unsafe and may be rejected. In extreme cases, consumers may avoid aesthetically unacceptable but otherwise safe drinking-water in favour of more pleasant but potentially unsafe sources. It is therefore wise to be aware of consumer perceptions and to take into account both health-related guidelines and aesthetic criteria when assessing drinking-water supplies and developing regulations and standards.

Changes in the normal appearance, odour or taste of a drinking-water supply may signal changes in the quality of the raw water source or deficiencies in the treatment process and should be investigated.

Acceptability aspects of drinking-water quality are considered in more detail in chapter 10.

1.2 Roles and responsibilities in drinking-water safety management

Preventive management is the preferred approach to drinking-water safety and should take account of the characteristics of the drinking-water supply from catchment and source to its use by consumers. As many aspects of drinking-water quality management are often outside the direct responsibility of the water supplier, it is essential that a collaborative multiagency approach be adopted to ensure that agencies with responsibility for specific areas within the water cycle are involved in the management of water quality. One example is where catchments and source waters are beyond the drinking-water supplier's jurisdiction. Consultation with other authorities will generally be necessary for other elements of drinking-water quality management, such as monitoring and reporting requirements, emergency response plans and communication strategies.

> A preventive integrated management approach with collaboration from all relevant agencies is the preferred approach to ensuring drinking-water safety.

Major stakeholders that could affect or be affected by decisions or activities of the drinking-water supplier should be encouraged to coordinate their planning and management activities where appropriate. These could include, for example, health and resource management agencies, consumers, industry and plumbers. Appropriate mechanisms and documentation should be established for stakeholder commitment and involvement.

1.2.1 Surveillance and quality control

In order to protect public health, a dual-role approach, differentiating the roles and responsibilities of service providers from those of an authority responsible for independent oversight protective of public health ("drinking-water supply surveillance"), has proven to be effective.

Organizational arrangements for the maintenance and improvement of drinking-water supply services should take into account the vital and complementary roles of the agency responsible for surveillance and of the water supplier. The two functions of surveillance and quality control are best performed by separate and independent entities because of the conflict of interest that arises when the two are combined. In this:

- national agencies provide a framework of targets, standards and legislation to enable and require suppliers to meet defined obligations;
- agencies involved in supplying water for consumption by any means should be required to ensure and verify that the systems they administer are capable of delivering safe water and that they routinely achieve this; and
- a surveillance agency is responsible for independent (external) surveillance through periodic audit of all aspects of safety and/or verification testing.

In practice, there may not always be a clear division of responsibilities between the surveillance and drinking-water supply agencies. In some cases, the range of professional, governmental, nongovernmental and private institutions may be wider and more complex than that discussed above. Whatever the existing framework, it is important that clear strategies and structures be developed for implementing WSPs, quality control and surveillance, collating and summarizing data, reporting and disseminating the findings and taking remedial action. Clear lines of accountability and communication are essential.

> Surveillance of drinking-water quality can be defined as "the continuous and vigilant public health assessment and review of the safety and acceptability of drinking-water supplies" (WHO, 1976).

Surveillance is an investigative activity undertaken to identify and evaluate potential health risks associated with drinking-water. Surveillance contributes to the protection of public health by promoting improvement of the quality, quantity, accessibility, coverage (i.e., populations with reliable access), affordability and continuity of drinking-water supplies (termed "service indicators"). The surveillance authority must have the authority to determine whether a water supplier is fulfilling its obligations.

In most countries, the agency responsible for the surveillance of drinking-water supply services is the ministry of health (or public health) and its regional or departmental offices. In some countries, it may be an environmental protection agency; in others, the environmental health departments of local government may have some responsibility.

Surveillance requires a systematic programme of surveys, which may include auditing, analysis, sanitary inspection and/or institutional and community aspects. It should cover the whole of the drinking-water system, including sources and activities in the catchment, transmission infrastructure, treatment plants, storage reservoirs and distribution systems (whether piped or unpiped).

Ensuring timely action to prevent problems and ensure the correction of faults should be an aim of a surveillance programme. There may at times be a need for penalties to encourage and ensure compliance. The surveillance agency must therefore be supported by strong and enforceable legislation. However, it is important that the agency develops a positive and supportive relationship with suppliers, with the application of penalties used as a last resort.

> Drinking-water suppliers are responsible at all times for the quality and safety of the water that they produce.

The surveillance agency should be empowered by law to compel water suppliers to recommend the boiling of water or other measures when microbial contamination that could threaten public health is detected.

1.2.2 Public health authorities

In order to effectively support the protection of public health, a national entity with responsibility for public health will normally act in four areas:

- *Surveillance of health status and trends*, including outbreak detection and investigation, generally directly but in some instances through a decentralized body.
- Directly establish drinking-water *norms and standards*. National public health authorities often have the primary responsibility for setting norms on drinking-water supply, which may include the setting of water quality targets (WQTs), performance and safety targets and directly specified requirements (e.g., treatment). Normative activity is not restricted to water quality but also includes, for example, regulation and approval of materials and chemicals used in the production and distribution of drinking-water (see section 8.5.4) and establishing minimum standards in areas such as domestic plumbing (see section 1.2.10). Nor is it a static activity, because as changes occur in drinking-water supply practice, in technologies and in materials available (e.g., in plumbing materials and treatment processes), so health priorities and responses to them will also change.
- Representing health concerns in *wider policy development*, especially health policy and integrated water resource management (see section 1.2.4). Health concerns will often suggest a supportive role towards resource allocation to those concerned with drinking-water supply extension and improvement; will often involve lobbying for the primary requirement to satisfy drinking-water needs above other priorities; and may imply involvement in conflict resolution.
- *Direct action*, generally through subsidiary bodies (e.g., regional and local environmental health administrations) or by providing guidance to other local entities (e.g., local government) in surveillance of drinking-water supplies. These roles vary widely according to national and local structures and responsibilities and frequently include a supportive role to community suppliers, where local authorities often intervene directly.

Public health surveillance (i.e., surveillance of health status and trends) contributes to verifying drinking-water safety. It takes into consideration disease in the entire population, which may be exposed to pathogenic microorganisms from a range of sources, not only drinking-water. National public health authorities may also undertake or direct research to evaluate the role of water as a risk factor in disease – for example, through case–control, cohort or intervention studies. Public health surveillance teams typically operate at national, regional and local levels, as well as in cities and rural health centres. Routine public health surveillance includes:

- —ongoing monitoring of reportable diseases, many of which can be caused by waterborne pathogens;
- —outbreak detection;
- —long-term trend analysis;

— geographic and demographic analysis; and
— feedback to water authorities.

Public health surveillance can be enhanced in a variety of ways to identify possible waterborne outbreaks in response to suspicion about unusual disease incidence or following deterioration of water quality. Epidemiological investigations include:

— outbreak investigations;
— intervention studies to evaluate intervention options; and
— case–control or cohort studies to evaluate the role of water as a risk factor in disease.

However, public health surveillance cannot be relied upon to provide information in a timely manner to enable short-term operational response to control waterborne disease. Limitations include:

— outbreaks of non-reportable disease;
— time delay between exposure and illness;
— time delay between illness and reporting;
— low level of reporting; and
— difficulties in identifying causative pathogens and sources.

The public health authority operates reactively, as well as proactively, against the background of overall public health policy and in interaction with all stakeholders. In accounting for public health context, priority will normally be afforded to disadvantaged groups. This will generally entail balancing drinking-water safety management and improvement with the need to ensure access to reliable supplies of safe drinking-water in adequate quantities.

In order to develop an understanding of the national drinking-water situation, the national public health authority should periodically produce reports outlining the state of national water quality and highlighting public health concerns and priorities in the context of overall public health priorities. This implies the need for effective exchange of information between local, regional and national agencies.

National health authorities should lead or participate in formulation and implementation of policy to ensure access to some form of reliable, safe drinking-water supply. Where this has not been achieved, appropriate tools and education should be made available to implement individual or household-level treatment and safe storage.

1.2.3 Local authorities

Local environmental health authorities often play an important role in managing water resources and drinking-water supplies. This may include catchment inspection and authorization of activities in the catchment that may impact on source water quality. It can also include verifying and auditing (surveillance) of the management of formal drinking-water systems. Local environmental health authorities will also give specific guidance to communities or individuals in designing and implementing community and household drinking-water systems and correcting deficiencies, and they may also be responsible for surveillance of community and household drinking-water supplies. They have an important role to play in educating consumers where household water treatment is necessary.

Management of household and small community drinking-water supplies generally requires education programmes about drinking-water supply and water quality. Such programmes should normally include:

- water hygiene awareness raising;
- basic technical training and technology transfer in drinking-water supply and management;
- consideration of and approaches to overcoming sociocultural barriers to acceptance of water quality interventions;
- motivation, mobilization and social marketing activities; and
- a system of continued support, follow-up and dissemination of the water quality programme to achieve and maintain sustainability.

These programmes can be administered at the community level by local health authorities or other entities, such as nongovernmental organizations and the private sector. If the programme arises from other entities, the involvement of the local health authority in the development and implementation of the water quality education and training programme is strongly encouraged.

Approaches to participatory hygiene and sanitation education and training programmes are described in other WHO documents (see Simpson-Hébert et al., 1996; Sawyer et al., 1998; Brikké, 2000).

1.2.4 Water resource management

Water resource management is an integral aspect of the preventive management of drinking-water quality. Prevention of microbial and chemical contamination of source water is the first barrier against drinking-water contamination of public health concern.

Water resource management and potentially polluting human activity in the catchment will influence water quality downstream and in aquifers. This will impact on treatment steps required to ensure safe water, and preventive action may be preferable to upgrading treatment.

The influence of land use on water quality should be assessed as part of water resource management. This assessment is not normally undertaken by health authorities or drinking-water supply agencies alone and should take into consideration:

- land cover modification;
- extraction activities;
- construction/modification of waterways;
- application of fertilizers, herbicides, pesticides and other chemicals;
- livestock density and application of manure;

- road construction, maintenance and use;
- various forms of recreation;
- urban or rural residential development, with particular attention to excreta disposal, sanitation, landfill and waste disposal; and
- other potentially polluting human activities, such as industry, military sites, etc.

Water resource management may be the responsibility of catchment management agencies and/or other entities controlling or affecting water resources, such as industrial, agricultural, navigation and flood control entities.

The extent to which the responsibilities of health or drinking-water supply agencies include water resource management varies greatly between countries and communities. Regardless of government structures and sector responsibilities, it is important that health authorities liaise and collaborate with sectors managing the water resource and regulating land use in the catchment.

Establishing close collaboration between the public health authority, water supplier and resource management agency assists recognition of the health hazards potentially occurring in the system. It is also important for ensuring that the protection of drinking-water resources is considered in decisions for land use or regulations to control contamination of water resources. Depending on the setting, this may include involvement of further sectors, such as agriculture, traffic, tourism or urban development.

To ensure the adequate protection of drinking-water sources, national authorities will normally interact with other sectors in formulating national policy for integrated water resource management. Regional and local structures for implementing the policy will be set up, and national authorities will guide regional and local authorities by providing tools.

Regional environmental or public health authorities have an important task in participating in the preparation of integrated water resource management plans to ensure the best available drinking-water source quality. For further information, see the supporting documents *Protecting Surface Waters for Health* and *Protecting Groundwaters for Health* (section 1.3).

1.2.5 Drinking-water supply agencies

Drinking-water supplies vary from very large urban systems servicing populations with tens of millions to small community systems providing water to very small populations. In most countries, they include community sources as well as piped means of supply.

Drinking-water supply agencies are responsible for quality assurance and quality control (see section 1.2.1). Their key responsibilities are to prepare and implement WSPs (for more information, see chapter 4).

In many cases, the water supplier is not responsible for the management of the catchment feeding sources of its supplies. The roles of the water supplier with respect to catchments are to participate in interagency water resource management activities; to understand the risks arising from potentially contaminating activities and incidents; and to use this information in assessing risks to the drinking-water supply and developing and applying appropriate management. Although drinking-water suppliers may not undertake catchment surveys and pollution risk assessment alone, their roles include recognizing the need for them and initiating multiagency collaboration – for example, with health and environmental authorities.

Experience has shown that an association of stakeholders in drinking-water supply (e.g., operators, managers and specialist groups such as small suppliers, scientists, sociologists, legislators, politicians, etc.) can provide a valuable non-threatening forum for interchange of ideas.

For further information, see the supporting document *Water Safety Plans* (section 1.3).

1.2.6 Community management

Community-managed drinking-water systems, with both piped and non-piped distribution, are common worldwide in both developed and developing countries. The precise definition of a community drinking-water system will vary. While a definition based on population size or the type of supply may be appropriate under many conditions, approaches to administration and management provide a distinction between the drinking-water systems of small communities and those of larger towns and cities. This includes the increased reliance on often untrained and sometimes unpaid community members in the administration and operation of community drinking-water systems. Drinking-water systems in periurban areas in developing countries – the communities surrounding major towns and cities – may also have the characteristics of community systems.

Effective and sustainable programmes for the management of community drinking-water quality require the active support and involvement of local communities. These communities should be involved at all stages of such programmes, including initial surveys; decisions on siting of wells, siting of off-takes or establishing protection zones; monitoring and surveillance of drinking-water supplies; reporting faults, carrying out maintenance and taking remedial action; and supportive actions, including sanitation and hygiene practices.

A community may already be highly organized and taking action on health or drinking-water supply issues. Alternatively, it may lack a well developed drinking-water system; some sectors of the community, such as women, may be poorly represented; and there may be disagreements or factional conflicts. In this situation, achieving community participation will take more time and effort to bring people together, resolve differences, agree on common aims and take action. Visits, possibly over several years, will often be needed to provide support and encouragement and to ensure that the structures created for safe drinking-water supply continue to operate. This may involve setting up hygiene and health educational programmes to ensure that the community:

— is aware of the importance of drinking-water quality and its relation to health and of the need for safe drinking-water in sufficient quantities for domestic use for drinking, cooking and hygiene;
— recognizes the importance of surveillance and the need for a community response;
— understands and is prepared to play its role in the surveillance process;
— has the necessary skills to perform that role; and
— is aware of requirements for the protection of drinking-water supplies from pollution.

For further information, see WHO *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality*, second edition, Volume 3; the supporting document *Water Safety Plans* (section 1.3); Simpson-Hébert et al. (1996); Sawyer et al. (1998); and Brikké (2000).

1.2.7 Water vendors

Vendors selling water to households or at collection points are common in many parts of the world where scarcity of water or faults in or lack of infrastructure limits access to suitable quantities of drinking-water. Water vendors use a range of modes of transport to carry drinking-water for sale directly to the consumer, including tanker trucks and wheelbarrows/trolleys. In the context of these Guidelines, water vending does not include bottled or packaged water (which is considered in section 6.5) or water sold through vending machines.

There are a number of health concerns associated with water supplied to consumers by water vendors. These include access to adequate volumes and concern regarding inadequate treatment or transport in inappropriate containers, which can result in contamination.

Where the source of water is uncertain or the quality of the water is unknown, water can be treated or re-treated in small quantities to significantly improve its quality and safety. The simplest and most important treatment for microbially contaminated water is disinfection. If bulk supplies in tankers are used, sufficient chlorine should be added to ensure that a free residual chlorine concentration of at least 0.5 mg/litre after a contact time of at least 30 min is present at the delivery point. Tankers should normally be reserved for potable water use. Before use, tankers should be either chemically disinfected or steam-cleaned.

Local authorities should implement surveillance programmes for water provided by vendors and, where necessary, develop education programmes to improve the collection, treatment and distribution of water to prevent contamination.

1.2.8 Individual consumers

Everyone consumes water from one source or another, and consumers often play important roles in the collection, treatment and storage of water. Consumer actions may help to ensure the safety of the water they consume and may also contribute to improvement or contamination of the water consumed by others. Consumers have the responsibility for ensuring that their actions do not impact adversely on water quality. Installation and maintenance of household plumbing systems should be undertaken preferably by qualified and authorized plumbers (see section 1.2.10) or other persons with appropriate expertise to ensure that cross-connection or backflow events do not result in contamination of local water supplies.

In most countries, there are populations whose water is derived from household sources, such as private wells and rainwater. In households using non-piped water supplies, appropriate efforts are needed to ensure safe collection, storage and perhaps treatment of their drinking-water. In some circumstances, households and individuals may wish to treat water in the home to increase their confidence in its safety, not only where community supplies are absent, but also where community supplies are known to be contaminated or causing waterborne disease (see chapter 7). Public health, surveillance and/or other local authorities may provide guidance to support households and individual consumers in ensuring the safety of their drinking-water (see section 6.3). Such guidance is best provided in the context of a community education and training programme.

1.2.9 Certification agencies

Certification is used to verify that devices and materials used in the drinking-water supply meet a given level of quality and safety. Certification is a process in which an independent organization validates the claims of the manufacturers against a formal standard or criterion or provides an independent assessment of possible risks of contamination from a material or process. The certification agency may be responsible for seeking data from manufacturers, generating test results, conducting inspections and audits and possibly making recommendations on product performance.

Certification has been applied to technologies used at household and community levels, such as hand pumps; materials used by water supplies, such as treatment chemicals; and devices used in the household for collection, treatment and storage.

Certification of products or processes involved in the collection, treatment, storage and distribution of water can be overseen by government agencies or private organizations. Certification procedures will depend on the standards against which the products are certified, certification criteria and the party that performs the certification.

National, local government or private (third-party auditing) certification programmes have a number of possible objectives:

- certification of products to ensure that their use does not threaten the safety of the user or the general public, such as by causing contamination of drinking-water with toxic substances, substances that could affect consumer acceptability or substances that support the growth of microorganisms;
- product testing, to avoid retesting at local levels or prior to each procurement;

- ensuring uniform quality and condition of products;
- certification and accreditation of analytical and other testing laboratories; and
- control of materials and chemicals used for the treatment of drinking-water, including the performance of devices for household use.

An important step in any certification procedure is the establishment of standards, which must form the basis of assessment of the products. These standards should also – as far as possible – contain the criteria for approval. In procedures for certification on technical aspects, these standards are generally developed in cooperation with the manufacturers, the certifying agency and the consumers. The national public health authorities should have responsibility for developing the parts of the approval process or criteria relating directly to public health. For further information, see section 8.5.4.

1.2.10 Plumbing

Significant adverse health effects have been associated with inadequate plumbing systems within public and private buildings arising from poor design, incorrect installation, alterations and inadequate maintenance.

Numerous factors influence the quality of water within a building's piped distribution system and may result in microbial or chemical contamination of drinking-water. Outbreaks of gastrointestinal disease can occur through faecal contamination of drinking-water within buildings arising from deficiencies in roof storage tanks and cross-connections with wastewater pipes, for example. Poorly designed plumbing systems can cause stagnation of water and provide a suitable environment for the proliferation of *Legionella*. Plumbing materials, pipes, fittings and coatings can result in elevated heavy metal (e.g., lead) concentrations in drinking-water, and inappropriate materials can be conducive to bacterial growth. Potential adverse health effects may not be confined to the individual building. Exposure of other consumers to contaminants is possible through contamination of the local public distribution system, beyond the particular building, through cross-contamination of drinking-water and backflow.

The delivery of water that complies with relevant standards within buildings generally relies on a plumbing system that is not directly managed by the water supplier. Reliance is therefore placed on proper installation and servicing of plumbing and, for larger buildings, on building-specific WSPs (see section 6.1).

To ensure the safety of drinking-water supplies within the building system, plumbing practices must prevent the introduction of hazards to health. This can be achieved by ensuring that:

- pipes carrying either water or wastes are watertight, durable, of smooth and unobstructed interior and protected against anticipated stresses;
- cross-connections between the drinking-water supply and the wastewater removal systems do not occur;

- —water storage systems are intact and not subject to intrusion of microbial and chemical contaminants;
- —hot and cold water systems are designed to minimize the proliferation of *Legionella* (see also sections 6.1 and 11.1.9);
- —appropriate protection is in place to prevent backflow;
- —the system design of multistorey buildings minimizes pressure fluctuations;
- —waste is discharged without contaminating drinking-water; and
- —plumbing systems function efficiently.

It is important that plumbers are appropriately qualified, have the competence to undertake necessary installation and servicing of plumbing systems to ensure compliance with local regulations and use only materials approved as safe for use with drinking-water.

Design of the plumbing systems of new buildings should normally be approved prior to construction and be inspected by an appropriate regulatory body during construction and prior to commissioning of the buildings.

1.3 Supporting documentation to the Guidelines

These Guidelines are accompanied by separate texts that provide background information substantiating the derivation of the guidelines and providing guidance on good practice towards effective implementation. These are available as published texts and electronically through the Internet (http://www.who.int/water_sanitation_health/dwq/en/) and CD-ROM. Reference details are provided in Annex 1.

Assessing Microbial Safety of Drinking Water: Improving Approaches and Methods

This book provides a state-of-the-art review of approaches and methods used in assessing the microbial safety of drinking-water. It offers guidance on the selection and use of indicators alongside operational monitoring to meet specific information needs and looks at potential applications of "new" technologies and emerging methods.

Chemical Safety of Drinking-water: Assessing Priorities for Risk Management

This document provides tools that assist users to undertake a systematic assessment of their water supply system(s) locally, regionally or nationally; to prioritize the chemicals likely to be of greatest significance; to consider how these might be controlled or eliminated; and to review or develop standards that are appropriate.

Domestic Water Quantity, Service Level and Health

This paper reviews the requirements for water for health-related purposes to determine acceptable minimum needs for consumption (hydration and food preparation) and basic hygiene.

Evaluation of the H_2S Method for Detection of Fecal Contamination of Drinking Water

This report critically reviews the scientific basis, validity, available data and other information concerning the use of "H_2S tests" as measures or indicators of faecal contamination in drinking-water.

Hazard Characterization for Pathogens in Food and Water: Guidelines

This document provides a practical framework and structured approach for the characterization of microbial hazards, to assist governmental and research scientists.

Heterotrophic Plate Counts and Drinking-water Safety: The Significance of HPCs for Water Quality and Human Health

This document provides a critical assessment of the role of the HPC measurement in drinking-water safety management.

Managing Water in the Home: Accelerated Health Gains from Improved Water Supply

This report describes and critically reviews the various methods and systems for household water collection, treatment and storage. It assesses the ability of household water treatment and storage methods to provide water with improved microbial quality.

Pathogenic Mycobacteria in Water: A Guide to Public Health Consequences, Monitoring and Management

This book describes the current knowledge about the distribution of pathogenic environmental mycobacteria (PEM) in water and other parts of the environment. Included are discussions of the routes of transmission that lead to human infection, the most significant disease symptoms that can follow infection and the classical and modern methods of analysis of PEM species. The book concludes with a discussion of the issues surrounding the control of PEM in drinking-water and the assessment and management of risks.

Quantifying Public Health Risk in the WHO Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality: A Burden of Disease Approach

This report provides a discussion paper on the concepts and methodology of Disability Adjusted Life Years (DALYs) as a common public health metric and its usefulness for drinking-water quality and illustrates the approach for several drinking-water contaminants already examined using the burden of disease approach.

Safe Piped Water: Managing Microbial Water Quality in Piped Distribution Systems

The development of pressurized pipe networks for supplying drinking-water to individual dwellings, buildings and communal taps is an important component in the continuing development and health of many communities. This publication considers the introduction of microbial contaminants and growth of microorganisms in distribution networks and the practices that contribute to ensuring drinking-water safety in piped distribution systems.

Toxic Cyanobacteria in Water: A Guide to their Public Health Consequences, Monitoring and Management

This book describes the state of knowledge regarding the impact of cyanobacteria on health through the use of water. It considers aspects of risk management and details the information needed for protecting drinking-water sources and recreational water bodies from the health hazards caused by cyanobacteria and their toxins. It also outlines the state of knowledge regarding the principal considerations in the design of programmes and studies for monitoring water resources and supplies and describes the approaches and procedures used.

Upgrading Water Treatment Plants

This book provides a practical guide to improving the performance of water treatment plants. It will be an invaluable source of information for those who are responsible for designing, operating, maintaining or upgrading water treatment plants.

Water Safety Plans

The improvement of water quality control strategies, in conjunction with improvements in excreta disposal and personal hygiene, can be expected to deliver substantial health gains in the population. This document provides information on improved strategies for the control and monitoring of drinking-water quality.

Water Treatment and Pathogen Control: Process Efficiency in Achieving Safe Drinking-water

This publication provides a critical analysis of the literature on removal and inactivation of pathogenic microbes in water to aid the water quality specialist and design engineer in making decisions regarding microbial water quality.

Texts in preparation or in revision:

Arsenic in Drinking-water: Assessing and Managing Health Risks (in preparation)
Desalination for Safe Drinking-water Supply (in preparation)
Guide to Hygiene and Sanitation in Aviation (in revision)
Guide to Ship Sanitation (in revision)
Health Aspects of Plumbing (in preparation)
Legionella and the Prevention of Legionellosis (in finalization)
Protecting Groundwaters for Health – Managing the Quality of Drinking-water Sources (in preparation)

Protecting Surface Waters for Health – Managing the Quality of Drinking-water Sources (in preparation)

Rapid Assessment of Drinking-water Quality: A Handbook for Implementation (in preparation)

2

The Guidelines: a framework for safe drinking-water

The quality of drinking-water may be controlled through a combination of protection of water sources, control of treatment processes and management of the distribution and handling of the water. Guidelines must be appropriate for national, regional and local circumstances, which requires adaptation to environmental, social, economic and cultural circumstances and priority setting.

2.1 Framework for safe drinking-water: requirements

The Guidelines outline a preventive management "framework for safe drinking-water" that comprises five key components:

- health-based targets based on an evaluation of health concerns (chapter 3);
- system assessment to determine whether the drinking-water supply (from source through treatment to the point of consumption) as a whole can deliver water that meets the health-based targets (section 4.1);
- operational monitoring of the control measures in the drinking-water supply that are of particular importance in securing drinking-water safety (section 4.2);
- management plans documenting the system assessment and monitoring plans and describing actions to be taken in normal operation and incident conditions, including upgrade and improvement, documentation and communication (sections 4.4–4.6); and
- a system of independent surveillance that verifies that the above are operating properly (chapter 5).

In support of the framework for safe drinking-water, the Guidelines provide a range of supporting information, including microbial aspects (chapters 7 and 11), chemical aspects (chapters 8 and 12), radiological aspects (chapter 9) and acceptability aspects (chapter 10). Figure 2.1 provides an overview of the interrelationship of the individual chapters of the Guidelines in ensuring drinking-water safety.

There is a wide range of microbial and chemical constituents of drinking-water that can cause adverse human health effects. The detection of these constituents in both raw water and water delivered to consumers is often slow, complex and costly,

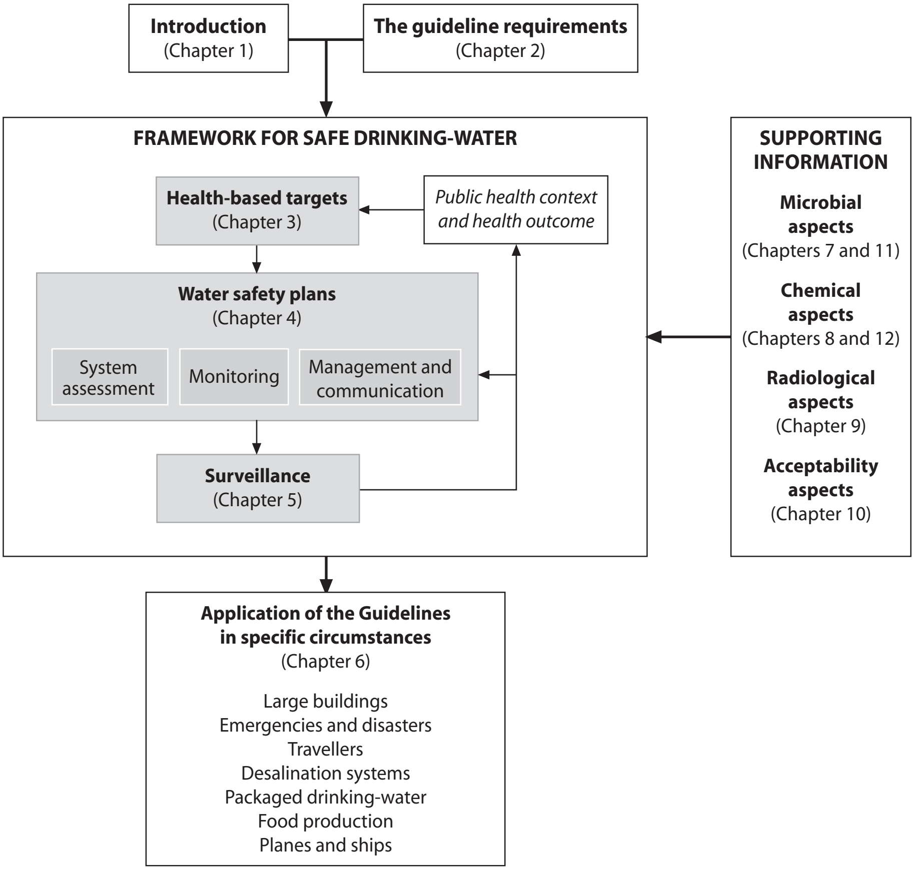


Figure 2.1 Interrelationship of the chapters of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* in ensuring drinking-water safety

which limits early warning capability and affordability. Reliance on water quality determination alone is insufficient to protect public health. As it is neither physically nor economically feasible to test for all drinking-water quality parameters, the use of monitoring effort and resources should be carefully planned and directed at significant or key characteristics.

Some characteristics not related to health, such as those with significant impacts on acceptability of water, may also be of importance. Where water has unacceptable aesthetic characteristics (e.g., appearance, taste and odour), further investigation may be required to determine whether there are problems with significance for health.

The control of the microbial and chemical quality of drinking-water requires the development of management plans, which, when implemented, provide the basis for system protection and process control to ensure that numbers of pathogens and concentrations of chemicals present a negligible risk to public health and that water is acceptable to consumers. The management plans developed by water suppliers are best termed "water safety plans" (WSPs). A WSP comprises system assessment and design, operational monitoring and management plans, including documentation and communication. The elements of a WSP build on the multiple-barrier principle, the principles of hazard analysis and critical control points (HACCP) and other systematic management approaches. The plans should address all aspects of the drinking-water supply and focus on the control of abstraction, treatment and delivery of drinking-water.

Many drinking-water supplies provide adequate safe drinking-water in the absence of formalized WSPs. Major benefits of developing and implementing a WSP for these supplies include the systematic and detailed assessment and prioritization of hazards and the operational monitoring of barriers or control measures. In addition, a WSP provides for an organized and structured system to minimize the chance of failure through oversight or lapse of management and for contingency plans to respond to system failures or unforeseen hazardous events.

2.1.1 Health-based targets

Health-based targets are an essential component of the drinking-water safety framework. They should be established by a high-level authority responsible for health in consultation with others, including water suppliers and affected communities. They should take account of the overall public health situation and contribution of drinking-water quality to disease due to waterborne microbes and chemicals, as a part of overall water and health policy. They must also take account of the importance of ensuring access to water, especially among those who are not served.

Health-based targets provide the basis for the application of the Guidelines to all types of drinking-water supply. Constituents of drinking-water may cause adverse health effects from single exposures (e.g., microbial pathogens) or long-term exposures (e.g., many chemicals). Due to the range of constituents in water, their mode of action and the nature of fluctuations in their concentration, there are four principal types of health-based targets used as a basis for identifying safety requirements:

- *Health outcome targets:* In some circumstances, especially where waterborne disease contributes to a measurable burden, reducing exposure through drinking-water has the potential to appreciably reduce overall risks of disease. In such circumstances, it is possible to establish a health-based target in terms of a quantifiable reduction in the overall level of disease. This is most applicable where adverse effects follow shortly after exposure, where such effects are readily and reliably monitored and where changes in exposure can also be readily and reliably monitored. This type of health outcome target is primarily applicable to some microbial hazards in developing countries and chemical hazards with clearly defined health effects largely attributable to water (e.g., fluoride). In other circumstances, health outcome targets may be the basis for evaluation of results through quantitative risk assessment models. In these cases, health outcomes are estimated based on information concerning exposure and dose–response relationships. The results may be employed directly as a basis for the specification of water quality targets or provide the basis for development of the other types of health-based targets. Health outcome targets based on information on the impact of tested interventions on the health of real populations are ideal but rarely available. More common are health outcome targets based on defined levels of tolerable risk, either absolute or fractions of total disease burden, preferably based on epidemiological evidence or, alternatively, risk assessment studies.

- *Water quality targets (WQTs):* WQTs are established for individual drinking-water constituents that represent a health risk from long-term exposure and where fluctuations in concentration are small or occur over long periods. They are typically expressed as guideline values (concentrations) of the substances or chemicals of concern.
- *Performance targets:* Performance targets are employed for constituents where short-term exposure represents a public health risk or where large fluctuations in numbers or concentration can occur over short periods with significant health implications. They are typically expressed in terms of required reductions of the substance of concern or effectiveness in preventing contamination.
- *Specified technology targets:* National regulatory agencies may establish targets for specific actions for smaller municipal, community and household drinking-water supplies. Such targets may identify specific permissible devices or processes for given situations and/or for generic drinking-water system types.

It is important that health-based targets are realistic under local operating conditions and are set to protect and improve public health. Health-based targets underpin development of WSPs, provide information with which to evaluate the adequacy of existing installations and assist in identifying the level and type of inspection and analytical verifications that are appropriate.

Most countries apply several types of targets for different types of supply and different contaminants. In order to ensure that they are relevant and supportive, representative scenarios should be developed, including description of assumptions, management options, control measures and indicator systems for verification, where appropriate. These should be supported by general guidance addressing the identification of national, regional or local priorities and progressive implementation, thereby helping to ensure that best use is made of available resources.

Health-based targets are considered in more detail in chapter 3.

2.1.2 System assessment and design

Assessment of the drinking-water system is equally applicable to large utilities with piped distribution systems, piped and non-piped community supplies, including hand pumps, and individual domestic supplies. Assessment can be of existing infrastructure or of plans for new supplies or for upgrading of existing supplies. As drinking-water quality varies throughout the system, the assessment should aim to determine whether the final quality of water delivered to the consumer will routinely meet established health-based targets. Understanding source quality and changes through the system requires expert input. The assessment of systems should be reviewed periodically.

The system assessment needs to take into consideration the behaviour of selected constituents or groups of constituents that may influence water quality. Having identified and documented actual and potential hazards, including potentially hazardous events and scenarios that may affect water quality, the level of risk for each hazard can then be estimated and ranked, based on the likelihood and severity of the consequences.

Validation is an element of system assessment. It is undertaken to ensure that the information supporting the plan is correct and is concerned with the assessment of the scientific and technical inputs into the WSP. Evidence to support the WSP can come from a wide variety of sources, including scientific literature, trade associations, regulation and legislation departments, historical data, professional bodies and supplier knowledge.

If the system is theoretically capable of meeting the health-based targets, the WSP is the management tool that will assist in actually meeting the health-based targets, and it should be developed following the steps outlined in subsequent sections. If the system is unlikely to be capable of meeting the health-based targets, a programme of upgrading (which may include capital investment or training) should be initiated to ensure that the drinking-water supply would meet the targets. In the interim, every effort should be made to supply water of the highest achievable quality. Where a significant risk to public health exists, additional measures may be appropriate.

Assessment and design are considered in more detail in section 4.1 (see also the supporting document *Upgrading Water Treatment Plants*; section 1.3).

2.1.3 Operational monitoring

Control measures are actions implemented in the drinking-water system that prevent, reduce or eliminate contamination and are identified in system assessment. They include, for example, catchment management actions, the plinth surrounding a well, filters and disinfection infrastructure and piped distribution systems. If collectively operating properly, they would ensure that health-based targets are met.

Operational monitoring is the conduct of planned observations or measurements to assess whether the control measures in a drinking-water system are operating properly. It is possible to set limits for control measures, monitor those limits and take corrective action in response to a detected deviation before the water becomes unsafe. Examples of limits are that the plinth surrounding a hand pump is complete and not damaged, the turbidity of water following filtration is below a certain value or the chlorine residual after disinfection plants or at the far point of the distribution system is above an agreed value.

The frequency of operational monitoring varies with the nature of the control measure – for example, checking plinth integrity monthly to yearly, monitoring turbidity on-line or very frequently and monitoring disinfection residual at multiple points daily or continuously on-line. If monitoring shows that a limit does not meet specifications, then there is the potential for water to be, or to become, unsafe. The objective is timely monitoring of control measures, with a logically based sampling plan, to prevent the delivery of potentially unsafe water.

In most cases, operational monitoring will be based on simple and rapid observations or tests, such as turbidity or structural integrity, rather than complex microbial or chemical tests. The complex tests are generally applied as part of validation and verification activities (discussed in sections 4.1.7 and 4.3, respectively) rather than as part of operational monitoring.

In order not only to have confidence that the chain of supply is operating properly, but to confirm that water quality is being maintained and achieved, it is necessary to carry out verification, as outlined in section 2.2.

The use of indicator bacteria in monitoring of water quality is discussed in the supporting document *Assessing Microbial Safety of Drinking Water* (section 1.3), and operational monitoring is considered in more detail in section 4.2.

2.1.4 Management plans, documentation and communication

A management plan documents system assessment and operational monitoring and verification plans and describes actions in both normal operation and during "incidents" where a loss of control of the system may occur. The management plan should also outline procedures and other supporting programmes required to ensure optimal operation of the drinking-water system.

As the management of some aspects of the drinking-water system often falls outside the responsibility of a single agency, it is essential that the roles, accountabilities and responsibilities of the various agencies involved be defined in order to coordinate their planning and management. Appropriate mechanisms and documentation should therefore be established for ensuring stakeholder involvement and commitment. This may include establishing working groups, committees or task forces, with appropriate representatives, and developing partnership agreements, including, for example, signed memoranda of understanding (see also section 1.2).

Documentation of all aspects of drinking-water quality management is essential. Documents should describe activities that are undertaken and how procedures are performed. They should also include detailed information on:

- assessment of the drinking-water system (including flow diagrams and potential hazards and the outcome of validation);
- control measures and operational monitoring and verification plan;
- routine operation and management procedures;

- incident and emergency response plans; and
- supporting measures, including:
  - training programmes
  - research and development
  - procedures for evaluating results and reporting
  - performance evaluations, audits and reviews
  - communication protocols
  - community consultation.

Documentation and record systems should be kept as simple and focused as possible. The level of detail in the documentation of procedures should be sufficient to provide assurance of operational control when coupled with a suitably qualified and competent operator.

Mechanisms should be established to periodically review and, where necessary, revise documents to reflect changing circumstances. Documents should be assembled in a manner that will enable any necessary modifications to be made easily. A document control system should be developed to ensure that current versions are in use and obsolete documents are discarded.

Appropriate documentation and reporting of incidents or emergencies should also be established. The organization should learn as much as possible from an incident to improve preparedness and planning for future events. Review of an incident may indicate necessary amendments to existing protocols.

Effective communication to increase community awareness and knowledge of drinking-water quality issues and the various areas of responsibility helps consumers to understand and contribute to decisions about the service provided by a drinking-water supplier or land use constraints imposed in catchment areas. A thorough understanding of the diversity of views held by individuals or groups in the community is necessary to satisfy community expectations.

Management, documentation and communication are considered in more detail in sections 4.4, 4.5 and 4.6.

2.1.5 Surveillance of drinking-water quality

The surveillance agency is responsible for an independent (external) and periodic review of all aspects of safety, whereas the water supplier is responsible at all times for regular quality control, for operational monitoring and for ensuring good operating practice.

Surveillance contributes to the protection of public health by assessing compliance with WSPs and promoting improvement of the quality, quantity, accessibility, coverage, affordability and continuity of drinking-water supplies.

Surveillance requires a systematic programme of surveys that may include auditing of WSPs, analysis, sanitary inspection and institutional and community aspects. It should cover the whole of the drinking-water system, including sources and activities in the catchment, transmission infrastructure, whether piped or unpiped, treatment plants, storage reservoirs and distribution systems.

Since incremental improvement and prioritizing action in systems presenting greatest overall risk to public health are important, there are advantages to adopting a grading scheme for the relative safety of drinking-water supplies (see chapter 4). More sophisticated grading schemes may be of particular use in community supplies where the frequency of testing is low and exclusive reliance on analytical results is particularly inappropriate. Such schemes will typically take account of both analytical findings and sanitary inspection through approaches such as those presented in section 4.1.2.

The role of surveillance is discussed in section 1.2.1 and chapter 5.

2.2 Guidelines for verification

Drinking-water safety is secured by application of a WSP, which includes monitoring the efficiency of control measures using appropriately selected determinants. In addition to this operational monitoring, a final verification of quality is required.

Verification is the use of methods, procedures or tests in addition to those used in operational monitoring to determine if the performance of the drinking-water supply is in compliance with the stated objectives outlined by the health-based targets and/or whether the WSP needs modification and revalidation.

2.2.1 Microbial water quality

For microbial water quality, verification is likely to include microbiological testing. In most cases, it will involve the analysis of faecal indicator microorganisms, but in some circumstances it may also include assessment of specific pathogen densities. Verification of the microbial quality of drinking-water may be undertaken by the supplier, surveillance agencies or a combination of the two (see sections 4.3.1 and 7.4).

Approaches to verification include testing of source water, water immediately after treatment, water in distribution systems or stored household water. Verification of the microbial quality of drinking-water includes testing for *Escherichia coli* as an indicator of faecal pollution. *E. coli* provides conclusive evidence of recent faecal pollution and should not be present in drinking-water. In practice, testing for thermotolerant coliform bacteria can be an acceptable alternative in many circumstances. While *E. coli* is a useful indicator, it has limitations. Enteric viruses and protozoa are more resistant to disinfection; consequently, the absence of *E. coli* will not necessarily indicate freedom from these organisms. Under certain circumstances, it may be desirable to include more resistant microorganisms, such as bacteriophages and/or bacterial spores. Such circumstances could include the use of source water known to be contaminated with enteric viruses and parasites or high levels of viral and parasitic diseases in the community.

Water quality can vary rapidly, and all systems are subject to occasional failure. For example, rainfall can greatly increase the levels of microbial contamination in source waters, and waterborne outbreaks often occur following rainfall. Results of analytical testing must be interpreted taking this into account.

2.2.2 Chemical water quality

Assessment of the adequacy of the chemical quality of drinking-water relies on comparison of the results of water quality analysis with guideline values.

For additives (i.e., chemicals deriving primarily from materials and chemicals used in the production and distribution of drinking-water), emphasis is placed on the direct control of the quality of these products. In controlling drinking-water additives, testing procedures typically assess the contribution of the additive to drinking-water and take account of variations over time in deriving a value that can be compared with the guideline value (see section 8.5.4).

As indicated in chapter 1, most chemicals are of concern only with long-term exposure; however, some hazardous chemicals that occur in drinking-water are of concern because of effects arising from sequences of exposures over a short period. Where the concentration of the chemical of interest varies widely, even a series of analytical results may fail to fully identify and describe the public health risk (e.g., nitrate, which is associated with methaemoglobinaemia in bottle-fed infants). In controlling such hazards, attention must be given to both knowledge of causal factors such as fertilizer use in agriculture and trends in detected concentrations, since these will indicate whether a significant problem may arise in the future. Other hazards may arise intermittently, often associated with seasonal activity or seasonal conditions. One example is the occurrence of blooms of toxic cyanobacteria in surface water.

A *guideline value* represents the concentration of a constituent that does not exceed tolerable risk to the health of the consumer over a lifetime of consumption. Guidelines for some chemical contaminants (e.g., lead, nitrate) are set to be protective for susceptible subpopulations. These guidelines are also protective of the general population over a lifetime.

It is important that recommended guideline values are both practical and feasible to implement as well as protective of public health. Guideline values are not normally set at concentrations lower than the detection limits achievable under routine laboratory operating conditions. Moreover, guideline values are established taking into account available techniques for controlling, removing or reducing the concentration of the contaminant to the desired level. In some instances, therefore, *provisional* guideline values have been set for contaminants for which there is some uncertainty in available information or calculated guideline values are not practically achievable.

2.3 National drinking-water policy

2.3.1 Laws, regulations and standards

The aim of national drinking-water laws and standards should be to ensure that the consumer enjoys safe potable water, not to shut down deficient water supplies.

Effective control of drinking-water quality is supported ideally by adequate legislation, standards and codes and their enforcement. The precise nature of the legislation in each country will depend on national, constitutional and other considerations. It will generally outline the responsibility and authority of a number of agencies and describe the relationship between them, as well as establish basic policy principles (e.g., water supplied for drinking-water should be safe). The national regulations, adjusted as necessary, should be applicable to all water supplies. This would normally embody different approaches to situations where formal responsibility for drinking-water quality is assigned to a defined entity and situations where community management prevails.

Legislation should make provision for the establishment and amendment of drinking-water quality standards and guidelines, as well as for the establishment of regulations for the development and protection of drinking-water sources and the treatment, maintenance and distribution of safe drinking-water.

Legislation should establish the legal functions and responsibilities of the water supplier and would generally specify that the water supplier is legally responsible at all times for the quality of the water sold and/or supplied to the consumer and for the proper supervision, inspection, maintenance and safe operation of the drinking-water system. It is the water supplier that actually provides water to the public – the "consumer" – and that should be legally responsible for its quality and safety. The supplier is responsible for continuous and effective quality assurance and quality control of water supplies, including inspection, supervision, preventive maintenance, routine testing of water quality and remedial actions as required. However, the supplier is normally responsible for the quality of the water only up to a defined point in the distribution system and may not have responsibility for deterioration of water quality as a result of poor plumbing or unsatisfactory storage tanks in households and buildings.

Where consecutive agencies manage water – for example, a drinking-water wholesaler, a municipal water supplier and a local water distribution company – each agency should carry responsibility for the quality of the water arising from its actions.

Legal and organizational arrangements aimed at ensuring compliance with the legislation, standards or codes of practice for drinking-water quality will normally provide for an independent surveillance agency, as outlined in section 1.2.1 and chapter 5. The legislation should define the duties, obligations and powers of the water surveillance agency. The surveillance agency should preferably be represented at the national level and should operate at national, regional and local levels. The surveillance agency should be given the necessary powers to administer and enforce laws, regulations, standards and codes concerned with water quality. It should also be able to delegate those powers to other specified agencies, such as municipal councils, local health departments, regional authorities and qualified, government-authorized private audit or testing services. Its responsibilities should include the surveillance of water quality to ensure that water delivered to the consumer, through either piped or non-piped distribution systems, meets drinking-water supply service standards; approving sources of drinking-water; and surveying the provision of drinking-water to the population as a whole. There needs to be a high level of knowledge, training and understanding in such an agency in order that drinking-water supply does not suffer from inappropriate regulatory action. The surveillance agency should be empowered by law to compel water suppliers to recommend the boiling of water or other measures when microbial contamination that could threaten public health is detected.

Implementation of programmes to provide safe drinking-water should not be delayed because of a lack of appropriate legislation. Even where legally binding guidelines or standards for drinking-water have yet to be promulgated, it may be possible to encourage, and even enforce, the supply of safe drinking-water through educational efforts or commercial, contractual arrangements between consumer and supplier (e.g., based on civil law) or through interim measures, including health, food or welfare legislation, for example.

Drinking-water quality legislation may usefully provide for interim standards, permitted deviations and exemptions as part of a national or regional policy, rather than as a result of local initiatives. This can take the form of temporary exemptions for certain communities or areas for defined periods of time. Short- and medium-term targets should be set so that the most significant risks to human health are controlled first.

2.3.2 Setting national standards

In countries where universal access to safe drinking-water at an acceptable level of service has not been achieved, policy should refer to expressed targets for increases in access. Such policy statements should be consistent with achievement of the Millennium Development Goals (http://www.developmentgoals.org/) of the United Nations (UN) Millennium Declaration and should take account of levels of acceptable access outlined in General Comment 15 on the Right to Water of the UN Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights (http://www.unhchr.ch/html/menu2/6/cescr.htm) and associated documents.

In developing national drinking-water standards based on these Guidelines, it will be necessary to take account of a variety of environmental, social, cultural, economic, dietary and other conditions affecting potential exposure. This may lead to national standards that differ appreciably from these Guidelines. A programme based on modest but realistic goals – including fewer water quality parameters of priority health concern at attainable levels consistent with providing a reasonable degree of public health protection in terms of reduction of disease or reduced risk of disease within the population – may achieve more than an overambitious one, especially if targets are upgraded periodically.

The authority to establish and revise drinking-water standards, codes of practice and other technical regulations should be delegated to the appropriate government minister – preferably the minister of health – who is responsible for ensuring the safety of water supplies and the protection of public health. The authority to establish and enforce quality standards and regulations may be vested in a ministry other than the one usually responsible for public and/or environmental health. Consideration should then be given to requiring that regulations and standards are promulgated only after approval by the public health or environmental health authority so as to ensure their conformity with health protection principles.

Drinking-water supply policy should normally outline the requirements for protection of water sources and resources, the need for appropriate treatment, preventive maintenance within distribution systems and requirements to support maintaining water safety after collection from communal sources.

The basic water legislation should not specify sampling frequencies but should give the administration the power to establish a list of parameters to be measured and the frequency and location of such measurements.

Standards and codes should normally specify the quality of the water to be supplied to the consumer, the practices to be followed in selecting and developing water sources and in treatment processes and distribution or household storage systems, and procedures for approving water systems in terms of water quality.

Setting national standards should ideally involve consideration of the quality of the water, the quality of service, "target setting" and the quality of infrastructure and systems, as well as enforcement action. For example, national standards should define protection zones around water sources, minimum standard specifications for operating systems, hygiene practice standards in construction and minimum standards for health protection. Some countries include these details in a "sanitary code" or "code of good practice." It is preferable to include in regulations the requirement to consult with drinking-water supply agencies and appropriate professional bodies, since doing so makes it more likely that drinking-water controls will be implemented effectively.

The costs associated with drinking-water quality surveillance and control should be taken into account in developing national legislation and standards.

To ensure that standards are acceptable to consumers, communities served, together with the major water users, should be involved in the standards-setting process. Public health agencies may be closer to the community than those responsible for its drinking-water supply. At a local level, they also interact with other sectors (e.g., education), and their combined action is essential to ensure active community involvement.

Other ministries, such as those responsible for public works, housing, natural resources or the environment, may administer normative and regulatory functions concerned with the design of drinking-water supply and waste disposal systems, equipment standards, plumbing codes and rules, water allocation, natural resource protection and conservation and waste collection, treatment and disposal.

In order to account for the variations in exposure from different sources in different parts of the world, default values, generally between 10% and 80%, are used to make an allocation of the tolerable daily intake (TDI) to drinking-water in setting guideline values for many chemicals. Where relevant exposure data are available, authorities are encouraged to develop context-specific guideline values that are tailored to local circumstances and conditions. For example, in areas where the intake of a particular contaminant in drinking-water is known to be much greater than that from other sources (e.g., air and food), it may be appropriate to allocate a greater proportion of the TDI to drinking-water to derive a guideline value more suited to the local conditions.

Volatile substances in water may be released to the atmosphere in showering and through a range of other household activities. Under such circumstances, inhalation may become a significant route of exposure. Some substances may also be absorbed through the skin during bathing, but this is not usually a major source of uptake. In some parts of the world, houses have a low rate of ventilation, and authorities may wish to take inhalation exposure into account in adapting the guidelines to local conditions, although other uncertainty factors used in the quantitative assessments may render this unnecessary. For those substances that are particularly volatile, such as chloroform, the correction factor would be approximately equivalent to a doubling of exposure. Where such exposure is shown to be important for a particular substance (i.e., high volatility, low ventilation rates and high rates of showering/bathing), it may be appropriate to adjust the guideline value accordingly (e.g., halve the guideline value to account for an approximate doubling of exposure).

2.4 Identifying priority drinking-water quality concerns

These Guidelines cover a large number of potential constituents in drinking-water in order to meet the varied needs of countries worldwide. Generally, only a few constituents will be of concern under any given circumstances. It is essential that the national regulatory agency and local water authorities determine and respond to the constituents of relevance. This will ensure that efforts and investments can be directed to those constituents that are of public health significance.

Guidelines are established for potentially hazardous water constituents and provide a basis for assessing drinking-water quality. Different parameters may require different priorities for management to improve and protect public health. In general, the order of priority is to:

- ensure an adequate supply of microbially safe water and maintain acceptability to discourage consumers from using potentially less microbially safe water;
- manage key chemical contaminants known to cause adverse health effects; and
- address other chemical contaminants.

Priority setting should be undertaken on the basis of a systematic assessment based on collaborative effort among all relevant agencies and may be applied at national and system-specific levels. It may require the formation of a broad-based interagency committee including authorities such as health, water resources, drinking-water supply, environment, agriculture and geological services/mining to establish a mechanism for sharing information and reaching consensus on drinking-water quality issues.

Sources of information that should be considered in determining priorities include catchment type (protected, unprotected), geology, topography, agricultural land use, industrial activities, sanitary surveys, records of previous monitoring, inspections and local and community knowledge. The wider the range of data sources used, the more useful the results of the process will be. In many situations, authorities or consumers may have already identified a number of drinking-water quality problems, particularly where they cause obvious health effects or acceptability problems. These existing problems would normally be assigned a high priority.

2.4.1 Assessing microbial priorities

The most common and widespread health risk associated with drinking-water is microbial contamination, the consequences of which mean that its control must always be of paramount importance. Priority needs to be given to improving and developing the drinking-water supplies that represent the greatest public health risk.

> The most common and widespread health risk associated with drinking-water is microbial contamination, the consequences of which mean that its control must always be of paramount importance.

Microbial contamination of major urban systems has the potential to cause large outbreaks of waterborne disease. Ensuring quality in such systems is therefore a priority. Nevertheless, the majority (around 80%) of the global population without access to improved drinking-water supplies resides in rural areas. Similarly, small and community supplies in most countries contribute disproportionately to overall drinking-water quality concerns. Identifying local and national priorities should take factors such as these into account.

Health-based targets for microbial contaminants are discussed in section 3.2, and a comprehensive consideration of microbial aspects of drinking-water quality is contained in chapter 7.

2.4.2 Assessing chemical priorities

Not all of the chemicals with guideline values will be present in all water supplies or, indeed, all countries. If they do exist, they may not be found at levels of concern. Conversely, some chemicals without guideline values or not addressed in the Guidelines may nevertheless be of legitimate local concern under special circumstances.

Risk management strategies (as reflected in national standards and monitoring activities) and commitment of resources should give priority to those chemicals that pose a risk to human health or to those with significant impacts on acceptability of water.

Only a few chemicals have been shown to cause widespread health effects in humans as a consequence of exposure through drinking-water when they are present in excessive quantities. These include fluoride, arsenic and nitrate. Human health effects have also been demonstrated in some areas associated with lead (from domestic plumbing), and there is concern because of the potential extent of exposure to selenium and uranium in some areas at concentrations of human health significance. Iron and manganese are of widespread significance because of their effects on acceptability. These constituents should be taken into consideration as part of any priority-setting process. In some cases, assessment will indicate that no risk of significant exposure exists at the national, regional or system level.

Drinking-water may be only a minor contributor to the overall intake of a particular chemical, and in some circumstances controlling the levels in drinking-water, at potentially considerable expense, may have little impact on overall exposure. Drinking-water risk management strategies should therefore be considered in conjunction with other potential sources of human exposure.

The process of "short-listing" chemicals of concern may initially be a simple classification of high and low risk to identify broad issues. This may be refined using data from more detailed assessments and analysis and may take into consideration rare events, variability and uncertainty.

Guidance is provided in the supporting document *Chemical Safety of Drinking-water* (section 1.3) on how to undertake prioritization of chemicals in drinking-water. This deals with issues including:

- —the probability of exposure (including the period of exposure) of the consumer to the chemical;
- —the concentration of the chemical that is likely to give rise to health effects (see also section 8.5); and
- —the evidence of health effects or exposure arising through drinking-water, as opposed to other sources, and relative ease of control of the different sources of exposure.

Additional information on the hazards and risks of many chemicals not included in these Guidelines is available from several sources, including WHO Environmental Health Criteria monographs (EHCs) and Concise International Chemical Assessment Documents (CICADs) (http://www.who.int/pcs/index.htm), reports by the Joint FAO/WHO Meeting on Pesticide Residues (JMPR) and Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives (JECFA) and information from competent national authorities, such as the US Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA) (http://www.epa.gov/waterscience). These information sources have been peer reviewed and provide readily accessible information on toxicology, hazards and risks of many less common contaminants. They can help water suppliers and health officials to decide upon the significance (if any) of a detected chemical and on the response that might be appropriate.

3
Health-based targets

3.1 Role and purpose of health-based targets

Health-based targets should be part of overall public health policy, taking into account status and trends and the contribution of drinking-water to the transmission of infectious disease and to overall exposure to hazardous chemicals both in individual settings and within overall health management. The purpose of setting targets is to mark out milestones to guide and chart progress towards a predetermined health and/or water safety goal. To ensure effective health protection and improvement, targets need to be realistic and relevant to local conditions (including economic, environmental, social and cultural conditions) and financial, technical and institutional resources. This normally implies periodic review and updating of priorities and targets and, in turn, that norms and standards should be periodically updated to take account of these factors and the changes in available information (see section 2.3).

Health-based targets provide a "benchmark" for water suppliers. They provide information with which to evaluate the adequacy of existing installations and policies and assist in identifying the level and type of inspection and analytical verification that are appropriate and in developing auditing schemes. Health-based targets underpin the development of WSPs and verification of their successful implementation. They should lead to improvements in public health outcomes.

Health-based targets should assist in determining specific interventions appropriate to delivering safe drinking-water, including control measures such as source protection and treatment processes.

> The judgement of safety – or what is a tolerable risk in particular circumstances – is a matter in which society as a whole has a role to play. The final judgement as to whether the benefit resulting from the adoption of any of the health-based targets justifies the cost is for each country to decide.

The use of health-based targets is applicable in countries at all levels of development. Different types of target will be applicable for different purposes, so that in most countries several types of target may be used for various purposes. Care must be taken to develop targets that account for the exposures that contribute most to disease. Care must also be taken to reflect the advantages of progressive, incremental improvement, which will often be based on categorization of public health risk (see section 4.1.2).

Health-based targets are typically national in character. Using information and approaches in these Guidelines, national authorities should be able to establish health-based targets that will protect and improve drinking-water quality and, consequently, human health and also support the best use of available resources in specific national and local circumstances.

In order to minimize the likelihood of outbreaks of disease, care is required to account properly for drinking-water supply performance both in steady state and during maintenance and periods of short-term water quality deterioration. Performance of the drinking-water system during short-term events (such as variation in source water quality, system challenges and process problems) must therefore be considered in the development of health-based targets. Both short-term and catastrophic events can result in periods of very degraded source water quality and greatly decreased efficiency in many processes, both of which provide a logical and sound justification for the long-established “multiple-barrier principle” in water safety.

The processes of formulating, implementing and evaluating health-based targets provide benefits to the overall preventive management of drinking-water quality. These benefits are outlined in Table 3.1.

Targets can be a helpful tool both for encouraging and for measuring incremental progress in improving drinking-water quality management. Improvements can relate to the scientific basis for target setting, progressive evolution to target types that more precisely reflect the health protection goals and the use of targets in defining and promoting categorization for progressive improvement, especially of existing water supplies. Water quality managers, be they suppliers or legislators, should aim at continuously improving water quality management. An example of phased improvement

Table 3.1 Benefits of health-based targets

Target development stage	Benefit
Formulation	Provides insight into the health of the population Reveals gaps in knowledge Supports priority setting Increases the transparency of health policy Promotes consistency among national health programmes Stimulates debate
Implementation	Inspires and motivates collaborating authorities to take action Improves commitment Fosters accountability Guides the rational allocation of resources
Evaluation	Supplies established milestones for incremental improvements Provides opportunity to take action to correct deficiencies and/or deviations Identifies data needs and discrepancies

is given in section 5.4. The degree of improvement may be large, as in moving from the initial phase to the intermediate phase, or relatively small.

Ideally, health-based targets should be set using quantitative risk assessment and should take into account local conditions and hazards. In practice, however, they may evolve from epidemiological evidence of waterborne disease based on surveillance, intervention studies or historical precedent or be adapted from international practice and guidance.

3.2 Types of health-based targets

The approaches presented here for developing health-based targets are based on a consistent framework applicable to all types of hazards and for all types of water supplies (see Table 3.2 and below). This offers flexibility to account for national priorities and to support a risk–benefit approach. The framework includes different types of health-based targets. They differ considerably with respect to the amount of resources needed to develop and implement the targets and in relation to the precision with which the public health benefits of risk management actions can be defined. Target types at the bottom of Table 3.2 require least interpretation by practitioners in implementation but depend on a number of assumptions. The targets towards the top of the table require considerably greater scientific and technical underpinning in order to overcome the need to make assumptions and are therefore more precisely related to the level of health protection. The framework is forward looking, in that currently critical data for developing the next stage of target setting may not be available, and a need to collect additional data may become obvious.

Establishing health-based targets should take account not only of "steady-state" conditions but also the possibility of short-term events (such as variation in environmental water quality, system challenges and process problems) that may lead to significant risk to public health.

For microbial pathogens, health-based targets will employ groups of selected pathogens that combine both control challenges and health significance in terms of health hazard and other relevant data. More than one pathogen is required in order to assess the diverse range of challenges to the safeguards available. Where the burden of waterborne microbial disease is high, health-based targets can be based on achieving a measurable reduction in the existing levels of community disease, such as diarrhoea or cholera, as an incremental step in public health improvement of drinking-water quality. While health-based targets may be expressed in terms of tolerable exposure to specific pathogens (i.e., WQTs), care is required in relating this to overall population exposure, which may be focused on short periods of time, and such targets are inappropriate for direct pathogen monitoring. These conditions relate to the recognized phenomenon of short periods of decreased efficiency in many processes and provide a logical justification for the long-established multiple-barrier principle in water safety. Targets must also account for background rates of disease during normal conditions of drinking-water supply performance and efficiency.

Table 3.2 Nature, application and assessment of health-based targets

Type of target	Nature of target	Typical applications	Assessment
Health outcome			
• epidemiology based	Reduction in detected disease incidence or prevalence	Microbial or chemical hazards with high measurable disease burden largely water-associated	Public health surveillance and analytical epidemiology
• risk assessment based	Tolerable level of risk from contaminants in drinking-water, absolute or as a fraction of the total burden by all exposures	Microbial or chemical hazards in situations where disease burden is low or cannot be measured directly	Quantitative risk assessment
Water quality	Guideline values applied to water quality	Chemical constituents found in source waters	Periodic measurement of key chemical constituents to assess compliance with relevant guideline values (see section 8.5)
	Guideline values applied in testing procedures for materials and chemicals	Chemical additives and by-products	Testing procedures applied to the materials and chemicals to assess their contribution to drinking-water exposure taking account of variations over time (see section 8.5)
Performance	Generic performance target for removal of groups of microbes	Microbial contaminants	Compliance assessment through system assessment (see section 4.1) and operational monitoring (see section 4.2)
	Customized performance targets for removal of groups of microbes	Microbial contaminants	Individually reviewed by public health authority; assessment would then proceed as above
	Guideline values applied to water quality	Threshold chemicals with effects on health that vary widely (e.g., nitrate and cyanobacterial toxins)	Compliance assessment through system assessment (see section 4.1) and operational monitoring (see section 4.2)
Specified technology	National authorities specify specific processes to adequately address constituents with health effects (e.g., generic WSPs for an unprotected catchment)	Constituents with health effect in small municipalities and community supplies	Compliance assessment through system assessment (see section 4.1) and operational monitoring (see section 4.2)

Note: Each target type is based on those above it in this table, and assumptions with default values are introduced in moving down between target types. These assumptions simplify the application of the target and reduce potential inconsistencies.

For chemical constituents of drinking-water, health-based targets can be developed using the guideline values outlined in section 8.5. These have been established on the basis of the health effect of the chemical in water. In developing national drinking-water standards (or health-based targets) based on these guideline values, it will be necessary to take into consideration a variety of environmental, social, cultural, economic, dietary and other conditions affecting potential exposure. This may lead to national targets that differ appreciably from the guideline values.

3.2.1 Specified technology targets

Specified technology targets are most frequently applied to small community supplies and to devices used at household level. They may take the form of recommendations concerning technologies applicable in certain circumstances and/or licensing programmes to restrict access to certain technologies or provide guidance for their application.

Smaller municipal and community drinking-water suppliers often have limited resources and ability to develop individual system assessments and/or management plans. National regulatory agencies may therefore directly specify requirements or approved options. This may imply, for example, providing guidance notes for protection of well heads, specific and approved treatment processes in relation to source types and requirements for protection of drinking-water quality in distribution.

In some circumstances, national or regional authorities may wish to establish model WSPs to be used by local suppliers either directly or with limited adaptation. This may be of particular importance when supplies are community managed. In these circumstances, an approach focusing on ensuring that operators receive adequate training and support to overcome management weaknesses is likely to be more effective than enforcement of compliance.

3.2.2 Performance targets

Performance targets are most frequently applied to the control of microbial hazards in piped supplies varying from small to large.

In situations where short-term exposure is relevant to public health, because water quality varies rapidly or it is not possible to detect hazards between production and consumption, it is necessary to ensure that control measures are in place and operating optimally and to verify their effectiveness in order to secure safe drinking-water.

Performance targets assist in the selection and use of control measures that are capable of preventing pathogens from breaching the barriers of source protection, treatment and distribution systems or preventing growth within the distribution system.

Performance targets should define requirements in relation to source water quality with prime emphasis on processes and practices that will ensure that the targets can be routinely achieved. Most commonly, targets for removal of pathogen groups through water treatment processes will be specified in relation to broad categories of source water quality or source water type and less frequently in relation to specific data on source water quality. The derivation of performance targets requires the integration of factors such as tolerable disease burden (tolerable risk), including severity of disease outcomes and dose–response relationships for specific pathogens (target microbes) (see section 7.3).

Performance targets should be developed for target microbes representing groups of pathogens that combine both control challenges and health significance. In practice, more than one target microbe will normally be required in order to properly reflect diverse challenges to the safeguards available. While performance targets may be derived in relation to exposure to specific pathogens, care is required in relating this to overall population exposure and risk, which may be concentrated into short periods of time.

The principal practical application of performance targets for pathogen control is in assessing the adequacy of drinking-water treatment infrastructure. This is achieved by using information on performance targets with either specific information on treatment performance or assumptions regarding performance of technology types concerning pathogen removal. Examples of performance targets and of treatment effects on pathogens are given in chapter 7.

Performance requirements are also important in certification of devices for drinking-water treatment and for pipe installation that prevents ingress. Certification of devices and materials is discussed elsewhere (see section 1.2.9).

3.2.3 Water quality targets

Adverse health consequences may arise from exposure to chemicals following long-term and, in some cases, short-term exposure. Furthermore, concentrations of most chemicals in drinking-water do not normally fluctuate widely over short periods of time. Management through periodic analysis of drinking-water quality and comparison with WQTs such as guideline values is therefore commonly applied to many chemicals in drinking-water where health effects arise from long-term exposure. While a preventive management approach to water quality should be applied to all drinking-water systems, the guideline values for individual chemicals described in section 8.5 provide health-based targets for chemicals in drinking-water.

Where water treatment processes have been put in place to remove specific chemicals (see section 8.4), WQTs should be used to determine appropriate treatment requirements.

It is important that WQTs are established only for those chemicals that, following rigorous assessment, have been determined to be of health concern or of concern for the acceptability of the drinking-water to consumers. There is little value in undertaking measurements for chemicals that are unlikely to be in the system, that will be present only at concentrations much lower than the guideline value or that have no human health effects or effects on drinking-water acceptability.

WQTs are also used in the certification process for chemicals that occur in water as a result of treatment processes or from materials in contact with water. In such applications, assumptions are made in order to derive standards for materials and chemicals that can be employed in their certification. Generally, allowance must be made for the incremental increase over levels found in water sources. For some materials (e.g., domestic plumbing), assumptions must also account for the relatively high release of some substances for a short period following installation.

For microbial hazards, WQTs in terms of pathogens serve primarily as a step in the development of performance targets and have no direct application. In some circumstances, especially where non-conventional technologies are employed in large facilities, it may be appropriate to establish WQTs for microbial contaminants.

3.2.4 Health outcome targets

In some circumstances, especially where there is a measurable burden of water-related disease, it is possible to establish a health-based target in terms of a quantifiable reduction in the overall level of disease. This is most applicable where adverse effects soon follow exposure and are readily and reliably monitored and where changes in exposure can also be readily and reliably monitored. This type of health outcome target is therefore primarily applicable to microbial hazards in both developing and developed countries and to chemical hazards with clearly defined health effects largely attributable to water (e.g., fluoride).

In other circumstances, health-based targets may be based on the results of quantitative risk assessment. In these cases, health outcomes are estimated based on information concerning exposure and dose–response relationships. The results may be employed directly as a basis to define WQTs or may provide the basis for development of performance targets.

There are limitations in the available data and models for quantitative microbial risk assessment (QMRA). Short-term fluctuations in water quality may have a major impact on overall health risks – including those associated with background rates of disease and outbreaks – and are a particular focus of concern in expanding application of QMRA. Further developments in these fields will significantly enhance the applicability and usefulness of this approach.

3.3 General considerations in establishing health-based targets

While water can be a major source of enteric pathogens and hazardous chemicals, it is by no means the only source. In setting targets, consideration needs to be given to other sources of hazards, including food, air and person-to-person contact, as well as the impact of poor sanitation and personal hygiene. There is limited value in establishing a strict target concentration for a chemical if drinking-water provides only a small proportion of total exposure. The cost of meeting such targets could unnecessarily divert funding from other, more pressing health interventions. It is important to take account of the impact of the proposed intervention on overall rates of disease. For some pathogens and their associated diseases, interventions in water quality may be ineffective and may therefore not be justified. This may be the case where other routes of exposure dominate. For others, long experience has shown the effectiveness of drinking-water supply and quality management (e.g., typhoid, dysentery caused by *Shigella*).

Health-based targets and water quality improvement programmes in general should also be viewed in the context of a broader public health policy, including initiatives to improve sanitation, waste disposal, personal hygiene and public education on mechanisms for reducing both personal exposure to hazards and the impact of personal activity on water quality. Improved public health, reduced carriage of pathogens and reduced human impacts on water resources all contribute to drinking-water safety (see Howard et al., 2002).

3.3.1 Assessment of risk in the framework for safe drinking-water

In the framework for safe drinking-water, assessment of risk is not a goal in its own right but is part of an iterative cycle that uses the assessment of risk to derive management decisions that, when implemented, result in incremental improvements in water quality. For the purposes of these Guidelines, the emphasis of incremental improvement is on health. However, in applying the Guidelines to specific circumstances, non-health factors should be taken into account, as they may have a considerable impact upon both costs and benefits.

3.3.2 Reference level of risk

Descriptions of a “reference level of risk” in relation to water are typically expressed in terms of specific health outcomes – for example, a maximum frequency of diarrhoeal disease or cancer incidence or maximum frequency of infection (but not necessarily disease) with a specific pathogen.

There is a range of water-related illnesses with differing severities, including acute, delayed and chronic effects and both morbidity and mortality. Effects may be as diverse as adverse birth outcomes, cancer, cholera, dysentery, infectious hepatitis, intestinal worms, skeletal fluorosis, typhoid and Guillain-Barré syndrome.

Decisions about risk acceptance are highly complex and need to take account of different dimensions of risk. In addition to the “objective” dimensions of probability, severity and duration of an effect, there are important environmental, social, cultural, economic and political dimensions that play important roles in decision-making. Negotiations play an important role in these processes, and the outcome may very well be unique in each situation. Notwithstanding the complexity of decisions about risk, there is a need for a baseline definition of tolerable risk for the development of guidelines and as a departure point for decisions in specific situations.

A reference level of risk enables the comparison of water-related diseases with one another and a consistent approach for dealing with each hazard. For the purposes of these Guidelines, a reference level of risk is used for broad equivalence between the levels of protection afforded to toxic chemicals and those afforded to microbial pathogens. For these purposes, only the health effects of waterborne diseases are taken into account. The reference level of risk is 10^{-6} disability-adjusted life-years (DALYs) per person per year, which is approximately equivalent to a lifetime excess cancer risk of 10^{-5} (i.e., 1 excess case of cancer per 100 000 of the population ingesting drinking-water containing the substance at the guideline value over a life span) (see section 3.3.3 for further details). For a pathogen causing watery diarrhoea with a low case fatality rate (e.g., 1 in 100 000), this reference level of risk would be equivalent to 1/1000 annual risk of disease to an individual (approximately 1/10 over a lifetime). The reference level of risk can be adapted to local circumstances on the basis of a risk–benefit approach. In particular, account should be taken of the fraction of the burden of a particular disease that is likely to be associated with drinking-water. Public health prioritization would normally indicate that major contributors should be dealt with preferentially, taking account of the costs and impacts of potential interventions. This is also the rationale underlying the incremental development and application of standards. The application of DALYs for setting a reference level of risk is a new and evolving approach. A particular challenge is to define human health effects associated with exposure to non-threshold chemicals.

3.3.3 Disability-adjusted life-years (DALYs)

The diverse hazards that may be present in water are associated with very diverse adverse health outcomes. Some outcomes are acute (diarrhoea, methaemoglobinaemia), and others are delayed (cancer by years, infectious hepatitis by weeks); some are potentially severe (cancer, adverse birth outcomes, typhoid), and others are typically mild (diarrhoea and dental fluorosis); some especially affect certain age ranges (skeletal fluorosis in older adults often arises from exposure in childhood; infection with hepatitis E virus [HEV] has a very high mortality rate among pregnant women), and some have very specific concern for certain vulnerable subpopulations (cryptosporidiosis is mild and self-limiting for the population at large but has a high mortality rate among those who test positive for human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]). In addition, any one hazard may cause multiple effects (e.g., gastroenteritis, Gullain-Barré syndrome, reactive arthritis and mortality associated with *Campylobacter*).

In order to be able to objectively compare water-related hazards and the different outcomes with which they are associated, a common "metric" that can take account of differing probabilities, severities and duration of effects is needed. Such a metric should also be applicable regardless of the type of hazard, applying to microbial, chemical and radiological hazards. The metric used in the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* is the DALY. WHO has quite extensively used DALYs to evaluate public health priorities and to assess the disease burden associated with environmental exposures.

The basic principle of the DALY is to weight each health effect for its severity from 0 (normal good health) to 1 (death). This weight is multiplied by the duration of the effect – the time in which disease is apparent (when the outcome is death, the "duration" is the remaining life expectancy) – and by the number of people affected by a particular outcome. It is then possible to sum the effects of all different outcomes due to a particular agent.

Thus, the DALY is the sum of years of life lost by premature mortality (YLL) and years of healthy life lost in states of less than full health, i.e., years lived with a disability (YLD), which are standardized by means of severity weights. Thus:

$$\text{DALY} = \text{YLL} + \text{YLD}$$

Key advantages of using DALYs are its "aggregation" of different effects and its combining of quality and quantity of life. In addition – and because the approaches taken require explicit recognition of assumptions made – it is possible to discuss these and assess the impact of their variation. The use of an outcome metric also focuses attention on actual rather than potential hazards and thereby promotes and enables rational public health priority setting. Most of the difficulties in using DALYs relate to availability of data – for example, on exposure and on epidemiological associations.

DALYs can also be used to compare the health impact of different agents in water. For example, ozone is a chemical disinfectant that produces bromate as a by-product. DALYs have been used to compare the risks from *Cryptosporidium parvum* and bromate and to assess the net health benefits of ozonation in drinking-water treatment.

In previous editions of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* and in many national drinking-water standards, a "tolerable" risk of cancer has been used to derive guideline values for non-threshold chemicals such as genotoxic carcinogens. This is necessary because there is some (theoretical) risk at any level of exposure. In this and previous editions of the Guidelines, an upper-bound excess lifetime risk of cancer of 10^{-5} has been used, while accepting that this is a conservative position and almost certainly overestimates the true risk.

Different cancers have different severities, manifested mainly by different mortality rates. A typical example is renal cell cancer, associated with exposure to bromate in drinking-water. The theoretical disease burden of renal cell cancer, taking into account an average case:fatality ratio of 0.6 and average age at onset of 65 years, is 11.4 DALYs per case (Havelaar et al., 2000). These data can be used to assess tolerable lifetime cancer risk and a tolerable annual loss of DALYs. Here, we account for the lifelong exposure to carcinogens by dividing the tolerable risk over a life span of 70 years and multiplying by the disease burden per case: (10^{-5} cancer cases / 70 years of life) × 11.4 DALYs per case = 1.6×10^{-6} DALYs per person-year or a tolerable loss of 1.6 healthy life-years in a population of a million over a year.

For guideline derivation, the preferred option is to define an upper level of tolerable risk that is the same for exposure to each hazard (contaminant or constituent in water). As noted above, for the purposes of these Guidelines, the reference level of risk employed is 10^{-6} DALYs per person-year. This is approximately equivalent to the 10^{-5} excess lifetime risk of cancer used in this and previous editions of the Guidelines to determine guideline values for genotoxic carcinogens. For countries that use a stricter definition of the level of acceptable risk of carcinogens (such as 10^{-6}), the tolerable loss will be proportionately lower (such as 10^{-7} DALYs per person-year).

Further information on the use of DALYs in establishing health-based targets is included in the supporting document *Quantifying Public Health Risk in the WHO Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* (see section 1.3).

4
Water safety plans

The most effective means of consistently ensuring the safety of a drinking-water supply is through the use of a comprehensive risk assessment and risk management approach that encompasses all steps in water supply from catchment to consumer. In these Guidelines, such approaches are termed *water safety plans* (WSPs). The WSP approach has been developed to organize and systematize a long history of management practices applied to drinking-water and to ensure the applicability of these practices to the management of drinking-water quality. It draws on many of the principles and concepts from other risk management approaches, in particular the multiple-barrier approach and HACCP (as used in the food industry).

This chapter focuses on the principles of WSPs and is not a comprehensive guide to the application of these practices. Further information on how to develop a WSP is available in the supporting document *Water Safety Plans* (section 1.3).

Some elements of a WSP will often be implemented as part of a drinking-water supplier's usual practice or as part of benchmarked good practice without consolidation into a comprehensive WSP. This may include quality assurance systems (e.g., ISO 9001:2000). Existing good management practices provide a suitable platform for integrating WSP principles. However, existing practices may not include system-tailored hazard identification and risk assessment as a starting point for system management.

WSPs can vary in complexity, as appropriate for the situation. In many cases, they will be quite simple, focusing on the key hazards identified for the specific system. The wide range of examples of control measures given in the following text does not imply that all of these are appropriate in all cases. WSPs are a powerful tool for the drinking-water supplier to manage the supply safely. They also assist surveillance by public health authorities.

WSPs should, by preference, be developed for individual drinking-water systems. However, for small systems, this may not be realistic, and either specified technology WSPs or model WSPs with guides for their development are prepared. For smaller systems, the WSP is likely to be developed by a statutory body or accredited third-party organization. In these settings, guidance on household water storage, handling and use may also be required. Plans dealing with household water should be linked to a hygiene education programme and advice to households in maintaining water safety.

A WSP has three key components (Figure 4.1), which are guided by health-based targets (see chapter 3) and overseen through drinking-water supply surveillance (see chapter 5). They are:

A WSP comprises, as a minimum, the three essential actions that are the responsibility of the drinking-water supplier in order to ensure that drinking-water is safe. These are:

- a system assessment;
- effective operational monitoring; and
- management.

— *system assessment* to determine whether the drinking-water supply chain (up to the point of consumption) as a whole can deliver water of a quality that meets health-based targets. This also includes the assessment of design criteria of new systems;
— identifying control measures in a drinking-water system that will collectively control identified risks and ensure that the health-based targets are met. For each control measure identified, an appropriate means of *operational monitoring* should be defined that will ensure that any deviation from required performance is rapidly detected in a timely manner; and
— *management* plans describing actions to be taken during normal operation or incident conditions and documenting the system assessment (including upgrade and improvement), monitoring and communication plans and supporting programmes.

The primary objectives of a WSP in ensuring good drinking-water supply practice are the minimization of contamination of source waters, the reduction or removal of contamination through treatment processes and the prevention of contamination during storage, distribution and handling of drinking-water. These objectives are equally applicable to large piped drinking-water supplies, small community supplies and household systems and are achieved through:

— development of an understanding of the specific system and its capability to supply water that meets health-based targets;
— identification of potential sources of contamination and how they can be controlled;
— validation of control measures employed to control hazards;
— implementation of a system for monitoring the control measures within the water system;
— timely corrective actions to ensure that safe water is consistently supplied; and
— undertaking verification of drinking-water quality to ensure that the WSP is being implemented correctly and is achieving the performance required to meet relevant national, regional and local water quality standards or objectives.

For the WSP to be relied on for controlling the hazards and hazardous events for which it was set in place, it needs to be supported by accurate and reliable technical

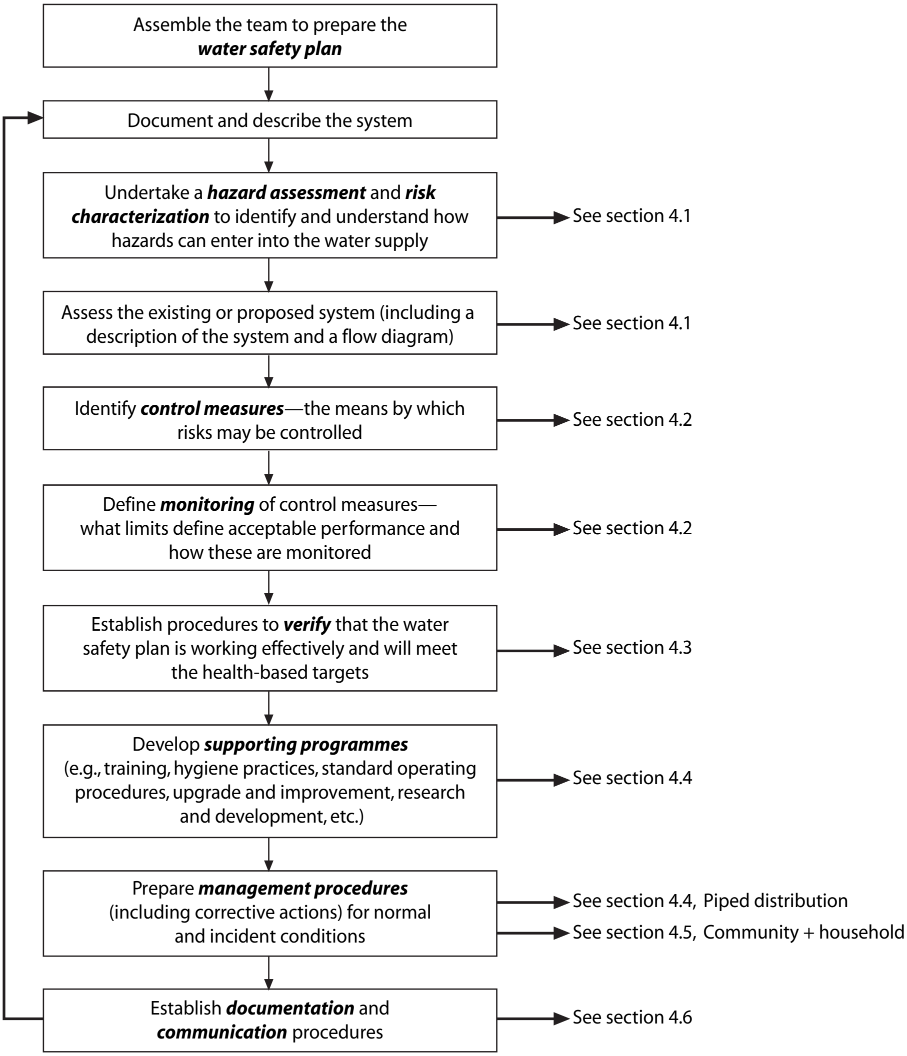


Figure 4.1 Overview of the key steps in developing a water safety plan (WSP)

information. This process of obtaining evidence that the WSP is effective is known as *validation*. Such information could be obtained from relevant industry bodies, from partnering and benchmarking with larger authorities (to optimize resource sharing), from scientific and technical literature and from expert judgement. Assumptions and manufacturer specifications for each piece of equipment and each barrier need to be validated for each system being studied to ensure that the equipment or barrier is effective in that system. System-specific validation is essential, as variabilities in water composition, for instance, may have a large impact on the efficacy of certain removal processes.

Validation normally includes more extensive and intensive monitoring than routine operational monitoring, in order to determine whether system units are performing as assumed in the system assessment. This process often leads to improvements in operating performance through the identification of the most effective and robust operating modes. Additional benefits of the validation process may include identification of more suitable operational monitoring parameters for unit performance.

Verification of drinking-water quality provides an indication of the overall performance of the drinking-water system and the ultimate quality of drinking-water being supplied to consumers. This incorporates monitoring of drinking-water quality as well as assessment of consumer satisfaction.

Where a defined entity is responsible for a drinking-water supply, its responsibility should include the preparation and implementation of a WSP. This plan should normally be reviewed and agreed upon with the authority responsible for protection of public health to ensure that it will deliver water of a quality consistent with the health-based targets.

Where there is no formal service provider, the competent national or regional authority should act as a source of information and guidance on the adequacy of appropriate management of community and individual drinking-water supplies. This will include defining requirements for operational monitoring and management. Approaches to verification in these circumstances will depend on the capacity of local authorities and communities and should be defined in national policy.

4.1 System assessment and design

The first stage in developing a WSP is to form a multidisciplinary team of experts with a thorough understanding of the drinking-water system involved. Typically, such a team would include individuals involved in each stage of the supply of drinking-water, such as engineers, catchment and water managers, water quality specialists, environmental or public health or hygienist professionals, operational staff and representatives of consumers. In most settings, the team will include members from several institutions, and there should be some independent members, such as from professional organizations or universities.

Effective management of the drinking-water system requires a comprehensive understanding of the system, the range and magnitude of hazards that may be present and the ability of existing processes and infrastructure to manage actual or potential risks. It also requires an assessment of capabilities to meet targets. When a new system or an upgrade of an existing system is being planned, the first step in developing a WSP is the collection and evaluation of all available relevant information and consideration of what risks may arise during delivery of water to the consumer.

Effective risk management requires the identification of potential hazards, their sources and potential hazardous events and an assessment of the level of risk presented by each. In this context:

- a **hazard** is a biological, chemical, physical or radiological agent that has the potential to cause harm;
- a **hazardous event** is an incident or situation that can lead to the presence of a hazard (what can happen and how); and
- **risk** is the likelihood of identified hazards causing harm in exposed populations in a specified time frame, including the magnitude of that harm and/or the consequences.

Assessment of the drinking-water system supports subsequent steps in the WSP in which effective strategies for control of hazards are planned and implemented.

The assessment and evaluation of a drinking-water system are enhanced through the development of a flow diagram. Diagrams provide an overview description of the drinking-water system, including characterization of the source, identification of potential pollution sources in the catchment, measures for resource and source protection, treatment processes, storage and distribution infrastructure. It is essential that the representation of the drinking-water system is conceptually accurate. If the flow diagram is not correct, it is possible to overlook potential hazards that may be significant. To ensure accuracy, the flow diagram should be validated by visually checking the diagram against features observed on the ground.

Data on the occurrence of pathogens and chemicals in source waters combined with information concerning the effectiveness of existing controls enable an assessment of whether health-based targets can be achieved with the existing infrastructure. They also assist in identifying catchment management measures, treatment processes and distribution system operating conditions that would reasonably be expected to achieve those targets if improvements are required.

It may often be more efficient to invest in preventive processes within the catchment than to invest in major treatment infrastructure to manage a hazard.

To ensure the accuracy of the assessment, it is essential that all elements of the drinking-water system (resource and source protection, treatment and distribution) are considered concurrently and that interactions and influences between each element and their overall effect are taken into consideration.

4.1.1 New systems

When drinking-water supply sources are being investigated or developed, it is prudent to undertake a wide range of analyses in order to establish overall safety and to determine potential sources of contamination of the drinking-water supply source. These would normally include hydrological analysis, geological assessment and land use inventories to determine potential chemical and radiological contaminants.

When designing new systems, all water quality factors should be taken into account in selecting technologies for abstraction and treatment of new resources. Variations in the turbidity and other parameters of raw surface waters can be very great, and allowance must be made for this. Treatment plants should be designed to take account of variations known or expected to occur with significant frequency rather than for average water quality; otherwise, filters may rapidly become blocked or sedimentation tanks overloaded. The chemical aggressiveness of some groundwaters may affect the integrity of borehole casings and pumps, leading to unacceptably high levels of iron in the supply, eventual breakdown and expensive repair work. Both the quality and availability of drinking-water may be reduced and public health endangered.

4.1.2 Collecting and evaluating available data

Table 4.1 provides examples of areas that should normally be taken into consideration as part of the assessment of the drinking-water system. In most cases, consultation with public health and other sectors, including land and water users and all those who regulate activities in the catchment, will be required for the analysis of catchments. A structured approach is important to ensure that significant issues are not overlooked and that areas of greatest risk are identified.

The overall assessment of the drinking-water system should take into consideration any historical water quality data that assist in understanding source water characteristics and drinking-water system performance both over time and following specific events (e.g., heavy rainfall).

Prioritizing hazards for control

Once potential hazards and their sources have been identified, the risk associated with each hazard or hazardous event should be compared so that priorities for risk management can be established and documented. Although there are numerous contaminants that can compromise drinking-water quality, not every hazard will require the same degree of attention.

The risk associated with each hazard or hazardous event may be described by identifying the likelihood of occurrence (e.g., certain, possible, rare) and evaluating the severity of consequences if the hazard occurred (e.g., insignificant, major, catastrophic). The aim should be to distinguish between important and less important hazards or hazardous events. The approach used typically involves a semiquantitative matrix.

Simple scoring matrices typically apply technical information from guidelines, scientific literature and industry practice with well informed "expert" judgement supported by peer review or benchmarking. Scoring is specific for each drinking-water system, since each system is unique. Where generic WSPs are developed for technologies used by small drinking-water systems, the scoring will be specific to the technology rather than the individual drinking-water system.

By using a semiquantitative scoring, control measures can be ranked in relation to the most significant hazards. A variety of approaches to ranking risk can be applied.

Table 4.1 Examples of information useful in assessing a drinking-water system

Component of drinking-water system	Information to consider in assessing component of drinking-water system
Catchments	• Geology and hydrology • Meteorology and weather patterns • General catchment and river health • Wildlife • Competing water uses • Nature and intensity of development and land use • Other activities in the catchment that potentially release contaminants into source water • Planned future activities
Surface water	• Description of water body type (e.g., river, reservoir, dam) • Physical characteristics (e.g., size, depth, thermal stratification, altitude) • Flow and reliability of source water • Retention times • Water constituents (physical, chemical, microbial) • Protection (e.g., enclosures, access) • Recreational and other human activity • Bulk water transport
Groundwater	• Confined or unconfined aquifer • Aquifer hydrogeology • Flow rate and direction • Dilution characteristics • Recharge area • Wellhead protection • Depth of casing • Bulk water transport
Treatment	• Treatment processes (including optional processes) • Equipment design • Monitoring equipment and automation • Water treatment chemicals used • Treatment efficiencies • Disinfection removals of pathogens • Disinfectant residual / contact time
Service reservoirs and distribution	• Reservoir design • Retention times • Seasonal variations • Protection (e.g., covers, enclosures, access) • Distribution system design • Hydraulic conditions (e.g., water age, pressures, flows) • Backflow protection • Disinfectant residuals

An example of an approach is given in Table 4.2. Application of this matrix relies to a significant extent on expert opinion to make judgements on the health risk posed by hazards or hazardous events.

An example of descriptors that can be used to rate the likelihood of occurrence and severity of consequences is given in Table 4.3. A “cut-off” point must be deter-

Table 4.2 Example of a simple risk scoring matrix for ranking risks

	Severity of consequences				
Likelihood	**Insignificant**	**Minor**	**Moderate**	**Major**	**Catastrophic**
Almost certain	▒	▓	▩	▦	■
Likely	░	▒	▓	▩	▦
Moderately likely		▒	▓	▓	▩
Unlikely		░	▒	▒	▓
Rare				░	▒

Table 4.3 Examples of definitions of likelihood and severity categories that can be used in risk scoring

Item	**Definition**
Likelihood categories	
Almost certain	Once per day
Likely	Once per week
Moderately likely	Once per month
Unlikely	Once per year
Rare	Once every 5 years
Severity categories	
Catastrophic	Potentially lethal to large population
Major	Potentially lethal to small population
Moderate	Potentially harmful to large population
Minor	Potentially harmful to small population
Insignificant	No impact or not detectable

mined, above which all hazards will require immediate attention. There is little value in expending large amounts of effort to consider very small risks.

Control measures

Control measures are those steps in drinking-water supply that directly affect drinking-water quality and that collectively ensure that drinking-water consistently meets health-based targets. They are activities and processes applied to prevent hazard occurrence.

The assessment and planning of control measures should ensure that health-based targets will be met and should be based on hazard identification and assessment. The level of control applied to a hazard should be proportional to the associated ranking. Assessment of control measures involves:

- identifying existing control measures for each significant hazard or hazardous event from catchment to consumer;
- evaluating whether the control measures, when considered together, are effective in controlling risk to acceptable levels; and
- if improvement is required, evaluating alternative and additional control measures that could be applied.

Identification and implementation of control measures should be based on the multiple-barrier principle. The strength of this approach is that a failure of one barrier may be compensated by effective operation of the remaining barriers, thus minimizing the likelihood of contaminants passing through the entire system and being present in sufficient amounts to cause harm to consumers. Many control measures may contribute to control more than one hazard, while some hazards may require more than one control measure for effective control. Examples of control measures are provided in the following sections.

All control measures are important and should be afforded ongoing attention. They should be subject to operational monitoring and control, with the means of monitoring and frequency of data collection based on the nature of the control measure and the rapidity with which change may occur (see section 4.4.3).

4.1.3 Resource and source protection

Effective catchment management has many benefits. By decreasing the contamination of the source water, the amount of treatment required is reduced. This may reduce the production of treatment by-products and minimize operational costs.

Hazard identification

Understanding the reasons for variations in raw water quality is important, as it will influence the requirements for treatment, treatment efficiency and the resulting health risk associated with the finished water. In general, raw water quality is influenced by both natural and human use factors. Important natural factors include wildlife, climate, topography, geology and vegetation. Human use factors include point sources (e.g., municipal and industrial wastewater discharges) and non-point sources (e.g., urban and agricultural runoff, including agrochemicals, livestock or recreational use). For example, discharges of municipal wastewater can be a major source of pathogens; urban runoff and livestock can contribute substantial microbial load; body contact recreation can be a source of faecal contamination; and agricultural runoff can lead to increased challenges to treatment.

Whether water is drawn from surface or underground sources, it is important that the characteristics of the local catchment or aquifer are understood and that the scenarios that could lead to water pollution are identified and managed. The extent to which potentially polluting activities in the catchment can be reduced may appear to be limited by competition for water and pressure for increased development in the catchment. However, introducing good practice in containment of hazards is often possible without substantially restricting activities, and collaboration between stakeholders may be a powerful tool to reduce pollution without reducing beneficial development.

Resource protection and source protection provide the first barriers in protection of drinking-water quality. Where catchment management is beyond the jurisdiction of the drinking-water supplier, the planning and implementation of control measures will require coordination with other agencies. These may include planning authorities, catchment boards, environmental and water resource regulators, road authorities, emergency services and agricultural, industrial and other commercial entities whose activities have an impact on water quality. It may not be possible to apply all aspects of resource and source protection initially; nevertheless, priority should be given to catchment management. This will contribute to a sense of ownership and joint responsibility for drinking-water resources through multistakeholder bodies that assess pollution risks and develop plans for improving management practices for reducing these risks.

Groundwater from depth and confined aquifers is usually microbially safe and chemically stable in the absence of direct contamination; however, shallow or unconfined aquifers can be subject to contamination from discharges or seepages associated with agricultural practices (e.g., pathogens, nitrates and pesticides), on-site sanitation and sewerage (pathogens and nitrates) and industrial wastes. Hazards and hazardous events that can have an impact on catchments and that should be taken into consideration as part of a hazard assessment include:

— rapid variations in raw water quality;
— sewage and septic system discharges;
— industrial discharges;
— chemical use in catchment areas (e.g., use of fertilizers and agricultural pesticides);
— major spills (including relationship to public roads and transport routes), both accidental and deliberate;
— human access (e.g., recreational activity);
— wildlife and livestock;
— land use (e.g., animal husbandry, agriculture, forestry, industrial area, waste disposal, mining) and changes in land use;
— inadequate buffer zones and vegetation, soil erosion and failure of sediment traps;
— stormwater flows and discharges;
— active or closed waste disposal or mining sites / contaminated sites / hazardous wastes;
— geology (naturally occurring chemicals);
— unconfined and shallow aquifer (including groundwater under direct influence of surface water);
— inadequate wellhead protection, uncased or inadequately cased bores and unhygienic practices; and
— climatic and seasonal variations (e.g., heavy rainfalls, droughts) and natural disasters.

Further hazards and hazardous situations that can have an impact on storage reservoirs and intakes and that should be taken into consideration as part of a hazard assessment include:

- human access / absence of exclusion areas;
- short circuiting of reservoir;
- depletion of reservoir storage;
- lack of selective withdrawal;
- lack of alternative water sources;
- unsuitable intake location;
- cyanobacterial blooms;
- stratification; and
- failure of alarms and monitoring equipment.

Control measures

Effective resource and source protection includes the following elements:

- developing and implementing a catchment management plan, which includes control measures to protect surface water and groundwater sources;
- ensuring that planning regulations include the protection of water resources (land use planning and watershed management) from potentially polluting activities and are enforced; and
- promoting awareness in the community of the impact of human activity on water quality.

Examples of control measures for effective protection of source water and catchments include:

- designated and limited uses;
- registration of chemicals used in catchments;
- specific protective requirements (e.g., containment) for chemical industry or refuelling stations;
- reservoir mixing/destratification to reduce growth of cyanobacteria or to reduce anoxic hypolimnion and solubilization of sedimentary manganese and iron;
- pH adjustment of reservoir water;
- control of human activities within catchment boundaries;
- control of wastewater effluents;
- land use planning procedures, use of planning and environmental regulations to regulate potential water-polluting developments;
- regular inspections of catchment areas;
- diversion of local stormwater flows;
- protection of waterways;
- runoff interception; and
- security to prevent tampering.

Similarly, control measures for effective protection of water extraction and storage systems include:

- — use of available water storage during and after periods of heavy rainfall;
- — appropriate location and protection of intake;
- — appropriate choice of off-take depth from reservoirs;
- — proper well construction, including casing, sealing and wellhead security;
- — proper location of wells;
- — water storage systems to maximize retention times;
- — storages and reservoirs with appropriate stormwater collection and drainage;
- — security from access by animals; and
- — security to prevent unauthorized access and tampering.

Where a number of water sources are available, there may be flexibility in the selection of water for treatment and supply. It may be possible to avoid taking water from rivers and streams when water quality is poor (e.g., following heavy rainfall) in order to reduce risk and prevent potential problems in subsequent treatment processes.

Retention of water in reservoirs can reduce the number of faecal microorganisms through settling and inactivation, including solar (ultraviolet [UV]) disinfection, but also provides opportunities for contamination to be introduced. Most pathogenic microorganisms of faecal origin (enteric pathogens) do not survive indefinitely in the environment. Substantial die-off of enteric bacteria will occur over a period of weeks. Enteric viruses and protozoa will often survive for longer periods (weeks to months) but are often removed by settling and antagonism from indigenous microbes. Retention also allows suspended material to settle, which makes subsequent disinfection more effective and reduces the formation of DBPs.

Control measures for groundwater sources should include protecting the aquifer and the local area around the borehead from contamination and ensuring the physical integrity of the bore (surface sealed, casing intact, etc.).

Further information on the use of indicators in catchment characterization is available in chapter 4 of the supporting document *Assessing Microbial Safety of Drinking Water* (section 1.3).

4.1.4 Treatment

After source water protection, the next barriers to contamination of the drinking-water system are those of water treatment processes, including disinfection and physical removal of contaminants.

Hazard identification

Hazards may be introduced during treatment, or hazardous circumstances may allow contaminants to pass through treatment in significant concentrations. Constituents of drinking-water can be introduced through the treatment process, including chemical additives used in the treatment process or products in contact with drinking-water. Sporadic high turbidity in source water can overwhelm treatment processes, allowing enteric pathogens into treated water and the distribution system. Similarly, suboptimal filtration following filter backwashing can lead to the introduction of pathogens into the distribution system.

Examples of potential hazards and hazardous events that can have an impact on the performance of drinking-water treatment include the following:

—flow variations outside design limits;
—inappropriate or insufficient treatment processes, including disinfection;
—inadequate backup (infrastructure, human resources);
—process control failure and malfunction or poor reliability of equipment;
—use of unapproved or contaminated water treatment chemicals and materials;
—chemical dosing failures;
—inadequate mixing;
—failure of alarms and monitoring equipment;
—power failures;
—accidental and deliberate pollution;
—natural disasters;
—formation of DBPs; and
—cross-connections to contaminated water/wastewater, internal short circuiting.

Control measures

Control measures may include pretreatment, coagulation/flocculation/sedimentation, filtration and disinfection.

Pretreatment includes processes such as roughing filters, microstrainers, off-stream storage and bankside filtration. Pretreatment options may be compatible with a variety of treatment processes ranging in complexity from simple disinfection to membrane processes. Pretreatment can reduce and/or stabilize the microbial, natural organic matter and particulate load.

Coagulation, flocculation, sedimentation (or flotation) and filtration remove particles, including microorganisms (bacteria, viruses and protozoa). It is important that processes are optimized and controlled to achieve consistent and reliable performance. Chemical coagulation is the most important step in determining the removal efficiency of coagulation/flocculation/clarification processes. It also directly affects the removal efficiency of granular media filtration units and has indirect impacts on the efficiency of the disinfection process. While it is unlikely that the coagulation process itself introduces any new microbial hazards to finished water, a failure or inefficiency in the coagulation process could result in an increased microbial load entering drinking-water distribution.

Various filtration processes are used in drinking-water treatment, including granular, slow sand, precoat and membrane (microfiltration, ultrafiltration, nanofiltration and reverse osmosis) filtration. With proper design and operation, filtration can act as a consistent and effective barrier for microbial pathogens and may in some cases be the only treatment barrier (e.g., for removing *Cryptosporidium* oocysts by direct filtration when chlorine is used as the sole disinfectant).

Application of an adequate level of disinfection is an essential element for most treatment systems to achieve the necessary level of microbial risk reduction. Taking account of the level of microbial inactivation required for the more resistant microbial pathogens through the application of the Ct concept (product of disinfectant concentration and contact time) for a particular pH and temperature ensures that other more sensitive microbes are also effectively controlled. Where disinfection is used, measures to minimize DBP formation should be taken into consideration.

The most commonly used disinfection process is chlorination. Ozonation, UV irradiation, chloramination and application of chlorine dioxide are also used. These methods are very effective in killing bacteria and can be reasonably effective in inactivating viruses (depending on type) and many protozoa, including *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium*. For effective removal or inactivation of protozoal cysts and oocysts, filtration with the aid of coagulation/flocculation (to reduce particles and turbidity) followed by disinfection (by one or a combination of disinfectants) is the most practical method.

Examples of treatment control measures include:

- coagulation/flocculation and sedimentation;
- use of approved water treatment chemicals and materials;
- control of water treatment chemicals;
- process controls;
- availability of backup systems;
- water treatment process optimization, including
  - chemical dosing
  - filter backwashing
  - flow rate
- use of water in storage in periods of poor-quality raw water; and
- security to prevent unauthorized access and tampering.

Storage of water after disinfection and before supply to consumers can improve disinfection by increasing disinfectant contact times. This can be particularly important for more resistant microorganisms, such as *Giardia* and some viruses.

Further information can be found in the supporting document *Water Treatment and Pathogen Control* (section 1.3).

4.1.5 Piped distribution systems

Water treatment should be optimized to prevent microbial growth, corrosion of pipe materials and the formation of deposits through measures such as:

- continuous and reliable elimination of particles and the production of water of low turbidity;

- precipitation and removal of dissolved (and particulate) iron and manganese;
- minimizing the carry-over of residual coagulant (dissolved, colloidal or particulate), which may precipitate in reservoirs and pipework;
- reducing as far as possible the dissolved organic matter and especially easily biodegradable organic carbon, which provides nutrients for microorganisms; and
- maintaining the corrosion potential within limits that avoid damage to the structural materials and consumption of disinfectant.

Maintaining good water quality in the distribution system will depend on the design and operation of the system and on maintenance and survey procedures to prevent contamination and to prevent and remove accumulation of internal deposits.

Further information is available in the supporting document *Safe Piped Water* (section 1.3).

Hazard identification

The protection of the distribution system is essential for providing safe drinking-water. Because of the nature of the distribution system, which may include many kilometres of pipe, storage tanks, interconnections with industrial users and the potential for tampering and vandalism, opportunities for microbial and chemical contamination exist.

Contamination can occur within the distribution system:

- when contaminated water in the subsurface material and especially nearby sewers surrounding the distribution system enters because of low internal pipe pressure or through the effect of a "pressure wave" within the system (infiltration/ingress);
- when contaminated water is drawn into the distribution system or storage reservoir through backflow resulting from a reduction in line pressure and a physical link between contaminated water and the storage or distribution system;
- through open or insecure treated water storage reservoirs and aqueducts, which are potentially vulnerable to surface runoff from the land and to attracting animals and waterfowl as faecal contamination sources and may be insecure against vandalism and tampering;
- through pipe bursts when existing mains are repaired or replaced or when new water mains are installed, potentially leading to the introduction of contaminated soil or debris into the system;
- through human error resulting in the unintentional cross-connection of wastewater or stormwater pipes to the distribution system or through illegal or unauthorized connections;
- through leaching of chemicals and heavy metals from materials such as pipes, solders / jointing compounds, taps and chemicals used in cleaning and disinfection of distribution systems; and
- when petrol or oil diffuses through plastic pipes.

In each case, if the contaminated water contains pathogens or hazardous chemicals, it is likely that consumers will be exposed to them.

Even where disinfectant residuals are employed to limit microbial occurrence, they may be inadequate to overcome the contamination or may be ineffective against some or all of the pathogen types introduced. As a result, pathogens may occur in concentrations that could lead to infection and illness.

Where water is supplied intermittently, the resulting low water pressure will allow the ingress of contaminated water into the system through breaks, cracks, joints and pinholes. Intermittent supplies are not desirable but are very common in many countries and are frequently associated with contamination. The control of water quality in intermittent supplies represents a significant challenge, as the risks of infiltration and backflow increase significantly. The risks may be elevated seasonally as soil moisture conditions increase the likelihood of a pressure gradient developing from the soil to the pipe. Where contaminants enter the pipes in an intermittent supply, the charging of the system when supply is restored may increase risks to consumers, as a concentrated "slug" of contaminated water can be expected to flow through the system. Where household storage is used to overcome intermittent supply, localized use of disinfectants to reduce microbial proliferation may be warranted.

Drinking-water entering the distribution system may contain free-living amoebae and environmental strains of various heterotrophic bacterial and fungal species. Under favourable conditions, amoebae and heterotrophs, including strains of *Citrobacter*, *Enterobacter* and *Klebsiella*, may colonize distribution systems and form biofilms. There is no evidence to implicate the occurrence of most microorganisms from biofilms (excepting, for example, *Legionella*, which can colonize water systems in buildings) with adverse health effects in the general population through drinking-water, with the possible exception of severely immunocompromised people (see the supporting document *Heterotrophic Plate Counts and Drinking-water Safety*; section 1.3).

Water temperatures and nutrient concentrations are not generally elevated enough within the distribution system to support the growth of *E. coli* (or enteric pathogenic bacteria) in biofilms. Thus, the presence of *E. coli* should be considered as evidence of recent faecal contamination.

Natural disasters, including flood, drought and earth tremors, may significantly affect piped water distribution systems.

Control measures

Water entering the distribution system must be microbially safe and ideally should also be biologically stable. The distribution system itself must provide a secure barrier to contamination as the water is transported to the user. Maintaining a disinfectant residual throughout the distribution system can provide some protection against contamination and limit microbial growth problems. Chloramination has proved successful in controlling *Naegleria fowleri* in water and sediments in long pipelines and may reduce regrowth of *Legionella* within buildings.

Residual disinfectant will provide partial protection against microbial contamination, but may also mask the detection of contamination through conventional faecal indicator bacteria such as *E. coli*, particularly by resistant organisms. Where a disinfectant residual is used within a distribution system, measures to minimize DBP production should be taken into consideration.

Water distribution systems should be fully enclosed, and storage reservoirs and tanks should be securely roofed with external drainage to prevent contamination. Control of short circuiting and prevention of stagnation in both storage and distribution contribute to prevention of microbial growth. A number of strategies can be adopted to maintain the quality of water within the distribution system, including use of backflow prevention devices, maintaining positive pressure throughout the system and implementation of efficient maintenance procedures. It is also important that appropriate security measures be put in place to prevent unauthorized access to or interference with the drinking-water system infrastructure.

Control measures may include using a more stable secondary disinfecting chemical (e.g., chloramines instead of free chlorine), undertaking a programme of pipe replacement, flushing and relining and maintaining positive pressure in the distribution system. Reducing the time that water is in the system by avoiding stagnation in storage tanks, loops and dead-end sections will also contribute to maintaining drinking-water quality.

Other examples of distribution system control measures include the following:

— distribution system maintenance;
— availability of backup systems (power supply);
— maintaining an adequate disinfectant residual;
— implementing cross-connection and backflow prevention devices;
— fully enclosed distribution system and storages;
— appropriate repair procedures, including subsequent disinfection of water mains;
— maintaining adequate system pressure; and
— maintaining security to prevent sabotage, illegal tapping and tampering.

Further information is available in the supporting document *Safe Piped Water* (section 1.3).

4.1.6 Non-piped, community and household systems

Hazard identification

Hazard identification would ideally be on a case-by-case basis. In practice, however, for non-piped, community and household drinking-water systems, reliance is typically placed on general assumptions of hazardous conditions that are relevant for technologies or system types and that may be defined at a national or regional level.

Examples of hazards and hazardous situations potentially associated with various non-piped sources of water include the following:

- tubewell fitted with a hand pump
  - —ingress of contaminated surface water directly into borehole
  - —ingress of contaminants due to poor construction or damage to the lining
  - —leaching of microbial contaminants into aquifer
- simple protected spring
  - —contamination directly through "backfill" area
  - —contaminated surface water causes rapid recharge
- simple dug well
  - —ingress of contaminants due to poor construction or damage to the lining
  - —contamination introduced by buckets
- rainwater collection
  - —bird and other animal droppings found on roof or in guttering
  - —first flush of water can enter storage tank.

Further guidance is provided in the supporting document *Water Safety Plans* (section 1.3) and in Volume 3 of the *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality*.

Control measures

The control measures required ideally depend on the characteristics of the source water and the associated catchment; in practice, standard approaches may be applied for each of these, rather than customized assessment of each system.

Examples of control measures for various non-piped sources include the following:

- tubewell fitted with a hand pump
  - —proper wellhead completion measures
  - —provide adequate set-back distances for contaminant sources such as latrines or animal husbandry, ideally based on travel time
- simple protected spring
  - —maintain effective spring protection measures
  - —establish set-back distance based on travel time
- simple dug well
  - —proper construction and use of a mortar seal on lining
  - —install and maintain hand pump or other sanitary means of abstraction
- rainwater collection
  - —cleaning of roof and gutters
  - —first-flush diversion unit.

In most cases, contamination of groundwater supplies can be controlled by a combination of simple measures. In the absence of fractures or fissures, which may allow rapid transport of contaminants to the source, groundwater in confined or deep aquifers will generally be free of pathogenic microorganisms. Bores should be encased to a reasonable depth, and boreheads should be sealed to prevent ingress of surface water or shallow groundwater.

Rainwater systems, particularly those involving storage in above-ground tanks, can be a relatively safe supply of water. The principal sources of contamination are birds, small mammals and debris collected on roofs. The impact of these sources can be minimized by simple measures: guttering should be cleared regularly; overhanging branches should be kept to a minimum (because they can be a source of debris and can increase access to roof catchment areas by birds and small mammals); and inlet pipes to tanks should include leaf litter strainers. First-flush diverters, which prevent the initial roof-cleaning wash of water (20–25 litres) from entering tanks, are recommended. If first-flush diverters are not available, a detachable downpipe can be used manually to provide the same result.

In general, surface waters will require at least disinfection, and usually also filtration, to ensure microbial safety. The first barrier is based on minimizing contamination from human waste, livestock and other hazards at the source.

The greater the protection of the water source, the less the reliance on treatment or disinfection. Water should be protected during storage and delivery to consumers by ensuring that the distribution and storage systems are enclosed.

This applies to both piped systems (section 4.1.5) and vendor-supplied water (section 6.5). For water stored in the home, protection from contamination can be achieved by use of enclosed or otherwise safely designed storage containers that prevent the introduction of hands, dippers or other extraneous sources of contamination.

For control of chemical hazards, reliance may be placed primarily on initial screening of sources and on ensuring the quality and performance of treatment chemicals, materials and devices available for this use, including water storage systems.

Model WSPs are available in the supporting document *Water Safety Plans* (section 1.3) for the following types of water supply:

—groundwater from protected boreholes / wells with mechanized pumping;
—conventional treatment of water;
—multistage filtration;
—storage and distribution through supplier-managed piped systems;
—storage and distribution through community-managed piped systems;
—water vendors;
—water on conveyances (planes, ships and trains);
—tubewell from which water is collected by hand;
—springs from which water is collected by hand;
—simple protected dug wells; and
—rainwater catchments.

Guidance is also available regarding how water safety may be assured for household water collection, transport and storage (see the supporting document *Managing Water* *in the Home*; section 1.3). This should be used in conjunction with hygiene education programmes to support health promotion in order to reduce water-related disease.

4.1.7 Validation

Validation is an investigative activity to identify the effectiveness of a control measure. It is typically an intensive activity when a system is initially constructed or rehabilitated. It provides information on reliably achievable quality improvement or maintenance to be used in system assessment in preference to assumed values and also to define the operational criteria required to ensure that the control measure contributes to effective control of hazards.

Validation is concerned with obtaining evidence on the performance of control measures. It should ensure that the information supporting the WSP is correct, thus enabling achievement of health-based targets.

Validation of treatment processes is required to show that treatment processes can operate as required. It can be undertaken during pilot stage studies and/or during initial implementation of a new or modified water treatment system. It is also a useful tool in the optimization of existing treatment processes.

The first stage of validation is to consider data that already exist. These will include data from the scientific literature, trade associations, regulation and legislation departments and professional bodies, historical data and supplier knowledge. This will inform the testing requirements. Validation is not used for day-to-day management of drinking-water supplies; as a result, microbial parameters that may be inappropriate for operational monitoring can be used, and the lag time for return of results and additional costs from pathogen measurements can often be tolerated.

4.1.8 Upgrade and improvement

The assessment of the drinking-water system may indicate that existing practices and technologies may not ensure drinking-water safety. In some instances, all that may be needed is to review, document and formalize these practices and address any areas where improvements are required; in others, major infrastructure changes may be needed. The assessment of the system should be used as a basis to develop a plan to address identified needs for full implementation of a WSP.

Improvement of the drinking-water system may encompass a wide range of issues, such as:

- capital works;
- training;
- enhanced operational procedures;
- community consultation programmes;
- research and development;
- developing incident protocols; and
- communication and reporting.

Upgrade and improvement plans can include short-term (e.g., 1 year) or long-term programmes. Short-term improvements might include, for example, improvements to community consultation and the development of community awareness programmes. Long-term capital works projects could include covering of water storages or enhanced coagulation and filtration.

Implementation of improvement plans may have significant budgetary implications and therefore may require detailed analysis and careful prioritization in accord with the outcomes of risk assessment. Implementation of plans should be monitored to confirm that improvements have been made and are effective. Control measures often require considerable expenditure, and decisions about water quality improvements cannot be made in isolation from other aspects of drinking-water supply that compete for limited financial resources. Priorities will need to be established, and improvements may need to be phased in over a period of time.

4.2 Operational monitoring and maintaining control

Operational monitoring assesses the performance of control measures at appropriate time intervals. The intervals may vary widely – for example, from on-line control of residual chlorine to quarterly verification of the integrity of the plinth surrounding a well.

The objectives of operational monitoring are for the drinking-water supplier to monitor each control measure in a timely manner to enable effective system management and to ensure that health-based targets are achieved.

4.2.1 Determining system control measures

The identity and number of control measures are system specific and will be determined by the number and nature of hazards and magnitude of associated risks.

Control measures should reflect the likelihood and consequences of loss of control. Control measures have a number of operational requirements, including the following:

- operational monitoring parameters that can be measured and for which limits can be set to define the operational effectiveness of the activity;
- operational monitoring parameters that can be monitored with sufficient frequency to reveal failures in a timely fashion; and
- procedures for corrective action that can be implemented in response to deviation from limits.

4.2.2 Selecting operational monitoring parameters

The parameters selected for operational monitoring should reflect the effectiveness of each control measure, provide a timely indication of performance, be readily measured and provide opportunity for an appropriate response. Examples include measurable variables, such as chlorine residuals, pH and turbidity, or observable factors, such as the integrity of vermin-proofing screens.

Enteric pathogens and indicator bacteria are of limited use for operational monitoring, because the time taken to process and analyse water samples does not allow operational adjustments to be made prior to supply.

A range of parameters can be used in operational monitoring:

- For source waters, these include turbidity, UV absorbency, algal growth, flow and retention time, colour, conductivity and local meteorological events (see the supporting documents *Protecting Surface Waters for Health* and *Protecting Groundwaters for Health*; section 1.3).
- For treatment, parameters may include disinfectant concentration and contact time, UV intensity, pH, light absorbency, membrane integrity, turbidity and colour (see the supporting document *Water Treatment and Pathogen Control*; section 1.3).
- In piped distribution systems, operational monitoring parameters may include the following:
  - —*Chlorine residual monitoring* provides a rapid indication of problems that will direct measurement of microbial parameters. A sudden disappearance of an otherwise stable residual can indicate ingress of contamination. Alternatively, difficulties in maintaining residuals at points in a distribution system or a gradual disappearance of residual may indicate that the water or pipework has a high oxidant demand due to growth of bacteria.
  - —*Oxidation–reduction potential* (ORP, or redox potential) measurement can also be used in the operational monitoring of disinfection efficacy. It is possible to define a minimum level of ORP necessary to ensure effective disinfection. This value has to be determined on a case-by-case basis; universal values cannot be recommended. Further research and evaluation of ORP as an operational monitoring technique are highly desirable.
  - —The presence or absence of *faecal indicator bacteria* is another commonly used operational monitoring parameter. However, there are pathogens that are more resistant to chlorine disinfection than the most commonly used indicator – *E. coli* or thermotolerant coliforms. Therefore, the presence of more resistant faecal indicator bacteria (e.g., intestinal enterococci), *Clostridium perfringens* spores or coliphages as an operational monitoring parameter may be more appropriate in certain circumstances.
  - —*Heterotrophic bacteria* present in a supply can be a useful indicator of changes, such as increased microbial growth potential, increased biofilm activity, extended retention times or stagnation and a breakdown of integrity of the system. The numbers of heterotrophic bacteria present in a supply may reflect the presence of large contact surfaces within the treatment system, such as in-line filters, and may not be a direct indicator of the condition within the

distribution system (see the supporting document *Heterotrophic Plate Counts and Drinking-water Safety*; section 1.3).

— *Pressure measurement* and *turbidity* are also useful operational monitoring parameters in piped distribution systems.

Guidance for management of distribution system operation and maintenance is available (see the supporting document *Safe Piped Water*; section 1.3) and includes

Table 4.4 Examples of operational monitoring parameters that can be used to monitor control measures

Operational parameter	Raw water	Coagulation	Sedimentation	Filtration	Disinfection	Distribution system
pH		✓	✓		✓	✓
Turbidity (or particle count)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Dissolved oxygen	✓					
Stream/river flow	✓					
Rainfall	✓					
Colour	✓					
Conductivity (total dissolved solids, or TDS)	✓					
Organic carbon	✓		✓			
Algae, algal toxins and metabolites	✓					✓
Chemical dosage		✓			✓	
Flow rate		✓	✓	✓	✓	
Net charge		✓				
Streaming current value		✓				
Headloss				✓		
Ct[a]					✓	
Disinfectant residual					✓	✓
Oxidation–reduction potential (ORP)					✓	
DBPs					✓	✓
Hydraulic pressure						✓

[a] Ct = Disinfectant concentration × contact time.

the development of a monitoring programme for water quality and other parameters such as pressure.

Examples of operational monitoring parameters are provided in Table 4.4.

4.2.3 Establishing operational and critical limits

Control measures need to have defined limits for operational acceptability – termed operational limits – that can be applied to operational monitoring parameters. Operational limits should be defined for parameters applying to each control measure. If monitoring shows that an operational limit has been exceeded, then predetermined corrective actions (see section 4.4) need to be applied. The detection of the deviation and implementation of corrective action(s) should be possible in a time frame adequate to maintain performance and water safety.

For some control measures, a second series of "critical limits" may also be defined, outside of which confidence in water safety would be lost. Deviations from critical limits will usually require urgent action, including immediate notification of the appropriate health authority.

Operational and critical limits can be upper limits, lower limits, a range or an "envelope" of performance measures.

4.2.4 Non-piped, community and household systems

Generally, surface water or shallow groundwater should not be used as a source of drinking-water without sanitary protection or treatment.

Monitoring of water sources (including rainwater tanks) by community operators or households will typically involve periodic sanitary inspection. The sanitary inspection forms used should be comprehensible and easy to use; for instance, the forms may be pictorial. The risk factors included should be preferably related to activities that are under the control of the operator and that may affect water quality. The links to action from the results of operational monitoring should be clear, and training will be required.

Operators should also undertake regular physical assessments of the water, especially after heavy rains, to monitor whether any obvious changes in water quality occur (e.g., changes in colour, odour or turbidity).

Treatment of water from community sources (such as boreholes, wells and springs) as well as household rainwater collection is rarely practised; however, if treatment is applied, then operational monitoring is advisable.

Collection, transportation and storage of water in the home

Maintaining the quality of water during collection and manual transport is the responsibility of the household. Good hygiene practices are required and should be supported through hygiene education. Hygiene education programmes should provide households and communities with skills to monitor and manage their water hygiene.

Household treatment of water has proven to be effective in delivery of public health gains. Monitoring of treatment processes will be specific to the technology. When household treatment is introduced, it is essential that information (and, where appropriate, training) be provided to users to ensure that they understand basic operational monitoring requirements.

4.3 Verification

In addition to operational monitoring of the performance of the individual components of a drinking-water system, it is necessary to undertake final **verification** for reassurance that the system as a whole is operating safely. Verification may be undertaken by the supplier, by an independent authority or by a combination of these, depending on the administrative regime in a given country. It typically includes testing for faecal indicator organisms and hazardous chemicals.

Verification provides a final check on the overall safety of the drinking-water supply chain. Verification may be undertaken by the surveillance agency and/or can be a component of supplier quality control.

For microbial verification, testing is typically for faecal indicator bacteria in treated water and water in distribution. For verification of chemical safety, testing for chemicals of concern may be at the end of treatment, in distribution or at the point of consumption (depending on whether the concentrations are likely to change in distribution). Trihalomethanes (THMs) and haloacetic acids (HAAs) are the most common DBPs and occur at among the highest concentrations in drinking-water. Under many circumstances, they can serve as a suitable measure that will reflect the concentration of a wide range of related chlorinated DBPs.

Frequencies of sampling should reflect the need to balance the benefits and costs of obtaining more information. Sampling frequencies are usually based on the population served or on the volume of water supplied, to reflect the increased population risk. Frequency of testing for individual characteristics will also depend on variability. Sampling and analysis are required most frequently for microbial and less often for chemical constituents. This is because even brief episodes of microbial contamination can lead directly to illness in consumers, whereas episodes of chemical contamination that would constitute an acute health concern, in the absence of a specific event (e.g., chemical overdosing at a treatment plant), are rare. Sampling frequencies for water leaving treatment depend on the quality of the water source and the type of treatment.

4.3.1 Verification of microbial quality

Verification of microbial quality of water in supply must be designed to ensure the best possible chance of detecting contamination. Sampling should therefore account for potential variations of water quality in distribution. This will normally mean taking account of locations and of times of increased likelihood of contamination.

Faecal contamination will not be distributed evenly throughout a piped distribution system. In systems where water quality is good, this significantly reduces the probability of detecting faecal indicator bacteria in the relatively few samples collected.

The chances of detecting contamination in systems reporting predominantly negative results for faecal indicator bacteria can be increased by using more frequent presence/absence (P/A) testing. P/A testing can be simpler, faster and less expensive than quantitative methods. Comparative studies of the P/A and quantitative methods demonstrate that the P/A methods can maximize the detection of faecal indicator bacteria. However, P/A testing is appropriate only in a system where the majority of tests for indicators provide negative results.

The more frequently the water is examined for faecal indicators, the more likely it is that contamination will be detected. Frequent examination by a simple method is more valuable than less frequent examination by a complex test or series of tests.

The nature and likelihood of contamination can vary seasonally, with rainfall and with other local conditions. Sampling should normally be random but should be increased at times of epidemics, flooding or emergency operations or following interruptions of supply or repair work.

4.3.2 Verification of chemical quality

Issues that need to be addressed in developing chemical verification include the availability of appropriate analytical facilities, the cost of analyses, the possible deterioration of samples, the stability of the contaminant, the likely occurrence of the contaminant in various supplies, the most suitable point for monitoring and the frequency of sampling.

For a given chemical, the location and frequency of sampling will be determined by its principal sources (see chapter 8) and variability. Substances that do not change significantly in concentration over time require less frequent sampling than those that might vary significantly.

In many cases, source water sampling once per year, or even less, may be adequate, particularly in stable groundwaters, where the naturally occurring substances of concern will vary very slowly over time. Surface waters are likely to be more variable and require a greater number of samples, depending on the contaminant and its importance.

Sampling locations will depend on the water quality characteristic being examined. Sampling at the treatment plant or at the head of the distribution system may be sufficient for constituents where concentrations do not change during delivery. However, for those constituents that can change during distribution, sampling should be undertaken following consideration of the behaviour and/or source of the specific substance. Samples should include points near the extremities of the distribution system and taps connected directly to the mains in houses and large multi-occupancy buildings. Lead, for example, should be sampled at consumers' taps, since the source of lead is usually service connections or plumbing in buildings.

For further information, see the supporting document *Chemical Safety of Drinking-water* (section 1.3).

4.3.3 Water sources

Testing source waters is particularly important where there is no water treatment. It will also be useful following failure of the treatment process or as part of an investigation of a waterborne disease outbreak. The frequency of testing will depend on the reason that the sampling is being carried out. Testing frequency may be:

- on a regular basis (the frequency of verification testing will depend on several factors, including the size of the community supplied, the reliability of the quality of the drinking-water / degree of treatment and the presence of local risk factors);
- on an occasional basis (e.g., random or during visits to community-managed drinking-water supplies); and
- increased following degradation of source water quality resulting from predictable incidents, emergencies or unplanned events considered likely to increase the potential for a breakthrough in contamination (e.g., following a flood, upstream spills).

Prior to commissioning a new drinking-water supply, a wider range of analyses should be carried out, including parameters identified as potentially being present from a review of data from similar supplies or from a risk assessment of the source.

4.3.4 Piped distribution systems

The choice of sampling points will be dependent on the individual water supply. The nature of the public health risk posed by pathogens and the contamination potential throughout distribution systems mean that collection of samples for microbial analysis (and associated parameters, such as chlorine residual) will typically be done frequently and from dispersed sampling sites. Careful consideration of sampling points and frequency is required for chemical constituents that arise from piping and plumbing materials and that are not controlled through their direct regulation and for constituents that change in distribution, such as THMs.

Recommended minimum sample numbers for verification of the microbial quality of drinking-water are shown in Table 4.5.

The use of stratified random sampling in distribution systems has proven to be effective.

4.3.5 Verification for community-managed supplies

If the performance of a community drinking-water system is to be properly evaluated, a number of factors must be considered. Some countries that have developed national strategies for the surveillance and quality control of drinking-water systems have adopted *quantitative service indicators* (i.e., quality, quantity, accessibility, coverage, affordability and continuity) for application at community, regional and national levels. Usual practice would be to include the critical parameters for microbial quality (normally *E. coli*, chlorine, turbidity and pH) and for a sanitary inspection to be carried out. Methods for these tests must be standardized and approved. It is recommended that field test kits be validated for performance against reference or standard methods and approved for use in verification testing.

Together, service indicators provide a basis for setting targets for community drinking-water supplies. They serve as a quantitative guide to the adequacy of drink-

Table 4.5 Recommended minimum sample numbers for faecal indicator testing in distribution systems[a]

Population	Total number of samples per year
Point sources	Progressive sampling of all sources over 3- to 5-year cycles (maximum)
Piped supplies	
<5000	12
5000–100 000	12 per 5000 head of population
>100 000–500 000	12 per 10 000 head of population plus an additional 120 samples
>500 000	12 per 100 000 head of population plus an additional 180 samples

[a] Parameters such as chlorine, turbidity and pH should be tested more frequently as part of operational and verification monitoring.

ing-water supplies and provide consumers with an objective measure of the quality of the overall service and thus the degree of public health protection afforded.

Periodic testing and sanitary inspection of community drinking-water supplies should typically be undertaken by the surveillance agency and should assess microbial hazards and known problem chemicals (see also chapter 5). Frequent sampling is unlikely to be possible, and one approach is therefore a rolling programme of visits to ensure that each supply is visited once every 3–5 years. The primary purpose is to inform strategic planning and policy rather than to assess compliance of individual drinking-water supplies. Comprehensive analysis of chemical quality of all sources is recommended prior to commissioning as a minimum and preferably every 3–5 years thereafter.

Advice on the design of sampling programmes and on the frequency of sampling is given in ISO standards (Table 4.6).

4.3.6 Quality assurance and quality control

Appropriate quality assurance and analytical quality control procedures should be implemented for all activities linked to the production of drinking-water quality data. These procedures will ensure that the data are fit for purpose – in other words, that the results produced are of adequate accuracy. Fit for purpose, or adequate accuracy, will be defined in the water quality monitoring programme, which will include a statement about accuracy and precision of the data. Because of the wide range of substances, methods, equipment and accuracy requirements likely to be involved in the monitoring of drinking-water, many detailed, practical aspects of analytical quality control are concerned. These are beyond the scope of this publication.

The design and implementation of a quality assurance programme for analytical laboratories are described in detail in *Water Quality Monitoring* (Bartram & Ballance,

Table 4.6 International Organization for Standardization (ISO) standards for water quality giving guidance on sampling

ISO standard no.	Title (water quality)
5667–1:1980	Sampling – Part 1: Guidance on the design of sampling programmes
5667–2:1991	Sampling – Part 2: Guidance on sampling techniques
5667–3:1994	Sampling – Part 3: Guidance on the preservation and handling of samples
5667–4:1987	Sampling – Part 4: Guidance on sampling from lakes, natural and man-made
5667–5:1991	Sampling – Part 5: Guidance on sampling of drinking-water and water used for food and beverage processing
5667–6:1990	Sampling – Part 6: Guidance on sampling of rivers and streams
5667–13:1997	Sampling – Part 13: Guidance on sampling of sludges from sewage and water-treatment works
5667–14:1998	Sampling – Part 14: Guidance on quality assurance of environmental water sampling and handling
5667–16:1998	Sampling – Part 16: Guidance on biotesting of samples
5668–17:2000	Sampling – Part 17: Guidance on sampling of suspended sediments
13530:1997	Water quality – Guide to analytical control for water analysis

1996). The relevant chapter draws upon the standard ISO 17025:2000 *General requirements for the competence of testing and calibration laboratories*, which provides a framework for the management of quality in analytical laboratories.

4.4 Management procedures for piped distribution systems

Effective management implies definition of actions to be taken in response to variations that occur during normal operational conditions; of actions to be taken in specific "incident" situations where a loss of control of the system may occur; and of procedures to be followed in unforeseen and emergency situations. Management procedures should be documented alongside system assessment, monitoring plans, supporting programmes and communication required to ensure safe operation of the system.

Much of a management plan will describe actions to be taken in response to "normal" variation in operational monitoring parameters in order to maintain optimal operation in response to operational monitoring parameters reaching operational limits.

A significant deviation in operational monitoring where a critical limit is exceeded (or in verification) is often referred to as an "incident." An incident is any situation in which there is reason to suspect that water being supplied for drinking may be, or may become, unsafe (i.e., confidence in water safety is lost). As part of a WSP, management procedures should be defined for response to predictable incidents as well as unpredictable incidents and emergencies. Incident triggers could include:

- non-compliance with operational monitoring criteria;
- inadequate performance of a sewage treatment plant discharging to source water;
- spillage of a hazardous substance into source water;
- failure of the power supply to an essential control measure;
- extreme rainfall in a catchment;
- detection of unusually high turbidity (source or treated water);
- unusual taste, odour or appearance of water;
- detection of microbial indicator parameters, including unusually high faecal indicator densities (source or treated water) and unusually high pathogen densities (source water); and
- public health indicators or a disease outbreak for which water is a suspect vector.

Incident response plans can have a range of alert levels. These can be minor early warning, necessitating no more than additional investigation, through to emergency. Emergencies are likely to require the resources of organizations beyond the drinking-water supplier, particularly the public health authorities.

Incident response plans typically comprise:

- accountabilities and contact details for key personnel, often including several organizations and individuals;

- —lists of measurable indicators and limit values/conditions that would trigger incidents, along with a scale of alert levels;
- —clear description of the actions required in response to alerts;
- —location and identity of the standard operating procedures (SOPs) and required equipment;
- —location of backup equipment;
- —relevant logistical and technical information; and
- —checklists and quick reference guides.

The plan may need to be followed at very short notice, so standby rosters, effective communication systems and up-to-date training and documentation are required.

Staff should be trained in response to ensure that they can manage incidents and/or emergencies effectively. Incident and emergency response plans should be periodically reviewed and practised. This improves preparedness and provides opportunities to improve the effectiveness of plans before an emergency occurs.

Following any incident or emergency, an investigation should be undertaken involving all concerned staff. The investigation should consider factors such as:

- What was the cause of the problem?
- How was the problem first identified or recognized?
- What were the most essential actions required?
- What communication problems arose, and how were they addressed?
- What were the immediate and longer-term consequences?
- How well did the emergency response plan function?

Appropriate documentation and reporting of the incident or emergency should also be established. The organization should learn as much as possible from the incident or emergency to improve preparedness and planning for future incidents. Review of the incident or emergency may indicate necessary amendments to existing protocols.

The preparation of clear procedures, definition of accountability and provision of equipment for the sampling and storing of water in the event of an incident can be valuable for follow-up epidemiological or other investigations, and the sampling and storage of water from early on during a suspected incident should be part of the response plan.

4.4.1 Predictable incidents ("deviations")

Many incidents (e.g., exceedance of a critical limit) can be foreseen, and management plans can specify resulting actions. Actions may include, for example, temporary change of water sources (if possible), increasing coagulation dose, use of backup disinfection or increasing disinfectant concentrations in distribution systems.

4.4.2 Unforeseen events

Some scenarios that lead to water being considered potentially unsafe might not be specifically identified within incident response plans. This may be either because the events were unforeseen or because they were considered too unlikely to justify preparing detailed corrective action plans. To allow for such events, a general incident response plan should be developed. The plan would be used to provide general guidance on identifying and handling of incidents along with specific guidance on responses that would be applied to many different types of incident.

A protocol for situation assessment and declaring incidents would be provided in a general incident response plan that includes personal accountabilities and categorical selection criteria. The selection criteria may include:

- time to effect;
- population affected; and
- nature of the suspected hazard.

The success of general incident responses depends on the experience, judgement and skill of the personnel operating and managing the drinking-water systems. However, generic activities that are common in response to many incidents can be incorporated within general incident response plans. For example, for piped systems, emergency flushing SOPs can be prepared and tested for use in the event that contaminated water needs to be flushed from a piped system. Similarly, SOPs for rapidly changing or bypassing reservoirs can be prepared, tested and incorporated. The development of such a "toolkit" of supporting material limits the likelihood of error and speeds up responses during incidents.

4.4.3 Emergencies

Water suppliers should develop plans to be invoked in the event of an emergency. These plans should consider potential natural disasters (e.g., earthquakes, floods, damage to electrical equipment by lightning strikes), accidents (e.g., spills in the watershed), damage to treatment plant and distribution system and human actions (e.g., strikes, sabotage). Emergency plans should clearly specify responsibilities for coordinating measures to be taken, a communication plan to alert and inform users of the drinking-water supply and plans for providing and distributing emergency supplies of drinking-water.

Plans should be developed in consultation with relevant regulatory authorities and other key agencies and should be consistent with national and local emergency response arrangements. Key areas to be addressed in emergency response plans include:

- response actions, including increased monitoring;
- responsibilities and authorities internal and external to the organization;
- plans for emergency drinking-water supplies;
- communication protocols and strategies, including notification procedures (internal, regulatory body, media and public); and
- mechanisms for increased public health surveillance.

Response plans for emergencies and unforeseen events involving microorganisms or chemicals should also include the basis for issuing boil water and water avoidance advisories. The objective of the advisory should be taken in the public interest, and the advisory will typically be managed by public health authorities. A decision to close a drinking-water supply carries an obligation to provide an alternative safe supply and is very rarely justifiable because of the adverse effects, especially to health, of restricting access to water. Specific actions in the event of a guideline exceedance or an emergency are discussed in section 7.6 (microbial hazards) and section 8.6 (chemical hazards). "Practice" emergencies are an important part of the maintenance of readiness for emergencies. They help to determine the potential actions that can be taken in different circumstances for a specific water supply. Actions in the case of emergencies are considered further in sections 6.2, 7.6 and 8.6.

4.4.4 Preparing a monitoring plan

Programs should be developed for operational and verification monitoring and documented as part of a WSP, detailing the strategies and procedures to follow for monitoring the various aspects of the drinking-water system. The monitoring plans should be fully documented and should include the following information:

- parameters to be monitored;
- sampling or assessment location and frequency;
- sampling or assessment methods and equipment;
- schedules for sampling or assessment;
- methods for quality assurance and validation of results;
- requirements for checking and interpreting results;
- responsibilities and necessary qualifications of staff;
- requirements for documentation and management of records, including how monitoring results will be recorded and stored; and
- requirements for reporting and communication of results.

4.4.5 Supporting programmes

Actions that are important in ensuring drinking-water safety but do not directly affect drinking-water quality are referred to as supporting programmes.

Many actions are important in ensuring drinking-water safety but do not directly affect drinking-water quality and are therefore not control measures. These are referred to as "supporting programmes" and should also be documented in a WSP.

Supporting programmes could involve:

- controlling access to treatment plants, catchments and reservoirs, and implementing the appropriate security measures to prevent transfer of hazards from people when they do enter source water;
- developing verification protocols for the use of chemicals and materials in the drinking-water supply – for instance, to ensure the use of suppliers that participate in quality assurance programmes;
- using designated equipment for attending to incidents such as mains bursts (e.g., equipment should be designated for potable water work only and not for sewage work); and
- training and educational programmes for personnel involved in activities that could influence drinking-water safety; training should be implemented as part of induction programmes and frequently updated.

Supporting programmes will consist almost entirely of items that drinking-water suppliers and handlers will ordinarily have in place as part of their normal operation. For most, the implementation of supporting programmes will involve:

- collation of existing operational and management practices;
- initial and, thereafter, periodic review and updating to continually improve practices;
- promotion of good practices to encourage their use; and
- audit of practices to check that they are being used, including taking corrective actions in case of non-conformance.

Codes of good operating and management practice and hygienic working practice are essential elements of supporting programmes. These are often captured within SOPs. They include, but are not limited to:

- hygienic working practices documented in maintenance SOPs;
- attention to personal hygiene;
- training and competence of personnel involved in drinking-water supply;
- tools for managing the actions of staff, such as quality assurance systems;
- securing stakeholder commitment, at all levels, to the provision of safe drinking-water;
- education of communities whose activities may influence drinking-water quality;
- calibration of monitoring equipment; and
- record keeping.

Comparison of one set of supporting programmes with the supporting programmes of other suppliers, through peer review, benchmarking and personnel or document exchange, can stimulate ideas for improved practice.

Supporting programmes can be extensive, be varied and involve multiple organizations and individuals. Many supporting programmes involve water resource protection measures and typically include aspects of land use control. Some water resource protection measures are engineered, such as effluent treatment processes and stormwater management practices that may be used as control measures.

4.5 Management of community and household water supplies

Community drinking-water supplies worldwide are more frequently contaminated than larger drinking-water supplies, may be more prone to operating discontinuously (or intermittently) and break down or fail more frequently.

To ensure safe drinking-water, the focus in small supplies should be on:

- informing the public;
- assessing the water supply to determine whether it is able to meet identified health-based targets (see section 4.1);
- monitoring identified control measures and training operators to ensure that all likely hazards can be controlled and that risks are maintained at a tolerable level (see section 4.2);
- operational monitoring of the drinking-water system (see section 4.2);

- implementing systematic water quality management procedures (see section 4.4.1), including documentation and communication (see section 4.6);
- establishing appropriate incident response protocols (usually encompassing actions at the individual supply, backed by training of operators, and actions required by local or national authorities) (see sections 4.4.2 and 4.4.3); and
- developing programmes to upgrade and improve existing water delivery (usually defined at a national or regional level rather than at the level of individual supplies) (see section 4.1.8).

For point sources serving communities or individual households, the emphasis should be on selecting the best available quality source water and on protecting its quality by the use of multiple barriers (usually within source protection) and maintenance programmes. Whatever the source (groundwater, surface water or rainwater tanks), communities and householders should assure themselves that the water is safe to drink. Generally, surface water and shallow groundwater under the direct influence of surface water (which includes shallow groundwater with preferential flow paths) should receive treatment.

The parameters recommended for the minimum monitoring of community supplies are those that best establish the hygienic state of the water and thus the risk of waterborne disease. The essential parameters of water quality are *E. coli* – thermotolerant (faecal) coliforms are accepted as suitable substitutes – and chlorine residual (if chlorination is practised).

These should be supplemented, where appropriate, by pH adjustment (if chlorination is practised) and measurement of turbidity.

These parameters may be measured on site using relatively unsophisticated testing equipment. On-site testing is essential for the determination of turbidity and chlorine residual, which change rapidly during transport and storage; it is also important for the other parameters where laboratory support is lacking or where transportation problems would render conventional sampling and analysis impractical.

Other health-related parameters of local significance should also be measured. The overall approach to control of chemical contamination is outlined in chapter 8.

4.6 Documentation and communication

Documentation of a WSP should include:

- description and assessment of the drinking-water system (see section 4.1), including programmes to upgrade and improve existing water delivery (see section 4.1.8);
- the plan for operational monitoring and verification of the drinking-water system (see section 4.2);

- water safety management procedures for normal operation, incidents (specific and unforeseen) and emergency situations (see sections 4.4.1, 4.4.2 and 4.4.3), including communication plans; and
- description of supporting programmes (see section 4.4.6).

Records are essential to review the adequacy of the WSP and to demonstrate the adherence of the drinking-water system to the WSP. Five types of records are generally kept:

- supporting documentation for developing the WSP including validation;
- records and results generated through operational monitoring and verification;
- outcomes of incident investigations;
- documentation of methods and procedures used; and
- records of employee training programmes.

By tracking records generated through operational monitoring and verification, an operator or manager can detect that a process is approaching its operational or critical limit. Review of records can be instrumental in identifying trends and in making operational adjustments. Periodic review of WSP records is recommended so that trends can be noted and appropriate actions decided upon and implemented. Records are also essential when surveillance is implemented through auditing-based approaches.

Communication strategies should include:

- procedures for promptly advising of any significant incidents within the drinking-water supply, including notification of the public health authority;
- summary information to be made available to consumers – for example, through annual reports and on the Internet; and
- establishment of mechanisms to receive and actively address community complaints in a timely fashion.

The right of consumers to health-related information on the water supplied to them for domestic purposes is fundamental. However, in many communities, the simple right of access to information will not ensure that individuals are aware of the quality of the water supplied to them; furthermore, the probability of consuming unsafe water may be relatively high. The agencies responsible for monitoring should therefore develop strategies for disseminating and explaining the significance of health-related information. Further information on communication is provided in section 5.5.

5
Surveillance

Drinking-water supply surveillance is "the continuous and vigilant public health assessment and review of the safety and acceptability of drinking-water supplies" (WHO, 1976). This surveillance contributes to the protection of public health by promoting improvement of the quality, quantity, accessibility, coverage, affordability and continuity of water supplies (known as service indicators) and is complementary to the quality control function of the drinking-water supplier. Drinking-water supply surveillance does not remove or replace the responsibility of the drinking-water supplier to ensure that a drinking-water supply is of acceptable quality and meets predetermined health-based and other performance targets.

All members of the population receive drinking-water by some means – including the use of piped supplies with or without treatment and with or without pumping (supplied via domestic connection or public standpipe), delivery by tanker truck or carriage by beasts of burden or collection from groundwater sources (springs or wells) or surface sources (lakes, rivers and streams). It is important for the surveillance agency to build up a picture of the frequency of use of the different types of supply, especially as a preliminary step in the planning of a surveillance programme. There is little to be gained from surveillance of piped water supplies alone if these are available to only a small proportion of the population or if they represent a minority of supplies.

Information alone does not lead to improvement. Instead, the effective management and use of the information generated by surveillance make possible the rational improvement of water supplies – where "rational" implies that available resources are used for maximum public health benefit.

Surveillance is an important element in the development of strategies for incremental improvement of the quality of drinking-water supply services. It is important that strategies be developed for implementing surveillance, collating, analysing and summarizing data and reporting and disseminating the findings and are accompanied by recommendations for remedial action. Follow-up will be required to ensure that remedial action is taken.

Surveillance extends beyond drinking-water supplies operated by a discrete drinking-water supplier to include drinking-water supplies that are managed by communities and includes assurance of good hygiene in the collection and storage of household water.

The surveillance agency must have, or have access to, legal expertise in addition to expertise on drinking-water and water quality (see section 2.3.1). Drinking-water supply surveillance is also used to ensure that any transgressions that may occur are appropriately investigated and resolved. In many cases, it will be more appropriate to use surveillance as a mechanism for collaboration between public health agencies and drinking-water suppliers to improve drinking-water supply than to resort to enforcement, particularly where the problem lies mainly with community-managed drinking-water supplies.

The authorities responsible for drinking-water supply surveillance may be the public health ministry or other agency (see section 1.2.1), and their roles encompass four areas of activity:

- public health oversight of organized drinking-water supplies;
- public health oversight and information support to populations without access to organized drinking-water supplies, including communities and households;
- consolidation of information from diverse sources to enable understanding of the overall drinking-water supply situation for a country or region as a whole as an input to the development of coherent public health-centred policies and practices; and
- participation in the investigation, reporting and compilation of outbreaks of waterborne disease.

A drinking-water supply surveillance programme should normally include processes for approval of WSPs. This approval will normally involve review of the system assessment, of the identification of appropriate control measures and supporting programmes and of operational monitoring and management plans. It should ensure that the WSP covers normal operating conditions and predictable incidents (deviations) and has contingency plans in case of an emergency or unforeseen event.

The surveillance agency may also support or undertake the development of WSPs for community-managed drinking-water supplies and household water storage. Such plans may be generic for particular technologies rather than specific for individual systems.

5.1 Types of approaches

There are two types of approaches to surveillance of drinking-water quality: audit-based approaches and approaches relying on direct assessment. Implementation of surveillance will generally include a mixture of these approaches according to supply type and may involve using rolling programmes whereby systems are addressed progressively. Often it is not possible to undertake extensive surveillance of all community or household supplies. In these cases, well designed surveys should be undertaken in order to understand the situation at the national or regional level.

5.1.1 Audit

In the audit approach to surveillance, assessment activities, including verification testing, are undertaken largely by the supplier, with third-party auditing to verify compliance. It is increasingly common that analytical services are procured from accredited external laboratories. Some authorities are also experimenting with the use of such arrangements for services such as sanitary inspection, sampling and audit reviews.

An audit approach requires the existence of a stable source of expertise and capacity within the surveillance agency in order to:

- review and approve new WSPs;
- undertake or oversee auditing of the implementation of individual WSPs as a programmed routine activity; and
- respond to, investigate and provide advice on receipt of reports on significant incidents.

Periodic audit of implementation of WSPs is required:

- at intervals (the frequency of routine audits will be dependent on factors such as the size of the population served and the nature and quality of source water / treatment facilities);
- following substantial changes to the source, the distribution or storage system or treatment process; and
- following significant incidents.

Periodic audit would normally include the following elements, in addition to review of the WSP:

- examination of records to ensure that system management is being carried out as described in the WSP;
- ensuring that operational monitoring parameters are kept within operational limits and that compliance is being maintained;
- ensuring that verification programmes are operated by the water supplier (either through in-house expertise or through a third-party arrangement);
- assessment of supporting programmes and of strategies for improvement and updating of the WSP; and
- in some circumstances, sanitary inspection, which may cover the whole of the drinking-water system, including sources, transmission infrastructure, treatment plants, storage reservoirs and distribution systems.

In response to reports of significant incidents, it is necessary to ensure that:

- the event is investigated promptly and appropriately;
- the cause of the event is determined and corrected;

- — the incident and corrective action are documented and reported to appropriate authorities; and
- — the WSP is reassessed to avoid the occurrence of a similar situation.

The implementation of an audit-based approach places responsibility on the drinking-water supplier to provide the surveillance agency with information regarding system performance against agreed indicators. In addition, a programme of announced and unannounced visits by auditors to drinking-water suppliers should be implemented to review documentation and records of operational practice in order to ensure that data submitted are reliable. Such an approach does not necessarily imply that water suppliers are likely to falsify records, but it does provide an important means of reassuring consumers that there is true independent verification of the activities of the water supplier. The surveillance agency will normally retain the authority to undertake some analysis of drinking-water quality to verify performance or enter into a third-party arrangement for such analysis.

5.1.2 Direct assessment

It may be appropriate for the drinking-water supply surveillance agency to carry out independent testing of water supplies. Such an approach often implies that the agency has access to analytical facilities of its own, with staff trained to carry out sampling, analysis and sanitary inspection.

Direct assessment also implies that surveillance agencies have the capacity to assess findings and to report to and advise suppliers and communities.

A surveillance programme based on direct assessment would normally include:

- — specified approaches to large municipality / small municipality / community supplies and individual household supplies;
- — sanitary inspections to be carried out by qualified personnel;
- — sampling to be carried out by qualified personnel;
- — tests to be conducted using suitable methods by accredited laboratories or using approved field testing equipment and qualified personnel; and
- — procedures on reporting findings and follow-up to ensure that they have been acted on.

For community-managed drinking-water supplies and where the development of in-house verification or third-party arrangements is limited, direct assessment may be used as the principal system of surveillance. This may apply to drinking-water supplies in small towns by small-scale private sector operators or local government. Direct assessment may lead to the identification of requirements to amend or update the WSP, and the process to be followed when undertaking such amendments should be clearly identified.

Where direct assessment is carried out by the surveillance agency, it complements other verification testing. General guidance on verification testing, which is also applicable to surveillance through direct assessment, is provided in section 4.3.

5.2 Adapting approaches to specific circumstances

5.2.1 Urban areas in developing countries

Drinking-water supply arrangements in urban areas of developing countries are typically complex. There will often be a large piped supply with household and public connections and a range of alternative drinking-water supplies, including point sources and vended water. In these situations, the surveillance programme should take account of the different sources of drinking-water and the potential for deterioration in quality during collection, storage and use. Furthermore, the population will vary in terms of socioeconomic status and vulnerability to water-related disease.

In many situations, zoning the urban area on the basis of vulnerability and drinking-water supply arrangements is required. The zoning system should include all populations within the urban area, including informal and periurban settlements, regardless of their legal status, in order to direct resources to where greatest improvements (or benefits) to public health will be achieved. This provides a mechanism to ensure that non-piped drinking-water sources are also included within drinking-water supply surveillance activities.

Experience has shown that zoning can be developed using qualitative and quantitative methods and is useful in identifying vulnerable groups and priority communities where drinking-water supply improvements are required.

5.2.2 Surveillance of community drinking-water supplies

Small community-managed drinking-water supplies are found in most countries and may be the predominant form of drinking-water supply for large sections of the population. The precise definition of a "community drinking-water supply" will vary, but administration and management arrangements are often what set community supplies apart. Community-managed supplies may include simple piped water systems or a range of point sources, such as boreholes with hand pumps, dug wells and protected springs.

The control of water safety and implementation of surveillance programmes for such supplies often face significant constraints. These typically include:

- limited capacity and skills within the community to undertake process control and verification; this may increase the need both for surveillance to assess the state of drinking-water supplies and for surveillance staff to provide training and support to community members; and
- the very large number of widely dispersed supplies, which significantly increases overall costs in undertaking surveillance activities.

Furthermore, it is often these supplies that present the greatest water quality problems.

Experience from both developing and developed countries has shown that surveillance of community-managed drinking-water supplies can be effective when well designed and when the objectives are geared more towards a supportive role to enhance community management and evaluation of overall strategies to their support than towards enforcement of compliance.

Surveillance of community drinking-water supplies requires a systematic programme of surveys that encompass all aspects of the drinking-water supply to the population as a whole, including sanitary inspection (including catchments) and institutional and community aspects. Surveillance should address variability in source water quality, treatment process efficacy and the quality of distributed or household-treated and household-stored water.

Experience has also shown that the role of surveillance may include health education and health promotion activities to improve healthy behaviour and management of drinking-water supply and sanitation. Participatory activities can include sanitary inspection by communities and, where appropriate, community-based testing of drinking-water quality using affordable field test kits and other accessible testing resources.

In the evaluation of overall strategies, the principal aim should be to derive overall lessons for improving water safety for all community supplies, rather than relying on monitoring the performance of individual supplies.

Frequent visits to every individual supply may be impractical because of the very large numbers of such supplies and the limitations of resources for such visits. However, surveillance of large numbers of community supplies can be achieved through a rolling programme of visits. Commonly, the aim will be to visit each supply periodically (once every 3–5 years at a minimum) using either stratified random sampling or cluster sampling to select specific supplies to be visited. During each visit, sanitary inspection and water quality analysis will normally be done to provide insight to contamination and its causes.

During each visit, testing of water stored in the home may be undertaken in a sample of households. The objective for such testing is to determine whether contamination occurs primarily at the source or within the home. This will allow evaluation of the need for investment in supply improvement or education on good hygiene practices for household treatment and safe storage. Household testing may also be used to evaluate the impact of a specific hygiene education programme.

5.2.3 Surveillance of household treatment and storage systems

Where water is handled during storage in households, it may be vulnerable to contamination, and sampling of household-stored water is of interest in independent surveillance. It is often undertaken on a "survey" basis to develop insights into the extent and nature of prevailing problems.

Surveillance systems managed by public health authorities for drinking-water supplies using household treatment and household storage containers are therefore recommended. The principal focus of surveillance of household-based interventions will be assessment of their acceptance and impact through sample surveys so as to evaluate and inform overall strategy development and refinement.

5.3 Adequacy of supply

As the drinking-water supply surveillance agency has an interest in the health of the population at large, its interest extends beyond water quality to include all aspects of the adequacy of drinking-water supply for the protection of public health.

In undertaking an assessment of the adequacy of the drinking-water supply, the following basic service parameters of a drinking-water supply should normally be taken into consideration:

- *Quality*: whether the supply has an approved WSP (see chapter 4) that has been validated and is subject to periodic audit to demonstrate compliance (see chapter 3);
- *Quantity (service level)*: the proportion of the population using water from different levels of drinking-water supply (e.g., no access, basic access, intermediate access and optimal access);
- *Accessibility*: the percentage of the population that has reasonable access to an improved drinking-water supply;
- *Affordability*: the tariff paid by domestic consumers; and
- *Continuity*: the percentage of the time during which drinking-water is available (daily, weekly and seasonally).

5.3.1 Quantity (service level)

The quantity of water collected and used by households has an important influence on health. There is a basic human physiological requirement for water to maintain adequate hydration and an additional requirement for food preparation. There is a further requirement for water to support hygiene, which is necessary for health.

Estimates of the volume of water needed for health purposes vary widely. In deriving WHO guideline values, it is assumed that the daily per capita consumption of drinking-water is approximately 2 litres for adults, although actual consumption varies according to climate, activity level and diet. Based on currently available data, a minimum volume of 7.5 litres per capita per day will provide sufficient water for hydration and incorporation into food for most people under most conditions. In addition, adequate domestic water is needed for food preparation, laundry and personal and domestic hygiene, which are also important for health. Water may also be important in income generation and amenity uses.

The quantities of water collected and used by households are primarily a function of the distance to the water supply or total collection time required. This broadly equates to the level of service. Four levels of service can be defined, as shown in Table 5.1.

Service level is a useful and easily measured indicator that provides a valid surrogate for the quantity of water collected by households and is the preferred indicator for surveillance. Available evidence indicates that health gains accrue from improving

Table 5.1 Service level and quantity of water collected

Service level	Distance/time	Likely volumes of water collected	Public health risk from poor hygiene	Intervention priority and actions
No access	More than 1 km / more than 30 min round-trip	Very low – 5 litres per capita per day	**Very high** Hygiene practice compromised Basic consumption may be compromised	**Very high** Provision of basic level of service Hygiene education
Basic access	Within 1 km / within 30 min round-trip	Average approximately 20 litres per capita per day	**High** Hygiene may be compromised Laundry may occur off-plot	**High** Hygiene education Provision of improved level of service
Intermediate access	Water provided on-plot through at least one tap (yard level)	Average approximately 50 litres per capita per day	**Low** Hygiene should not be compromised Laundry likely to occur on-plot	**Low** Hygiene promotion still yields health gains Encourage optimal access
Optimal access	Supply of water through multiple taps within the house	Average 100–200 litres per capita per day	**Very low** Hygiene should not be compromised Laundry will occur on-plot	**Very low** Hygiene promotion still yields health gains

Source: Howard & Bartram (2003)

service level in two key stages: the delivery of water within 1 km or 30 min total collection time; and when supplied to a yard level of service. Further health gains are likely to occur once water is supplied through multiple taps, as this will increase water availability for diverse hygiene practices. The volume of water collected may also depend on the reliability and cost of water. Therefore, collection of data on these indicators is important.

5.3.2 Accessibility

From the public health standpoint, the proportion of the population with reliable access to safe drinking-water is the most important single indicator of the overall success of a drinking-water supply programme.

There are a number of definitions of access (or coverage), many with qualifications regarding safety or adequacy. The preferred definition is that used by WHO and UNICEF in their "Joint Monitoring Programme," which defines "reasonable access" to improved sources as being "availability of at least 20 litres per person per day within one kilometre of the user's dwelling." Improved and unimproved water supply technologies in the WHO/UNICEF Joint Monitoring Programme have been defined in terms of providing "reasonable access," as summarized below:

- **Improved water supply technologies:**
  - Household connection
  - Public standpipe
  - Borehole
  - Protected dug well
  - Protected spring
  - Rainwater collection
- **Unimproved water supply technologies:**
  - Unprotected well
  - Unprotected spring
  - Vendor-provided water
  - Bottled water
  - Tanker truck provision of water.

5.3.3 Affordability

The affordability of water has a significant influence on the use of water and selection of water sources. Households with the lowest levels of access to safe water supply frequently pay more for their water than do households connected to a piped water system. The high cost of water may force households to use alternative sources of water of poorer quality that represent a greater risk to health. Furthermore, high costs of water may reduce the volumes of water used by households, which in turn may influence hygiene practices and increase risks of disease transmission.

When assessing affordability, it is important to collect data on the price at the point of purchase. Where households are connected to the drinking-water supplier, this will be the tariff applied. Where water is purchased from public standpipes or from neighbours, the price at the point of purchase may be very different from the drinking-water supplier tariff. Many alternative water sources (notably vendors) also involve costs, and these costs should be included in evaluations of affordability. In addition to recurrent costs, the costs for initial acquisition of a connection should also be considered when evaluating affordability.

5.3.4 Continuity

Interruptions to drinking-water supply either through intermittent sources or resulting from engineering inefficiencies are a major determinant of the access to and quality of drinking-water. Analysis of data on continuity of supply requires the consideration of several components. Continuity can be classified as follows:

- year-round service from a reliable source with no interruption of flow at the tap or source;
- year-round service with frequent (daily or weekly) interruptions, of which the most common causes are:

  - restricted pumping regimes in pumped systems, whether planned or due to power failure or sporadic failure;
  - peak demand exceeding the flow capacity of the transmission mains or the capacity of the reservoir;
  - excessive leakage within the distribution systems;
  - excessive demands on community-managed point sources;
- seasonal service variation resulting from source fluctuation, which typically has three causes:
  - natural variation in source volume during the year;
  - volume limitation because of competition with other uses such as irrigation;
  - periods of high turbidity when the source water may be untreatable; and
- compounded frequent and seasonal discontinuity.

This classification reflects broad categories of continuity, which are likely to affect hygiene in different ways. Daily or weekly discontinuity results in low supply pressure and a consequent risk of in-pipe recontamination. Other consequences include reduced availability and lower volume use, which adversely affect hygiene. Household water storage may be necessary, and this may lead to an increase in the risk of contamination during such storage and associated handling. Seasonal discontinuity often forces users to obtain water from inferior and distant sources. As a consequence, in addition to the obvious reduction in quality and quantity, time is lost in water collection.

5.4 Planning and implementation

For drinking-water supply surveillance to lead to improvements in drinking-water supply, it is vital that the mechanisms for promoting improvement are recognized and used.

The focus of drinking-water supply improvement (whether as investment priority at regional or national levels, development of hygiene education programmes or enforcement of compliance) will depend on the nature of the drinking-water supplies and the types of problems identified. A checklist of mechanisms for drinking-water supply improvement based on the output of surveillance is given below:

- **Establishing national priorities** – When the most common problems and shortcomings in drinking-water systems have been identified, national strategies can be formulated for improvements and remedial measures; these might include changes in training (of managers, administrators, engineers or field staff), rolling programmes for rehabilitation or improvement or changes in funding strategies to target specific needs.
- **Establishing regional priorities** – Regional offices of drinking-water supply agencies can decide which communities to work in and which remedial activities are priorities; public health criteria should be considered when priorities are set.

- **Establishing hygiene education programmes** – Not all of the problems revealed by surveillance are technical in nature, and not all are solved by drinking-water suppliers; surveillance also looks at problems involving community and household supplies, water collection and transport and household treatment and storage. The solutions to many of these problems are likely to require educational and promotional activities.
- **Auditing of WSPs and upgrading** – The information generated by surveillance can be used to audit WSPs and to assess whether these are in compliance. Systems and their associated WSPs should be upgraded where they are found to be deficient, although feasibility must be considered, and enforcement of upgrading should be linked to strategies for progressive improvement.
- **Ensuring community operation and maintenance** – Support should be provided by a designated authority to enable community members to be trained so that they are able to assume responsibility for the operation and maintenance of community drinking-water supplies.
- **Establishing public awareness and information channels** – Publication of information on public health aspects of drinking-water supplies, water quality and the performance of suppliers can encourage suppliers to follow good practices, mobilize public opinion and response and reduce the need for regulatory enforcement, which should be an option of last resort.

In order to make best use of limited resources where surveillance is not yet practised, it is advisable to start with a basic programme that develops in a planned manner. Activities in the early stages should generate enough useful data to demonstrate the value of surveillance. Thereafter, the objective should be to progress to more advanced surveillance as resources and conditions permit.

The activities normally undertaken in the initial, intermediate and advanced stages of development of drinking-water supply surveillance are summarized as follows:

- **Initial phase:**
  - —Establish requirements for institutional development.
  - —Provide training for staff involved in programme.
  - —Define the role of participants, e.g., quality assurance / quality control by supplier, surveillance by public health authority.
  - —Develop methodologies suitable for the area.
  - —Commence routine surveillance in priority areas (including inventories).
  - —Limit verification to essential parameters and known problem substances.
  - —Establish reporting, filing and communication systems.
  - —Advocate improvements according to identified priorities.
  - —Establish reporting to local suppliers, communities, media and regional authorities.
  - —Establish liaison with communities; identify community roles in surveillance and means of promoting community participation.

- **Intermediate phase:**
  - — Train staff involved in programme.
  - — Establish and expand systematic routine surveillance.
  - — Expand access to analytical capability (often by means of regional laboratories, national laboratories being largely responsible for analytical quality control and training of regional laboratory staff).
  - — Undertake surveys for chemical contaminants using wider range of analytical methods.
  - — Evaluate all methodologies (sampling, analysis, etc.).
  - — Use appropriate standard methods (e.g., analytical methods, fieldwork procedures).
  - — Develop capacity for statistical analysis of data.
  - — Establish national database.
  - — Identify common problems, promote activities to address them at regional and national levels.
  - — Expand reporting to include interpretation at national level.
  - — Draft or revise health-based targets as part of framework for safe drinking-water.
  - — Use legal enforcement where necessary.
  - — Involve communities routinely in surveillance implementation.
- **Advanced phase:**
  - — Train staff involved in programme.
  - — Establish routine testing for all health and acceptability parameters at defined frequencies.
  - — Use full network of national, regional and local laboratories (including analytical quality control).
  - — Use national framework for drinking-water safety.
  - — Improve water services on the basis of national and local priorities, hygiene education and enforcement of standards.
  - — Establish regional database archives compatible with national database.
  - — Disseminate data at all levels (local, regional and national).
  - — Involve communities routinely in surveillance implementation.

5.5 Reporting and communicating

An essential element of a successful surveillance programme is the reporting of results to stakeholders. It is important to establish appropriate systems of reporting to all relevant bodies. Proper reporting and feedback will support the development of effective remedial strategies. The ability of the surveillance programme to identify and advocate interventions to improve water supply is highly dependent on the ability to analyse and present information in a meaningful way to different target audiences. The target audiences for surveillance information will typically include:

- public health officials at local, regional and national levels;
- water suppliers;
- local administrations;
- communities and water users; and
- local, regional and national authorities responsible for development planning and investment.

5.5.1 Interaction with community and consumers

Community participation is a desirable component of surveillance, particularly for community and household drinking-water supplies. As primary beneficiaries of improved drinking-water supplies, community members have a right to take part in decision-making. The community represents a resource that can be drawn upon for local knowledge and experience. They are the people who are likely to first notice problems in the drinking-water supply and therefore can provide an indication of when immediate remedial action is required. Communication strategies should include:

- provision of summary information to consumers (e.g., through annual reports or the Internet); and
- establishment and involvement of consumer associations at local, regional and national levels.

> The right of consumers to information on the safety of the water supplied to them for domestic purposes is fundamental.

However, in many communities, the simple right of access to information will not ensure that individuals are aware of the quality or safety of the water supplied to them. The agencies responsible for surveillance should develop strategies for disseminating and explaining the significance of results obtained.

It may not be feasible for the surveillance agency to provide feedback information directly to the entire community. Thus, it may be appropriate to use community organizations, where these exist, to provide an effective channel for providing feedback information to users. Some local organizations (e.g., local councils and community-based organizations, such as women's groups, religious groups and schools) have regular meetings in the communities that they serve and can therefore provide a mechanism of relaying important information to a large number of people within the community. Furthermore, by using local organizations, it is often easier to initiate a process of discussion and decision-making within the community concerning water quality. The most important elements in working with local organizations are to ensure that the organization selected can access the whole community and can initiate discussion on the results of surveillance.

5.5.2 Regional use of data

Strategies for regional prioritization are typically of a medium-term nature and have specific data requirements. While the management of information at a national level is aimed at highlighting common or recurrent problems, the objective at a regional level is to assign a degree of priority to individual interventions. It is therefore important to derive a relative measure of health risk. While this information cannot be used on its own to determine which systems should be given immediate attention (which would also require the analysis of economic, social, environmental and cultural factors), it provides an extremely important tool for determining regional priorities. It should be a declared objective to ensure that remedial action is carried out each year on a predetermined proportion of the systems classified as high risk.

At the regional level, it is also important to monitor the improvement in (or deterioration of) both individual drinking-water supplies and the supplies as a whole. In this context, simple measures, such as the mean sanitary inspection score of all systems, the proportion of systems with given degrees of faecal contamination, the population with different levels of service and the mean cost of domestic consumption, should be calculated yearly and changes monitored.

In many developing and developed countries, a high proportion of small-community drinking-water systems fail to meet requirements for water safety. In such circumstances, it is important that realistic goals for progressive improvement are agreed upon and implemented. It is practical to classify water quality results in terms of an overall grading for water safety linked to priority for action, as illustrated in Table 5.2.

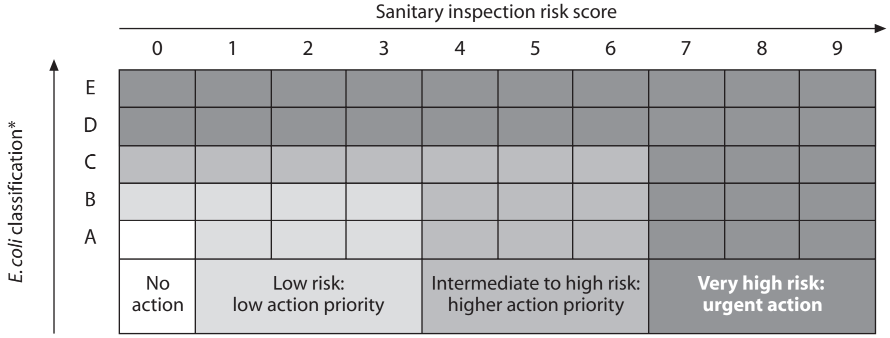
Grading schemes may be of particular use in community supplies where the frequency of testing is low and reliance on analytical results alone is especially inappropriate. Such schemes will typically take account of both analytical findings and results of the sanitary inspection through schema such as illustrated in Figure 5.1.

Combined analysis of sanitary inspection and water quality data can be used to identify the most important causes of and control measures for contamination. This is important to support effective and rational decision-making. For instance, it will be important to know whether on-site or off-site sanitation could be associated with contamination of drinking-water, as the remedial actions required to address either source of contamination will be very different. This analysis may also identify other factors associated with contamination, such as heavy rainfall. As the data will be non-parametric, suitable methods for analysis include chi-square, odds ratios and logistic regression models.

Table 5.2 Categorization of drinking-water systems based on compliance with performance and safety targets (see also Table 7.7)

	Proportion (%) of samples negative for *E. coli*		
		Population size:	
Quality of water system	**<5000**	**5000–100 000**	**>100 000**
Excellent	90	95	99
Good	80	90	95
Fair	70	85	90
Poor	60	80	85

Figure 5.1 Example of assessment of priority of remedial actions of community drinking-water supplies based on a grading system of microbial quality and sanitary inspection rating or score



* Based on frequency of *E. coli* positivity in drinking-water and/or *E. coli* concentrations in drinking-water.

Grading	**Description**
A	Completely satisfactory, extremely low level of risk
B	Satisfactory, very low level of risk
C	Marginally satisfactory, low level of microbial risk when water leaves the plant, but may not be satisfactory chemically
D	Unsatisfactory level of risk
E	Unacceptable level of risk

Source: Lloyd & Bartram (1991)

6

Application of the Guidelines in specific circumstances

These Guidelines provide a generally applicable approach to drinking-water safety. In chapters 2–5, approaches and, where appropriate, aspects of their application to drinking-water supply through piped distribution and through community supplies are described. In applying the Guidelines in specific circumstances, additional factors may be important. This chapter describes the application of the Guidelines in some commonly encountered specific circumstances and issues that should be taken into account in each.

6.1 Large buildings

Responsibility for many actions essential to the control of drinking-water quality in large buildings may be outside the responsibility of the drinking-water supplier. Significant contamination can occur because of factors within the built environment, and specific requirements in the large building environment (including hospitals and health care facilities) are distinct from those in the domestic environment.

General drinking-water safety is assured by maintenance protocols, regular cleaning, temperature management and maintenance of a disinfectant residual. For these reasons, authorities responsible for building safety should be responsible for developing and implementing WSPs. Regulatory or other appropriate authorities may provide guidance on the development and application of WSPs for large building drinking-water systems, which should be implemented by managers.

WSPs for large buildings may usefully address not only drinking-water systems but also other water systems, such as cooling towers and evaporative condensers of air conditioning devices.

The regulator can specify compliance requirements for buildings in general or for individual buildings. Compliance may require that maintenance and monitoring programmes be carried out through a building-specific WSP. It may be appropriate to display maintenance and monitoring programmes and certification of compliance at a conspicuous location within the building. Compliance could be verified and certified by an independent auditor.

6.1.1 Health risk assessment

The principal hazards that may accrue in the drinking-water systems of large buildings are ingress of microbial contamination (which may affect only the building or also the wider supply), proliferation and dispersal of bacteria growing on water contact surfaces (especially *Legionella*) and addition of chemical substances from piping, jointing and plumbing materials.

Faecal contamination may occur through cross-connection and backflow and from buried/immersed tanks and pipes, especially if not maintained with positive internal water pressure.

Legionella bacteria are the cause of legionellosis, including legionnaires' disease. They are ubiquitous in the environment and can proliferate at temperatures experienced at times in piped distribution systems. The route of infection is by inhalation of droplets or aerosols; however, exposure from piped water systems is preventable through the implementation of basic water quality management measures, including maintaining water temperature outside the range at which *Legionella* proliferates (25–50 °C) and maintaining disinfectant residuals throughout the piped distribution system.

Devices such as cooling towers and hot or warm water systems, if not appropriately maintained, can provide suitable conditions for the survival and growth of *Legionella*. In large buildings, there is increased potential for growth of *Legionella* in long water distribution systems, and maintenance of these systems needs particular attention. In addition to supporting the growth of *Legionella*, devices such as cooling towers and hot or warm water systems can disseminate contaminated water in aerosols.

For further information on *Legionella* in drinking-water, see section 11.1.9 and the supporting document *Legionella and the Prevention of Legionellosis* (see section 1.3).

Hospitals, nursing care homes, other health care facilities, schools, hotels and some other large buildings are high-risk environments, because of both the complex nature of their drinking-water systems and the sensitivities of their occupants. Requirements similar to those outlined above for other large buildings apply, but heightened vigilance in control measure monitoring and verification is generally justified.

6.1.2 System assessment

Because WSPs for large buildings are limited to the building environment and since dose–response is not easily described for bacteria arising from growth, adequate control measures are defined in terms of practices that have been shown to be effective.

In undertaking an assessment of the building's distribution system, a range of specific issues must be taken into consideration. These factors relate to ingress and proliferation of contaminants and include:

- pressure of water within the system;
- intermittent supplies;

— temperature of water;
— cross-connections, especially in mixed systems;
— backflow prevention; and
— system design to minimize dead/blind ends (i.e., a length of pipe, closed at one end, through which no water passes) and other areas of potential stagnation.

6.1.3 Management

The aim of a distribution system within a large building is to supply safe drinking-water at adequate pressure and flow. Pressure is influenced by the action of friction at the pipe wall, flow rate and pipe length, gradient and diameter. For the purposes of maintaining drinking-water quality, it is important to minimize transit times and avoid low flows and pressures. Pressure at any point in the system should be maintained within a range whereby the maximum pressure avoids pipe bursts and the minimum pressure ensures that water is supplied at adequate flow rates for all expected demands. In some buildings, this may require pressure boosting in the network.

Where piped water is stored in tanks to reduce the effect of intermittent supplies, and particularly where water is supplied directly to equipment, the potential for backflow of water into the mains network exists. This may be driven by high pressures generated in equipment connected to mains water supplies or by low pressures in the mains. Water quality in intermittent systems may deteriorate on recharging, where surges may lead to leakage and dislodgement of biofilm and acceptability problems.

A backflow event will be a sanitary problem if there is cross-connection between the potable supply and a source of contamination. Positive pressure should be maintained throughout the piped distribution system. Effective maintenance procedures should be implemented to prevent backflow. In situations where backflow is of particular concern, backflow prevention devices may be used in addition to the primary objective of reducing or eliminating backflow. Situations presenting a potentially high public health risk (e.g., dental chairs, laboratories) should receive special attention.

Significant points of risk exist in areas where pipes carrying drinking-water pass through drains or other places where stagnant water pools. The risk associated with ingress of contamination in these situations may be controlled by reducing the formation of such stagnant pools and by routing pipework to avoid such areas. The design and management of piped water systems in buildings must also take into account the impact of slow flows and dead ends.

Wherever possible, drinking-water taps should be situated in areas where the pipes are well flushed to minimize leaching from pipes, materials and plumbing fittings.

6.1.4 Monitoring

Monitoring of control measures includes:

- temperature, including frequent (e.g., weekly) monitoring of remote areas;
- disinfectants and pH, when employed (e.g., weekly to monthly); and
- microbial quality of water, particularly following system maintenance or repairs.

Daily monitoring may be necessary in the presence of suspected water-related cases of illness.

Monitoring of drinking-water quality is required to be more frequent when the building is new or recently commissioned or following maintenance of the system. When the building's drinking-water system has not stabilized, monitoring should be more frequent until the water quality has stabilized.

6.1.5 Independent surveillance and supporting programmes

Independent surveillance is a desirable element in ensuring continued water safety within a large building and should be undertaken by the relevant health agency or other independent authority.

In order to ensure safety of drinking-water within buildings, supportive activities of national regulatory agencies include the following:

- specific attention to application of codes of good practice (e.g., at commissioning and in contracting construction and rehabilitation);
- suitable training for engineers and plumbers;
- regulation of the plumbing community;
- effective certification of materials and devices in the marketplace; and
- inclusion of WSPs as an essential component of building safety provision.

A WSP would normally document its use of and reliance on such measures – for instance, in using only approved professionals to conduct maintenance and in insisting on their use of certified materials.

6.1.6 Drinking-water quality in health care facilities

Health care facilities include hospitals, health centres and hospices, residential care, dental offices and dialysis units. Drinking-water should be suitable for human consumption and for all usual domestic purposes, including personal hygiene. However, it may not be suitable for all uses or for some patients within health care facilities, and further processing or treatment or other safeguards may be required.

Drinking-water can contain a range of microorganisms, including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, non-tuberculous *Mycobacterium* spp., *Acinetobacter* spp., *Aeromonas* spp. and *Aspergillus*. There is no evidence that these microorganisms represent a health concern through water consumption by the general population, including most patients in health care facilities. However, additional processing may be required to ensure safety for consumption by severely immunosuppressed persons, such as those with neutrophil counts below 500 per μl (see the supporting document *Heterotrophic Plate Counts and Drinking-water Safety*; section 1.3).

Microorganisms in drinking-water also have the potential to cause infections if drinking-water is used to wash burns or to wash medical devices such as endoscopes and catheters. Water used for such purposes needs to be of a higher quality than described in these Guidelines and may require additional processing, such as microfiltration or sterilization, depending on use.

Health care facilities may include environments that support the proliferation and dissemination of *Legionella* (see section 11.1.9 and the supporting document *Legionella and the Prevention of Legionellosis*; section 1.3).

Renal dialysis requires large volumes of water that exceed the chemical and microbial quality requirements for drinking-water. Water used for dialysis requires special processing to minimize the presence of microorganisms, endotoxins, toxins and chemical contaminants. The vulnerability of renal dialysis patients was demonstrated in 1996 by the death of 50 such patients after exposure to water contaminated by high levels of microcystin (Jochimsen et al., 1998; Pouria et al., 1998). Dialysis patients are also sensitive to chloramines, and this needs to be considered when chloramination is used to disinfect drinking-water supplies, particularly in areas where there are home dialysis patients.

All health care facilities should have specific WSPs as part of their infection control programme. These plans should address issues such as water quality and treatment requirements, cleaning of specialized equipment and control of microbial growth in water systems and ancillary equipment.

6.1.7 Drinking-water quality in schools and day care centres

A long-term approach to improving hygiene in the community includes working with children in schools. This enables the concept of good hygiene, of which drinking-water safety is a part, to become part of a general understanding of health and the influence of the environment. Schoolchildren can relay hygiene concepts to family and households. As young children learn from what they see around them, the school environment itself should meet the requirements of good hygiene – for example, by providing toilets or latrines, water for hand-washing, generally clean surroundings and hygienic facilities for the preparation and serving of school meals. Visual demonstration of the presence of bacteria on unwashed hands has been shown to be valuable (e.g., using UV fluorescence of bacteria or the hydrogen sulfide paper strip method).

One of the most important characteristics of effective health education is that it builds on concepts, ideas and practices that people already have. Hygiene education programmes should be based on an understanding of the factors that influence behaviour at the community level. These might include:

- enabling factors, such as money, materials and time to carry out appropriate patterns of behaviour;
- pressure from particular members of the family and community (e.g., elders, traditional healers, opinion leaders);

- beliefs and attitudes among community members with respect to hygienic behaviour, especially the perceived benefits and disadvantages of taking action; and
- the understanding of the relationship between health and hygiene.

An understanding of the factors that influence hygiene-related behaviours will help in identifying the resources (e.g., soap, storage containers), the key individuals in the home and community and the important beliefs that should be taken into account. This will help to ensure that the content of the hygiene education is relevant to the community. Good advice should:

- result in improved health;
- be affordable;
- require a minimum of effort and time to put into practice;
- be realistic;
- be culturally acceptable;
- meet a perceived need; and
- be easy to understand.

6.2 Emergencies and disasters

Drinking-water safety is one of the most important public health issues in most emergencies and disasters. The greatest waterborne risk to health in most emergencies is the transmission of faecal pathogens, due to inadequate sanitation, hygiene and protection of water sources. Some disasters, including those caused by or involving damage to chemical and nuclear industrial installations or spillage in transport or volcanic activity, may create acute problems from chemical or radiological water pollution.

Different types of disaster affect water quality in different ways. When people are displaced by conflict and natural disaster, they may move to an area where unprotected water sources are contaminated. When population density is high and sanitation is inadequate, unprotected water sources in and around the temporary settlement are highly likely to become contaminated. If there is a significant prevalence of disease cases and carriers in a population of people with low immunity due to malnutrition or the burden of other diseases, then the risk of an outbreak of waterborne disease is increased. The quality of urban drinking-water supplies is particularly at risk following earthquakes, mudslides and other structurally damaging disasters. Water treatment works may be damaged, causing untreated or partially treated water to be distributed, and sewers and water transmission pipes may be broken, causing contamination of drinking-water in the distribution system. Floods may contaminate wells, boreholes and surface water sources with faecal matter washed from the ground surface or from overflowing latrines and sewers. During droughts, people may be forced to use unprotected water supplies when normal supplies dry up; as more people and animals use fewer water sources, the risk of contamination is increased.

Emergency situations that are appropriately managed tend to stabilize after a matter of days or weeks. Many develop into long-term situations that can last for several years before a permanent solution is found. Water quality concerns may change over that time, and water quality parameters that pose long-term risks to health may become more important.

6.2.1 Practical considerations

Available sources of water are very limited in most emergency situations, and providing a sufficient quantity of water for personal and domestic hygiene as well as for drinking and cooking is important. Guidelines and national drinking-water quality standards should therefore be flexible, taking into consideration the risks and benefits to health in the short and long term, and should not excessively restrict water availability for hygiene, as this would often result in an increased overall risk of disease transmission.

There are a number of factors to take into consideration when providing drinking-water for a population affected by a disaster, including the following:

- *The quantity of water available and the reliability of supply* – This is likely to be the overriding concern in most emergency situations, as it is usually easier to improve water quality than to increase its availability or to move the affected population closer to another water source.
- *The equitability of access to water* – Even if sufficient water is available to meet minimum needs, additional measures may be needed to ensure that access is equitable. Unless water points are sufficiently close to their dwellings, people will not be able to collect enough water for their needs. Water may need to be rationed to ensure that everyone's basic needs are met.
- *The quality of the raw water* – It is preferable to choose a source of water that can be supplied with little or no treatment, provided it is available in sufficient quantity.
- *Sources of contamination and the possibility of protecting the water source* – This should always be a priority in emergencies, whether or not disinfection of the water supply is considered necessary.
- *The treatment processes required for rapidly providing a sufficient quantity of potable water* – As surface water sources are commonly used to provide water to large populations in emergencies, clarification of the raw water – for example, by flocculation and sedimentation and/or by filtration – is commonly required before disinfection.
- *The treatment processes appropriate for post-emergency situations* – The affordability, simplicity and reliability of water treatment processes in the longer term should be considered early on in the emergency response.
- *The need to disinfect drinking-water supplies* – In emergencies, hygiene conditions are normally poor and the risk of disease outbreaks is high, particularly in populations with low immunity. It is therefore crucial to disinfect the water supplies, ensuring a residual disinfection capacity in the water. This practice would

considerably reduce the likelihood of disease transmission through contamination of water in the home.

- *Acceptability* – It is important to ensure that drinking-water provided in emergencies is acceptable to the consumers, or they may resort to water from unprotected or untreated supplies.
- *The need for vessels to collect and store water* – Vessels that are hygienic and appropriate to local needs and habits are needed for the collection and storage of water to be used for washing, cooking and bathing.
- *Epidemiological considerations* – Contamination of water may occur during collection, storage and use in the home, as a result of lack of sanitation or poor hygiene due to an insufficient quantity of water. Other transmission routes for major waterborne and sanitation-related diseases in emergencies and disasters include person-to-person contact, aerosols and food intake. The importance of all routes should be considered when applying the Guidelines, selecting and protecting water sources and choosing options for water treatment.

In many emergency situations, water is collected from central water collection points, stored in containers and then transferred to cooking and drinking vessels by the affected people. This process provides many opportunities for contamination of the water after it leaves the supply system. It is therefore important that people are aware of the risks to health from contamination of water from the point of collection to the moment of consumption and have the means to reduce or eliminate these risks. When water sources are close to dwelling areas, they may easily be contaminated through indiscriminate defecation, which should be strongly discouraged. Establishing and maintaining water quality in emergencies require the rapid recruitment, training and management of operations staff and the establishment of systems for maintenance and repairs, consumable supplies and monitoring. Communication with the affected population is extremely important for reducing health problems due to poor water quality. Detailed information may be found in Wisner & Adams (2003).

6.2.2 Monitoring

Water safety should be monitored during emergencies. Monitoring may involve sanitary inspection and one or more of:

- —sanitary inspection and water sampling and analysis;
- —monitoring of water treatment processes, including disinfection;
- —monitoring of water quality at all water collection points and in a sample of homes; and
- —water quality assessment in the investigation of disease outbreaks or the evaluation of hygiene promotion activities, as required.

Monitoring and reporting systems should be designed and managed to ensure that action is swiftly taken to protect health. Health information should also be monitored to ensure that water quality can be rapidly investigated when there is a possibility that water quality might contribute to a health problem and that treatment processes – particularly disinfection – can be modified as required.

6.2.3 Microbial guidelines

The objective of zero *E. coli* per 100 ml of water is the goal for all water supplies and should be the target even in emergencies; however, it may be difficult to achieve in the immediate post-disaster period. This highlights the need for appropriate disinfection.

An indication of a certain level of faecal indicator bacteria *alone* is not a reliable guide to microbial water safety. Some faecal pathogens, including many viruses and protozoal cysts and oocysts, may be more resistant to treatment (e.g., by chlorine) than common faecal indicator bacteria. More generally, if a sanitary survey suggests the risk of faecal contamination, then even a very low level of faecal contamination may be considered to present a risk, especially during an outbreak of a potentially waterborne disease, such as cholera.

Drinking-water should be disinfected in emergency situations, and an adequate disinfectant residual (e.g., chlorine) should be maintained in the system. Turbid water should be clarified wherever possible to enable disinfection to be effective. Minimum target concentrations for chlorine at point of delivery are 0.2 mg/litre in normal circumstances and 0.5 mg/litre in high-risk circumstances. Local actions that should be considered in response to microbial water quality problems and emergencies are further discussed in section 7.6.

Where there is a concern about the quality of drinking-water in an emergency situation that cannot be addressed through central services, then the appropriateness of household-level treatment should be evaluated, including, for example:

- bringing water to a rolling boil and cooling before consumption;
- adding sodium or calcium hypochlorite solution, such as household bleach, to a bucket of water, mixing thoroughly and allowing to stand for about 30 min prior to consumption; turbid water should be clarified by settling and/or filtration before disinfection;
- vigorously shaking small volumes of water in a clean, transparent container, such as a soft drink bottle, for 20 s and exposing the container to sunlight for at least 6 h;
- applying products such as tablets or other dosing techniques to disinfect the water, with or without clarification by flocculation or filtration; and
- end-use units and devices for field treatment of drinking-water.

Emergency decontamination processes may not always accomplish the level of disinfection recommended for optimal conditions, particularly with regard to resistant pathogens. However, implementation of emergency procedures may reduce numbers of pathogens to levels at which the risk of waterborne disease is largely controlled.

The parameters most commonly measured to assess microbial safety are as follows:

- *E. coli (see above):* Thermotolerant coliforms may provide a simpler surrogate.
- *Residual chlorine:* Taste does not give a reliable indication of chlorine concentration. Chlorine content should be tested in the field with, for example, a colour comparator, generally used in the range of 0.2–1 mg/litre.
- *pH:* It is necessary to know the pH of water, because more alkaline water requires a longer contact time or a higher free residual chlorine level at the end of the contact time for adequate disinfection (0.4–0.5 mg/litre at pH 6–8, rising to 0.6 mg/litre at pH 8–9; chlorination may be ineffective above pH 9).
- *Turbidity:* Turbidity adversely affects the efficiency of disinfection. Turbidity is also measured to determine what type and level of treatment are needed. It can be carried out with a simple turbidity tube that allows a direct reading in nephelometric turbidity units (NTU).

6.2.4 Sanitary inspections and catchment mapping

It is possible to assess the likelihood of faecal contamination of water sources through a sanitary inspection. Sanitary inspection and water quality testing are complementary activities; the findings of each assists the interpretation of the other. Where water quality analysis cannot be performed, sanitary inspection can still provide valuable information to support effective decision-making. A sanitary inspection makes it possible to see what needs to be done to protect the water source. This procedure can be combined with bacteriological, physical and chemical testing to enable field teams to assess and act on risks from contamination and to provide the basis for monitoring water supplies in the post-disaster period.

Even when it is possible to carry out testing of microbial quality, results are not instantly available. Thus, the immediate assessment of contamination risk may be based on gross indicators such as proximity to sources of faecal contamination (human or animal), colour and smell, the presence of dead fish or animals, the presence of foreign matter such as ash or debris or the presence of a chemical or radiation hazard or wastewater discharge point upstream. Catchment mapping involving the identification of sources and pathways of pollution can be an important tool for assessing the likelihood of contamination of a water source.

It is important to use a standard reporting format for sanitary inspections and catchment mapping to ensure that information gathered by different staff is reliable and that information gathered on different water sources may be compared. For an example format, see WHO (1997) and Davis & Lambert (2002). For more information on catchment mapping, see House & Reed (1997).

6.2.5 Chemical and radiological guidelines

Many chemicals in drinking-water are of concern only after extended periods of exposure. Thus, to reduce the risk of outbreaks of waterborne and water-washed (e.g., trachoma, scabies, skin infections) disease, it is preferable to supply water in an emergency, even if it significantly exceeds the guideline values for some chemical parameters, rather than restrict access to water, provided the water can be treated to kill pathogens and can be supplied rapidly to the affected population. Where water sources are likely to be used for long periods, chemical and radiological contaminants of more long-term health concern should be given greater attention. In some situations, this may entail adding treatment processes or seeking alternative sources. Local actions that can be considered in the event of a short-term guideline exceedance or emergency are discussed in section 8.6.

Water from sources that are considered to have a significant risk of chemical or radiological contamination should be avoided, even as a temporary measure. In the long term, achieving the guidelines should be the aim of emergency drinking-water supply programmes based on the progressive improvement of water quality. Procedures for identifying priority chemicals in drinking-water are outlined in the supporting document *Chemical Safety of Drinking-water* (section 1.3).

6.2.6 Testing kits and laboratories

Portable testing kits allow the determination in the field of key water quality parameters, such as thermotolerant coliform count, free residual chlorine, pH, turbidity and filterability.

Where large numbers of water samples need testing or a broad range of parameters is of interest, laboratory analysis is usually most appropriate. If the drinking-water supplier's laboratories or laboratories at environmental health offices and universities no longer function because of the disaster, then a temporary laboratory may need to be set up. Where samples are transported to laboratories, handling is important. Poor handling may lead to meaningless or misleading results.

Workers should be trained in the correct procedures for collecting, labelling, packing and transporting samples and in supplying supporting information from the sanitary survey to help interpret laboratory results. For guidance on methods of water sampling and testing, see WHO (1997) and Bartram & Ballance (1996).

6.3 Safe drinking-water for travellers

Diarrhoea is the most common cause of ill health for travellers; up to 80% of all travellers are affected in high-risk areas. In localities where the quality of potable water and sanitation and food hygiene practices are questionable, the numbers of parasites, bacteria and viruses in water and food can be substantial, and numerous infections can occur. Cases occur among people staying in resorts and hotels in all categories. No vaccine is capable of conferring general protection against diarrhoea, which is caused by many different pathogens. It is important that travellers are aware of possible risks and take appropriate steps to minimize these.

Contaminated food, water and drinks are the most common sources of infections. Careful selection of drinking-water sources and appropriate water treatment offer significant protection. Preventive measures while living or travelling in areas with unsafe drinking-water include the following:

- Always avoid consumption or use of unsafe water (even when brushing teeth) if you are unsure about water quality.
- Avoid unpasteurized juices and ice made from untreated water.
- Avoid salads or other uncooked meals that may have been washed or prepared with unsafe water.
- Drink water that you have boiled, filtered and/or treated with chlorine or iodine and stored in clean containers.
- Consume ice only if it is known to be of drinking-water quality.
- Drink bottled water if it is known to be safe, carbonated bottled beverages (water and sodas) only from sealed, tamper-proof containers and pasteurized/canned juices and pasteurized milk.
- Drink coffee and tea made from boiled water and served and stored in clean containers.

The greatest health risk from drinking-water for travellers is associated with microbial constituents of water. Water can be treated or re-treated in small quantities to significantly improve its safety. The simplest and most important beneficial treatments for microbially contaminated water are boiling, disinfection and filtration to inactivate or remove pathogenic microorganisms. These treatments will generally not reduce most chemical constituents in drinking-water. However, most chemicals are of health concern only after long-term exposure. Numerous simple treatment approaches and commercially available technologies are also available to travellers to treat drinking-water for single-person use.

Bringing water to a rolling boil is the most effective way to kill disease-causing pathogens, even at high altitudes and even for turbid water. The hot water should be allowed to cool down on its own without the addition of ice. If water for boiling is to be clarified, this should be done before boiling.

Chemical disinfection is effective for killing bacteria, some viruses and some protozoa (but not, for example, *Cryptosporidium* oocysts). Some form of chlorine and iodine are the chemicals most widely used for disinfection by travellers. After chlorination, a carbon (charcoal) filter may be used to remove excess chlorine taste and, in the case of iodine treatment, to remove excess iodine. Silver is not very effective for eliminating disease-causing microorganisms, since silver by itself is slow acting. If water is turbid (not clear or with suspended solid matter), it should be clarified before disinfection; clarification includes filtration, settling and decanting. Portable filtration devices that have been tested and rated to remove protozoa and some bacteria are also available; ceramic filters and some carbon block filters are the most common types. The filter's pore size rating must be 1 μm (absolute) or less to ensure removal of *Cryptosporidium* oocysts (these very fine filters may require a pre-filter to remove larger particles in order to avoid clogging the final filter). A combination of technologies (filtration followed by chemical disinfection or boiling) is recommended, as most filtering devices do not remove viruses.

For people with weakened immune systems, extra precautions are recommended to reduce the risk of infection from contaminated water. While drinking boiled water is safest, certified bottled or mineral water may also be acceptable. Iodine as a water disinfectant is not recommended for pregnant women, those with a history of thyroid disease and those with known hypersensitivity to iodine, unless there is also an effective post-treatment iodine removal system such as granular carbon in use.

6.4 Desalination systems

The principal purpose of desalination is to enable sources of brackish or salty water, otherwise unacceptable for human consumption, to be used for this purpose.

The use of desalination to provide drinking-water is increasing and is likely to continue to increase because of water scarcity driven by pressures arising from population growth, over-exploitation of water resources and pollution of other water sources. While most (around 60%) of currently constructed capacity is in the eastern Mediterranean region, desalination facilities exist all over the world, and their use is likely to increase in all continents.

Most present applications of desalination are for estuarine water, coastal water and seawater. Desalination may also be applied to brackish inland waters (both surface water and groundwater) and may be used on board vessels. Small-scale desalination units also exist for household and community use and present specific challenges to effective operation and maintenance.

Further guidance on desalination for safe drinking-water supply is available in the supporting document *Desalination for Safe Drinking-water Supply* (section 1.3).

In applying the Guidelines to desalinated water supply systems, account should be taken of certain major differences between these and systems abstracting water from freshwater sources. These differences include the factors described below. Once taken into account, the general requirements of these Guidelines for securing microbial, chemical and radiological safety should apply.

Brackish water, coastal water and seawater sources may contain hazards not encountered in freshwater systems. These include diverse harmful algal events associated with micro- and macroalgae and cyanobacteria; certain free-living bacteria (including *Vibrio* spp., such as *V. parahaemolyticus* and *V. cholerae*); and some chemicals, such as boron and bromide, that are more abundant in seawater.

Harmful algal events may be associated with exo- and endotoxins that may not be destroyed by heating, are inside algal cells or are free in the water. They are usually non-volatile, and, where they are destroyed by chlorination, this usually requires extremely long contact times. Although a number of toxins have been identified, it is possible that there are other unrecognized toxins. Minimizing of the potential for abstracting water containing toxic algae through location/siting and intake design plus effective monitoring and intake management is an important control measure.

Other chemical issues, such as control of "additives," DBPs and pesticides, are similar to those encountered in fresh waters (see chapter 8), except that a larger variety and greater quantities may be involved in desalination. Due to the presence of bromide in seawater, the distribution of DBPs will likely be dominated by brominated organics.

Approaches to monitoring and assessing the quality of freshwater sources may not be directly applicable to sources subject to desalination. For example, many faecal indicator bacteria die off more rapidly than pathogens (especially viruses) in saline than in fresh water.

The effectiveness of some of the processes employed in desalination to remove some substances of health concern remains inadequately understood. Examples of inefficiencies include imperfect membrane and/or membrane seal integrity (membrane treatment); bacterial growth through membranes/biofilm development on membranes (in membrane treatment systems); and carry-over, especially of volatile substances (with vapour).

Because of the apparently high effectiveness of some of the processes used in removal of both microorganisms and chemical constituents (especially distillation and reverse osmosis), these processes may be employed as single-stage treatments or combined with only a low level of residual disinfectant. The absence of multiple barriers places great stress on the continuously safe operation of that process and implies that even a short-term decrease in effectiveness may present an increased risk to human health. This, in turn, implies the need for on-line monitoring linked to rapid management intervention. For further information, see the supporting document *Water Treatment and Pathogen Control* (section 1.3).

Water produced by desalination is "aggressive" towards materials used, for example, in water supply and domestic plumbing and pipes. Special consideration should be given to the quality of such materials, and normal procedures for certification of materials as suitable for potable water use may not be adequate for water that has not been "stabilized."

Because of the aggressivity of desalinated water and because desalinated water may be considered bland, flavourless and unacceptable, desalinated water is commonly treated by adding chemical constituents such as calcium and magnesium carbonate with carbon dioxide. Once such treatment has been applied, desalinated waters should be no more aggressive than waters normally encountered in the drinking-water supply. Chemicals used in such treatment should be subject to normal procedures for certification.

Desalinated waters are commonly blended with small volumes of more mineral-rich waters to improve their acceptability and particularly to reduce their aggressivity to materials. Blending waters should be fully potable, as described here and elsewhere in the Guidelines. Where seawater is used for this purpose, the major ions added are sodium and chloride. This does not contribute to improving hardness or ion balance, and only small amounts (e.g., 1–3%) can be added without leading to problems of acceptability. Blended waters from coastal and estuarine areas may be more susceptible to contamination with petroleum hydrocarbons, which could give rise to taste and odour problems. Some groundwaters or surface waters, after suitable treatment, may be employed for blending in higher proportions and may improve hardness and ion balance.

Desalinated water is a manufactured product. Concern has been expressed about the impact of extremes of major ion composition or ratios for human health. There is limited evidence to describe the health risk associated with long-term consumption of such water, although concerns regarding mineral content may be limited by the stabilization processes outlined above (see WHO, 2003b).

Desalinated water, by virtue of its manufacture, often contains lower than usual concentrations of other ions commonly found in water, some of which are essential elements. Water typically contributes a small proportion of these, and most intake is through food. Exceptions include fluoride, and declining dental health has been reported from populations consuming desalinated water with very low fluoride content where there is a moderate to high risk of dental caries (WHO, 2003b).

Desalinated water may be more subject to "microbial growth" problems than other waters as a result of one or more of the following: higher initial temperature (from treatment process), higher temperature (application in hot climates) and/or the effect of aggressivity on materials (thereby releasing nutrients). The direct health significance of such growth (see the supporting document *Heterotrophic Plate Counts and Drinking-water Safety*; section 1.3), with the exception of *Legionella* (see chapter 11), is inadequately understood. Nitrite formation by organisms in biofilms may prove problematic where chloramination is practised and excess ammonia is present. Precaution implies that preventive management should be applied as part of good management practice.

6.5 Packaged drinking-water

Bottled water and ice are widely available in both industrialized and developing countries. Consumers may have various reasons for purchasing packaged drinking-water, such as taste, convenience or fashion; for many consumers, however, safety and potential health benefits are important considerations.

6.5.1 Safety of packaged drinking-water

Water is packaged for consumption in a range of vessels, including cans, laminated boxes and plastic bags, and as ice prepared for consumption. However, it is most commonly prepared in glass or plastic bottles. Bottled water also comes in various sizes, from single servings to large carboys holding up to 80 litres.

In applying the Guidelines to bottled waters, certain chemical constituents may be more readily controlled than in piped distribution systems, and stricter standards may therefore be preferred in order to reduce overall population exposure. Similarly, when flexibility exists regarding the source of the water, stricter standards for certain naturally occurring substances of health concern, such as arsenic, may be more readily achieved than in piped distribution systems.

However, some substances may prove to be more difficult to manage in bottled water than in tap water. Some hazards may be associated with the nature of the product (e.g., glass chips and metal fragments). Other problems may arise because bottled water is stored for longer periods and at higher temperatures than water distributed in piped distribution systems or because containers and bottles are reused without adequate cleaning or disinfection. Control of materials used in containers and closures for bottled water is, therefore, of special concern. Some microorganisms that are normally of little or no public health significance may grow to higher levels in bottled water. This growth appears to occur less frequently in gasified water and in water bottled in glass containers than in still water and water bottled in plastic containers. The public health significance of this microbial growth remains uncertain, especially for vulnerable individuals, such as bottle-fed infants and immunocompromised individuals. In regard to bottle-fed infants, as bottled water is not sterile, it should be disinfected – for example, by boiling – prior to its use in the preparation of infant formula. For further information, see the supporting document *Heterotrophic Plate Counts and Drinking-water Safety* (section 1.3).

6.5.2 Potential health benefits of bottled drinking-water

There is a belief by some consumers that natural mineral waters have medicinal properties or offer other health benefits. Such waters are typically of high mineral content, sometimes significantly higher than concentrations normally accepted in drinking-water. Such waters often have a long tradition of use and are often accepted on the basis that they are considered foods rather than drinking-water *per se*. Although certain mineral waters may be useful in providing essential micro-nutrients, such as calcium, these Guidelines do not make recommendations regarding minimum concentrations of essential compounds, because of the uncertainties surrounding mineral nutrition from drinking-water.

Packaged waters with very low mineral content, such as distilled or demineralized waters, are also consumed. Rainwater, which is similarly low in minerals, is consumed by some populations without apparent adverse health effects. There is insufficient scientific information on the benefits or hazards of regularly consuming these types of bottled waters (see WHO, 2003b).

6.5.3 International standards for bottled drinking-water

The *Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality* provide a basis for derivation of standards for all packaged waters. As with other sources of drinking-water, safety is pursued through a combination of safety management and end product quality standards and testing. The international framework for packaged water regulation is provided by the Codex Alimentarius Commission (CAC) of WHO and the FAO. CAC has developed a *Standard for Natural Mineral Waters* and an associated Code of Practice. The Standard describes the product and its compositional and quality factors, including limits for certain chemicals, hygiene, packaging and labelling. The CAC has also developed a *Standard for Bottled/Packaged Waters* to cover packaged drinking-water other than natural mineral waters. Both relevant CAC standards refer directly to these Guidelines.

The CAC *Code of Practice for Collecting, Processing and Marketing of Natural Mineral Waters* provides guidance on a range of good manufacturing practices and provides a generic WSP applied to packaged drinking-water.

Under the existing CAC *Standard for Natural Mineral Waters* and associated Code of Practice, natural mineral waters must conform to strict requirements, including collection and bottling without further treatment from a natural source, such as a spring or well. In comparison, the CAC *Standard for Bottled/Packaged Waters* includes waters from other sources, in addition to springs and wells, and treatment to improve their safety and quality. The distinctions between these standards are especially relevant in regions where natural mineral waters have a long cultural history.

For further information on CAC, its Codex Committee on Natural Mineral Waters, the CAC *Standard for Natural Mineral Waters* and its companion Code of Practice, readers are referred to the CAC website (http://www.codexalimentarius.net/).

6.6 Food production and processing

The quality of water defined by the Guidelines is such that it is suitable for all normal uses in the food industry. Some processes have special water quality requirements in order to secure the desired characteristics of the product, and the Guidelines do not necessarily guarantee that such special requirements are met.

Deterioration in drinking-water quality may have severe impacts on food processing facilities and potentially upon public health. The consequences of a failure to use water of potable quality will depend on the use of the water and the subsequent processing of potentially contaminated materials. Variations in water quality that may be tolerated occasionally in drinking-water supply may be unacceptable for some uses in the food industry. These variations may result in a significant financial impact on food production – for example, through product recalls.

The diverse uses of water in food production and processing have different water quality requirements. Uses include:

- irrigation and livestock watering;
- those in which water may be incorporated in or adhere to a product (e.g., as an ingredient, or where used in washing or "refreshing" of foods);
- misting of salad vegetables in grocery stores; and
- those in which contact between the water and foodstuff should be minimal (as in heating and cooling and cleaning water).

To reduce microbial contamination, specific treatments (e.g., heat) capable of removing a range of pathogenic organisms of public health concern may be used. The effect of these treatments should be taken into account when assessing the impacts of deterioration in drinking-water quality on a food production or processing facility.

Information on deterioration of the quality of a drinking-water supply should be promptly communicated to vulnerable food production facilities.

6.7 Aircraft and airports

6.7.1 Health risks

The importance of water as a potential vehicle for infectious disease transmission on aircraft has been well documented. In general terms, the greatest microbial risks are those associated with ingestion of water that is contaminated with human and animal excreta.

If the source of water used to replenish aircraft supplies is contaminated, and unless adequate precautions are taken, disease can be spread through the aircraft water. It is thus imperative that airports comply with Article 14.2 (Part III – Health Organization) of the International Health Regulations (1969) and be provided with potable drinking-water from a source approved by the appropriate regulatory agency (WHO, 1983).

A potable water source is not a safeguard if the water is subsequently contaminated during transfer, storage or distribution in aircraft. Airports usually have special arrangements for managing water after it has entered the airport. Water may be delivered to aircraft by water servicing vehicles or water bowsers. Transfer of water from the water carriers to the aircraft provides the opportunity for microbial or chemical contamination (e.g., from water hoses).

A WSP covering water management within airports from receipt of the water through to its transfer to the aircraft, complemented by measures (e.g., safe materials and good practices in design, construction, operation and maintenance of aircraft systems) to ensure that water quality is maintained on the aircraft, provides a framework for water safety in aviation.

6.7.2 System risk assessment

In undertaking an assessment of the general airport/aircraft water distribution system, a range of specific issues must be taken into consideration, including:

- quality of source water;
- design and construction of airport storage tanks and pipes;
- design and construction of water servicing vehicles;
- water loading techniques;
- any treatment systems on aircraft;
- maintenance of on-board plumbing; and
- prevention of cross-connections, including backflow prevention.

6.7.3 Operational monitoring

The airport authority has responsibility for safe drinking-water supply, including for operational monitoring, until water is transferred to the aircraft operator. The primary emphasis of monitoring is as a verification of management processes. Monitoring of control measures includes:

- quality of source water;
- hydrants, hoses and bowsers for cleanliness and repair;
- disinfectant residuals and pH;
- backflow preventers;
- filters; and
- microbial quality of water, particularly after maintenance or repairs.

6.7.4 Management

Even if potable water is supplied to the airport, it is necessary to introduce precautions to prevent contamination during the transfer of water to the aircraft and in the aircraft drinking-water system itself. Staff employed in drinking-water supply must not be engaged in activities related to aircraft toilet servicing without first taking all necessary precautions (e.g., thorough handwashing, change of outer garments).

All water servicing vehicles must be cleansed and disinfected frequently.

Supporting programmes that should be documented as part of a WSP for airports include:

- suitable training for crews dealing with water transfer and treatment; and
- effective certification of materials used on aircraft for storage tanks and pipes.

6.7.5 Surveillance

Independent surveillance resembles that described in chapter 5 and is an essential element in ensuring drinking-water safety in aviation. This implies:

- periodic audit and direct assessment;
- review and approval of WSPs;
- specific attention to the aircraft industry's codes of practice, the supporting document *Guide to Hygiene and Sanitation in Aviation* (section 1.3) and airport health or airline regulations; and
- responding, investigating and providing advice on receipt of report on significant incidents.

6.8 Ships

6.8.1 Health risks

The importance of water as a vehicle for infectious disease transmission on ships has been clearly documented. In general terms, the greatest microbial risks are associated with ingestion of water that is contaminated with human and animal excreta. Waterborne transmission of the enterotoxigenic *E. coli*, Norovirus, *Vibrio* spp., *Salmonella typhi*, *Salmonella* spp. (non-typhi), *Shigella* spp., *Cryptosporidium* spp., *Giardia lamblia* and *Legionella* spp. on ships has been confirmed (see Rooney et al., in press).

Chemical water poisoning can also occur on ships. For example, one outbreak of acute chemical poisoning implicated hydroquinone, an ingredient of photo developer, as the disease-causing agent in the ship's potable water supply. Chronic chemical poisoning on a ship could also occur if crew or passengers were exposed to small doses of harmful chemicals over long periods of time.

The supporting document *Guide to Ship Sanitation* (section 1.3) describes the factors that can be encountered during water treatment, transfer, production, storage or distribution in ships. This revised Guide includes description of specific features of the organization of the supply and the regulatory framework.

The organization of water supply systems covering shore facilities and ships differs considerably from conventional water transfer on land. Even though a port authority may receive potable water from a municipal or private supply, it usually has special arrangements for managing the water after it has entered the port. Water is delivered to ships by hoses or transferred to the ship via water boats or barges. Transfer of water from shore to ships can provide possibilities for microbial or chemical contamination.

In contrast to a shore facility, plumbing aboard ships consists of numerous piping systems, carrying potable water, seawater, sewage and fuel, fitted into a relatively confined space. Piping systems are normally extensive and complex, making them difficult to inspect, repair and maintain. A number of waterborne outbreaks on ships have been caused by contamination of potable water after it had been loaded onto the ship – for example, by sewage or bilge when the water storage systems were not adequately designed and constructed. During distribution, it may be difficult to prevent water quality deterioration due to stagnant water and dead ends.

Water distribution on ships may also provide greater opportunities for contamination to occur than onshore, because ship movement increases the possibility of surge and backflow.

6.8.2 System risk assessment

In undertaking an assessment of the ship's drinking-water system, a range of specific issues must be taken into consideration, including:

- quality of source water;
- water loading equipment;
- water loading techniques;
- design and construction of storage tanks and pipes;
- filtration systems and other treatment systems on board the ship;
- backflow prevention;
- pressure of water within the system;
- system design to minimize dead ends and areas of stagnation; and
- residual disinfection.

6.8.3 Operational monitoring

The ship's master is responsible for operational monitoring. The primary emphasis of monitoring is as a verification of management processes. Monitoring of control measures includes:

- quality of source water;
- hydrants and hoses for cleanliness and repair;
- disinfectant residuals and pH (e.g., daily);
- backflow prevention devices (e.g., monthly to yearly);
- filters (before and during each use); and
- microbial quality of treated water, particularly after maintenance or repairs.

The frequency of monitoring should reflect the probable rate of change in water quality. For example, monitoring of drinking-water on ships may be more frequent when the ship is new or recently commissioned, with frequencies decreasing in the light of review of results. Similarly, if the ship's water system has been out of control, monitoring following restoration of the system would be more frequent until it is verified that the system is clearly under control.

6.8.4 Management

The port authority has responsibility for providing safe potable water for loading onto vessels. The ship's master will not normally have direct control of pollution of water supplied at port. If water is suspected to have come from an unsafe source, the ship's master may have to decide if any additional treatment (e.g., hyperchlorination and/or filtration) is necessary. When treatment on board or prior to boarding is necessary, the treatment selected should be that which is best suited to the water and which is most easily operated and maintained by the ship's officers and crew.

During transfer from shore to ship and on board, water must be provided with sanitary safeguards through the shore distribution system, including connections to the ship system, and throughout the ship system, to prevent contamination of the water.

Potable water should be stored in one or more tanks that are constructed, located and protected so as to be safe against contamination. Potable water lines should be protected and located so that they will not be submerged in bilge water or pass through tanks storing non-potable liquids.

The ship's master should ensure that crew and passengers receive a sufficient and uninterrupted drinking-water supply and that contamination is not introduced in the distribution system. The distribution systems on ships are especially vulnerable to contamination when the pressure falls. Backflow prevention devices should be installed to prevent contamination of water where loss of pressure could result in backflow.

The potable water distribution lines should not be cross-connected with the piping or storage tanks of any non-potable water system.

Water safety is secured through repair and maintenance protocols, including the ability to contain potential contamination by valving and the cleanliness of personnel, their working practices and the materials employed.

Current practice on many ships is to use disinfectant residuals to control the growth of microorganisms in the distribution system. Residual disinfection alone should not be relied on to "treat" contaminated water, since the disinfection can be readily overwhelmed by contamination.

Supporting programmes that should be documented as part of the WSP for ships include:

- suitable training for crew dealing with water transfer and treatment; and
- effective certification of materials used on ships for storage tanks and pipes.

6.8.5 Surveillance

Independent surveillance is a desirable element in ensuring drinking-water safety on ships. This implies:

- periodic audit and direct assessment;
- review and approval of WSPs;
- specific attention to the shipping industry's codes of practice, the supporting document *Guide to Ship Sanitation* (section 1.3) and port health or shipping regulations; and
- responding, investigating and providing advice on receipt of report on significant incidents.

7
Microbial aspects

The greatest risk from microbes in water is associated with consumption of drinking-water that is contaminated with human and animal excreta, although other sources and routes of exposure may also be significant.

This chapter focuses on organisms for which there is evidence, from outbreak studies or from prospective studies in non-outbreak situations, of disease being caused by ingestion of drinking-water, inhalation of droplets or contact with drinking-water; and their control.

7.1 Microbial hazards associated with drinking-water

Infectious diseases caused by pathogenic bacteria, viruses and parasites (e.g., protozoa and helminths) are the most common and widespread health risk associated with drinking-water. The public health burden is determined by the severity of the illness(es) associated with pathogens, their infectivity and the population exposed.

Breakdown in water supply safety may lead to large-scale contamination and potentially to detectable disease outbreaks. Other breakdowns and low-level, potentially repeated contamination may lead to significant sporadic disease, but is unlikely to be associated with the drinking-water source by public health surveillance.

Quantified risk assessment can assist in understanding and managing risks, especially those associated with sporadic disease.

7.1.1 Waterborne infections

The pathogens that may be transmitted through contaminated drinking-water are diverse. Table 7.1 and Figure 7.1 provide general information on pathogens that are of relevance for drinking-water supply management. The spectrum changes in response to variables such as increases in human and animal populations, escalating use of wastewater, changes in lifestyles and medical interventions, population movement and travel and selective pressures for new pathogens and mutants or recombinations of existing pathogens. The immunity of individuals also varies considerably, whether acquired by contact with a pathogen or influenced by such factors as age, sex, state of health and living conditions.

Table 7.1 Waterborne pathogens and their significance in water supplies

Pathogen	Health significance	Persistence in water supplies[a]	Resistance to chlorine[b]	Relative infectivity[c]	Important animal source
Bacteria					
Burkholderia pseudomallei	Low	May multiply	Low	Low	No
Campylobacter jejuni, C. coli	High	Moderate	Low	Moderate	Yes
Escherichia coli – Pathogenic[d]	High	Moderate	Low	Low	Yes
E. coli – Enterohaemorrhagic	High	Moderate	Low	High	Yes
Legionella spp.	High	Multiply	Low	Moderate	No
Non-tuberculous mycobacteria	Low	Multiply	High	Low	No
Pseudomonas aeruginosa[e]	Moderate	May multiply	Moderate	Low	No
Salmonella typhi	High	Moderate	Low	Low	No
Other salmonellae	High	May multiply	Low	Low	Yes
Shigella spp.	High	Short	Low	Moderate	No
Vibrio cholerae	High	Short	Low	Low	No
Yersinia enterocolitica	High	Long	Low	Low	Yes
Viruses					
Adenoviruses	High	Long	Moderate	High	No
Enteroviruses	High	Long	Moderate	High	No
Hepatitis A virus	High	Long	Moderate	High	No
Hepatitis E virus	High	Long	Moderate	High	Potentially
Noroviruses and sapoviruses	High	Long	Moderate	High	Potentially
Rotaviruses	High	Long	Moderate	High	No
Protozoa					No
Acanthamoeba spp.	High	Long	High	High	No
Cryptosporidium parvum	High	Long	High	High	Yes
Cyclospora cayetanensis	High	Long	High	High	No
Entamoeba histolytica	High	Moderate	High	High	No
Giardia intestinalis	High	Moderate	High	High	Yes
Naegleria fowleri	High	May multiply[f]	High	High	No
Toxoplasma gondii	High	Long	High	High	Yes
Helminths					
Dracunculus medinensis	High	Moderate	Moderate	High	No
Schistosoma spp.	High	Short	Moderate	High	Yes

Note: Waterborne transmission of the pathogens listed has been confirmed by epidemiological studies and case histories. Part of the demonstration of pathogenicity involves reproducing the disease in suitable hosts. Experimental studies in which volunteers are exposed to known numbers of pathogens provide relative information. As most studies are done with healthy adult volunteers, such data are applicable to only a part of the exposed population, and extrapolation to more sensitive groups is an issue that remains to be studied in more detail.

[a] Detection period for infective stage in water at 20 °C: short, up to 1 week; moderate, 1 week to 1 month; long, over 1 month.

[b] When the infective stage is freely suspended in water treated at conventional doses and contact times. Resistance moderate, agent may not be completely destroyed.

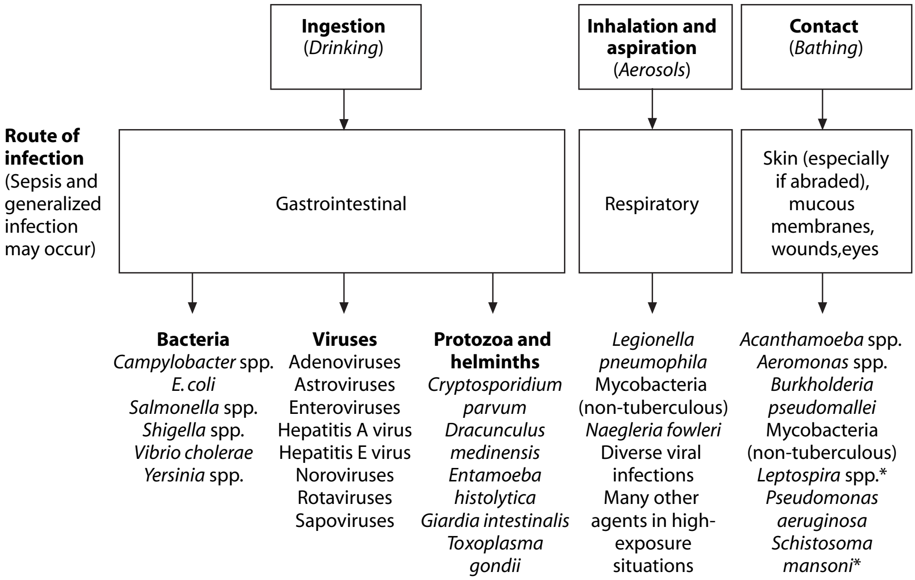
[c] From experiments with human volunteers or from epidemiological evidence.

[d] Includes enteropathogenic, enterotoxigenic and enteroinvasive.

[e] Main route of infection is by skin contact, but can infect immunosuppressed or cancer patients orally.

[f] In warm water.

For pathogens transmitted by the faecal–oral route, drinking-water is only one vehicle of transmission. Contamination of food, hands, utensils and clothing can also play a role, particularly when domestic sanitation and hygiene are poor. Improvements in the quality and availability of water, in excreta disposal and in general hygiene are all important in reducing faecal–oral disease transmission.



* Primarily from contact with highly contaminated surface waters.

Figure 7.1 Transmission pathways for and examples of water-related pathogens

Drinking-water safety is not related only to faecal contamination. Some organisms grow in piped water distribution systems (e.g., *Legionella*), whereas others occur in source waters (guinea worm *Dracunculus medinensis*) and may cause outbreaks and individual cases. Some other microbes (e.g., toxic cyanobacteria) require specific management approaches, which are covered elsewhere in these Guidelines (see section 11.5).

> Infectious diseases caused by pathogenic bacteria, viruses, protozoa and helminths are the most common and widespread health risk associated with drinking-water.

Certain serious illnesses result from inhalation of water droplets (aerosols) in which the causative organisms have multiplied because of warm temperatures and the presence of nutrients. These include legionellosis and Legionnaires' disease, caused by *Legionella* spp., and those caused by the amoebae *Naegleria fowleri* (primary amoebic meningoencephalitis [PAM]) and *Acanthamoeba* spp. (amoebic meningitis, pulmonary infections).

Schistosomiasis (bilharziasis) is a major parasitic disease of tropical and subtropical regions that is transmitted when the larval stage (cercariae), which is released by infected aquatic snails, penetrates the skin. It is primarily spread by contact with water. Ready availability of safe drinking-water contributes to disease prevention by reducing the need for contact with contaminated water resources – for example, when collecting water to carry to the home or when using water for bathing or laundry.

It is conceivable that unsafe drinking-water contaminated with soil or faeces could act as a carrier of other parasitic infections, such as balantidiasis (*Balantidium coli*) and certain helminths (species of *Fasciola*, *Fasciolopsis*, *Echinococcus*, *Spirometra*, *Ascaris*, *Trichuris*, *Toxocara*, *Necator*, *Ancylostoma* and *Strongyloides* and *Taenia solium*). However, in most of these, the normal mode of transmission is ingestion of the eggs in food contaminated with faeces or faecally contaminated soil (in the case of *Taenia solium*, ingestion of the larval cysticercus stage in uncooked pork) rather than ingestion of contaminated drinking-water.

Other pathogens that may be naturally present in the environment may be able to cause disease in people with impaired local or general immune defence mechanisms, such as the elderly or the very young, patients with burns or extensive wounds, those undergoing immunosuppressive therapy or those with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). If water used by such persons for drinking or bathing contains sufficient numbers of these organisms, they can produce various infections of the skin and the mucous membranes of the eye, ear, nose and throat. Examples of such agents are *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and species of *Flavobacterium*, *Acinetobacter*, *Klebsiella*, *Serratia*, *Aeromonas* and certain "slow-growing" (non-tuberculous) mycobacteria (see the supporting document *Pathogenic Mycobacteria in Water*; section 1.3).

Most of the human pathogens listed in Table 7.1 (which are described in more detail in chapter 11) are distributed worldwide; some, however, such as those causing outbreaks of cholera or guinea worm disease, are regional. Eradication of *D. medinensis* is a recognized target of the World Health Assembly (1991).

It is likely that there are pathogens not shown in Table 7.1 that are also transmitted by water. This is because the number of known pathogens for which water is a transmission route continues to increase as new or previously unrecognized pathogens continue to be discovered (see WHO, 2003a).

7.1.2 Persistence and growth in water

While typical waterborne pathogens are able to persist in drinking-water, most do not grow or proliferate in water. Microorganisms like *E. coli* and *Campylobacter* can accumulate in sediments and are mobilized when water flow increases.

After leaving the body of their host, most pathogens gradually lose viability and the ability to infect. The rate of decay is usually exponential, and a pathogen will become undetectable after a certain period. Pathogens with low persistence must rapidly find new hosts and are more likely to be spread by person-to-person contact or poor personal hygiene than by drinking-water. Persistence is affected by several factors, of which temperature is the most important. Decay is usually faster at higher temperatures and may be mediated by the lethal effects of UV radiation in sunlight acting near the water surface.

The most common waterborne pathogens and parasites are those that have high infectivity and either can proliferate in water or possess high resistance to decay outside the body.

Viruses and the resting stages of parasites (cysts, oocysts, ova) are unable to multiply in water. Conversely, relatively high amounts of biodegradable organic carbon, together with warm temperatures and low residual concentrations of chlorine, can permit growth of *Legionella*, *V. cholerae*, *Naegleria fowleri*, *Acanthamoeba* and nuisance organisms in some surface waters and during water distribution (see also the supporting document *Heterotrophic Plate Counts and Drinking-water Safety*; section 1.3).

Microbial water quality may vary rapidly and widely. Short-term peaks in pathogen concentration may increase disease risks considerably and may also trigger outbreaks of waterborne disease. Results of water quality testing for microbes are not normally available in time to inform management action and prevent the supply of unsafe water.

7.1.3 Public health aspects

Outbreaks of waterborne disease may affect large numbers of persons, and the first priority in developing and applying controls on drinking-water quality should be the control of such outbreaks. Available evidence also suggests that drinking-water can contribute to background rates of disease in non-outbreak situations, and control of drinking-water quality should therefore also address waterborne disease in the general community.

Experience has shown that systems for the detection of waterborne disease outbreaks are typically inefficient in countries at all levels of socioeconomic development, and failure to detect outbreaks is not a guarantee that they do not occur; nor does it suggest that drinking-water should necessarily be considered safe.

Some of the pathogens that are known to be transmitted through contaminated drinking-water lead to severe and sometimes life-threatening disease. Examples include typhoid, cholera, infectious hepatitis (caused by hepatitis A virus [HAV] or HEV) and disease caused by *Shigella* spp. and *E. coli* O157. Others are typically associated with less severe outcomes, such as self-limiting diarrhoeal disease (e.g., Norovirus, *Cryptosporidium*).

The effects of exposure to pathogens are not the same for all individuals or, as a consequence, for all populations. Repeated exposure to a pathogen may be associated with a lower probability or severity of illness because of the effects of acquired immunity. For some pathogens (e.g., HAV), immunity is lifelong, whereas for others (e.g., *Campylobacter*), the protective effects may be restricted to a few months to years. On the other hand, sensitive subgroups (e.g., the young, the elderly, pregnant women and the immunocompromised) in the population may have a greater probability of illness or the illness may be more severe, including mortality. Not all pathogens have greater effects in all sensitive subgroups.

Not all infected individuals will develop symptomatic disease. The proportion of the infected population that is asymptomatic (including carriers) differs between pathogens and also depends on population characteristics, such as prevalence of immunity. Carriers and those with asymptomatic infections as well as individuals developing symptoms may all contribute to secondary spread of pathogens.

7.2 Health-based target setting

7.2.1 Health-based targets applied to microbial hazards

General approaches to health-based target setting are described in section 2.1.1 and chapter 3.

Sources of information on health risks may be from both epidemiology and risk assessment, and typically both are employed as complementary sources.

Health-based targets may also be set using a health outcome approach, where the waterborne disease burden is believed to be sufficiently high to allow measurement of the impact of interventions – i.e., to measure reductions in disease that can be attributed to drinking-water.

Risk assessment is especially valuable where the fraction of disease that can be attributed to drinking-water is low or difficult to measure directly through public health surveillance or analytical epidemiological studies.

Data – from both epidemiology and risk assessment – with which to develop health-based targets for many pathogens are limited, but are increasingly being produced. Locally generated data will always be of great value in setting national targets.

For the control of microbial hazards, the most frequent form of health-based target applied is performance targets (see section 3.2.2), which are anchored to a tolerable burden of disease. WQTs (see section 3.2.3) are typically not developed for pathogens, because monitoring finished water for pathogens is not considered a feasible or cost-effective option.

7.2.2 Risk assessment approach

In many circumstances, estimating the effects of improved drinking-water quality on health risks in the population is possible through constructing and applying risk assessment models.

QMRA is a rapidly evolving field that systematically combines available information on exposure and dose–response to produce estimates of the disease burden associated with exposure to pathogens. Mathematical modelling is used to estimate the effects of low doses of pathogens in drinking-water on populations and subpopulations.

Interpreting and applying information from analytical epidemiological studies to derive health-based targets for application at a national or local level require consideration of a number of factors, including the following:

- Are specific estimates of disease reduction or indicative ranges of expected reductions to be provided?
- How representative of the target population was the study sample in order to ensure confidence in the reliability of the results across a wider group?

- To what extent will minor differences in demographic or socioeconomic conditions affect expected outcomes?

Risk assessment commences with problem formulation to identify all possible hazards and their pathways from source(s) to recipient(s). Human exposure to the pathogens (environmental concentrations and volumes ingested) and dose–responses of these selected organisms are then combined to characterize the risks. With the use of additional information (social, cultural, political, economic, environmental, etc.), management options can be prioritized. To encourage stakeholder support and participation, a transparent procedure and active risk communication at each stage of the process are important. An example of a risk assessment approach is described in Table 7.2 and outlined below.

Problem formulation and hazard identification

All potential hazards, sources and events that can lead to the presence of these hazards (i.e., what can happen and how) should be identified and documented for each component of the drinking-water system, regardless of whether or not the component is under the direct control of the drinking-water supplier. This includes point sources of pollution (e.g., human and industrial waste discharge) as well as diffuse sources (e.g., those arising from agricultural and animal husbandry activities). Continuous, intermittent or seasonal pollution patterns should also be considered, as well as extreme and infrequent events, such as droughts and floods.

The broader sense of hazards focuses on hazardous scenarios, which are events that may lead to exposure of consumers to specific pathogenic microorganisms. In this, the hazardous event (e.g., peak contamination of source water with domestic wastewater) may be referred to as the hazard.

Representative organisms are selected that, if controlled, would ensure control of all pathogens of concern. Typically, this implies inclusion of at least one bacterial pathogen, virus and protozoan.

Table 7.2 Risk assessment paradigm for pathogen health risks

Step	Aim
1. Problem formulation and hazard identification	To identify all possible hazards associated with drinking-water that would have an adverse public health consequence, as well as their pathways from source(s) to consumer(s)
2. Exposure assessment	To determine the size and nature of the population exposed and the route, amount and duration of the exposure
3. Dose–response assessment	To characterize the relationship between exposure and the incidence of the health effect
4. Risk characterization	To integrate the information from exposure, dose–response and health interventions in order to estimate the magnitude of the public health problem and to evaluate variability and uncertainty

Source: Adapted from Haas et al. (1999).

Exposure assessment

Exposure assessment involves estimation of the number of pathogenic microbes to which an individual is exposed, principally through ingestion. Exposure assessment is a predictive activity that often involves subjective judgement. It inevitably contains uncertainty and must account for variability of factors such as concentrations of microorganisms over time, volumes ingested, etc.

Exposure can be considered as a single dose of pathogens that a consumer ingests at a certain point of time or the total amount over several exposures (e.g., over a year). Exposure is determined by the concentration of microbes in drinking-water and the volume of water consumed.

It is rarely possible or appropriate to directly measure pathogens in drinking-water on a regular basis. More often, concentrations in source waters are assumed or measured, and estimated reductions – for example, through treatment – are applied to estimate the concentration in the water consumed. Pathogen measurement, when performed, is generally best carried out at the location where the pathogens are at highest concentration (generally source waters). Estimation of their removal by sequential control measures is generally achieved by the use of surrogates (such as *E. coli* for enteric bacterial pathogens) (see also the supporting document *Water Treatment and Pathogen Control*; section 1.3).

The other component of exposure assessment, which is common to all pathogens, is the volume of unboiled water consumed by the population, including person-to-person variation in consumption behaviour and especially consumption behaviour of at-risk groups. For microbial hazards, it is important that the unboiled volume of drinking-water, both consumed directly and used in food preparation, is used in the risk assessment, as heating will rapidly inactivate pathogens. This amount is lower than that used for deriving chemical guideline values and WQTs.

The daily exposure of a consumer can be assessed by multiplying the concentration of pathogens in drinking-water by the volume of drinking-water consumed. For the purposes of the Guidelines, unboiled drinking-water consumption is assumed to be 1 litre of water per day.

Dose–response assessment

The probability of an adverse health effect following exposure to one or more pathogenic organisms is derived from a dose–response model. Available dose–response data have been obtained mainly from studies using healthy adult volunteers. Several subgroups in the population, such as children, the elderly and immunocompromised persons, are more sensitive to infectious disease; currently, however, adequate data are lacking to account for this.

The conceptual basis for the infection model is the observation that exposure to the described dose leads to the probability of infection as a conditional event. For infection to occur, one or more viable pathogens must have been ingested. Furthermore, one or more of these ingested pathogens must have survived in the host's body.

An important concept is the single-hit principle (i.e., that even a single organism may be able to cause infection and disease, possibly with a low probability). This concept supersedes the concept of (minimum) infectious dose that is frequently used in older literature (see the supporting document *Hazard Characterization for Pathogens in Food and Water*; section 1.3).

In general, well dispersed pathogens in water are considered to be Poisson distributed. When the individual probability of any organism to survive and start infection is the same, the dose–response relation simplifies to an exponential function. If, however, there is heterogeneity in this individual probability, this leads to the beta-Poisson dose–response relation, where the "beta" stands for the distribution of the individual probabilities among pathogens (and hosts). At low exposures, such as would typically occur in drinking-water, the dose–response model is approximately linear and can be represented simply as the probability of infection resulting from exposure to a single organism (see the supporting document *Hazard Characterization for Pathogens in Food and Water*; section 1.3).

Risk characterization

Risk characterization brings together the data collected on pathogen exposure, dose–response, severity and disease burden.

The probability of infection can be estimated as the product of the exposure by drinking-water and the probability that exposure to one organism would result in infection. The probability of infection per day is multiplied by 365 to calculate the probability of infection per year. In doing so, it is assumed that different exposure events are independent, in that no protective immunity is built up. This simplification is justified for low risks only.

Not all infected individuals will develop clinical illness; asymptomatic infection is common for most pathogens. The percentage of infected persons that will develop clinical illness depends on the pathogen, but also on other factors, such as the immune status of the host. Risk of illness per year is obtained by multiplying the probability of infection by the probability of illness given infection.

The low numbers in Table 7.3 can be interpreted to represent the probability that a single individual will develop illness in a given year. For example, a risk of illness for *Campylobacter* of 2.5×10^{-4} per year indicates that, on average, 1 out of 4000 consumers would contract campylobacteriosis from drinking-water.

To translate the risk of developing a specific illness to disease burden per case, the metric DALYs is used. This should reflect not only the effects of acute end-points (e.g., diarrhoeal illness) but also mortality and the effects of more serious end-points (e.g., Guillain-Barré syndrome associated with *Campylobacter*). Disease burden per case varies widely. For example, the disease burden per 1000 cases of rotavirus diarrhoea is 480 DALYs in low-income regions, where child mortality frequently occurs. However, it is only 14 DALYs per 1000 cases in high-income regions, where hospital facilities are accessible to the great majority of the population (see the supporting document *Quantifying Public Health Risk in the WHO Guidelines for Drinking-water*

Table 7.3 Linking tolerable disease burden and source water quality for reference pathogens: example calculation

River water (human and animal pollution)		***Cryptosporidium***	***Campylobacter***	**Rotavirus**[a]
Raw water quality (C_R)	Organisms per litre	10	100	10
Treatment effect needed to reach tolerable risk (PT)	*Percent reduction*	*99.994%*	*99.99987%*	*99.99968%*
Drinking-water quality (C_D)	Organisms per litre	6.3×10^{-4}	1.3×10^{-4}	3.2×10^{-5}
Consumption of unheated drinking-water (V)	Litres per day	1	1	1
Exposure by drinking-water (E)	Organisms per day	6.3×10^{-4}	1.3×10^{-4}	3.2×10^{-5}
Dose–response (r)	Probability of infection per organism	4.0×10^{-3}	1.8×10^{-2}	2.7×10^{-1}
Risk of infection ($P_{inf,d}$)	Per day	2.5×10^{-6}	2.3×10^{-6}	8.5×10^{-6}
Risk of infection ($P_{inf,y}$)	Per year	9.2×10^{-4}	8.3×10^{-4}	3.1×10^{-3}
Risk of (diarrhoeal) illness given infection ($P_{ill\|inf}$)		0.7	0.3	0.5
Risk of (diarrhoeal) illness (P_{ill})	Per year	6.4×10^{-4}	2.5×10^{-4}	1.6×10^{-3}
Disease burden (db)	DALYs per case	1.5×10^{-3}	4.6×10^{-3}	1.4×10^{-2}
Susceptible fraction (f_s)	Percentage of population	100%	100%	6%
Disease burden (DB)	DALYs per year	1×10^{-6}	1×10^{-6}	1×10^{-6}
Formulas:	$C_D = C_R \times (1 - PT)$ $E = C_D \times V$ $P_{inf,d} = E \times r$			

[a] Data from high-income regions. In low-income regions, severity is typically higher, but drinking-water transmission is unlikely to dominate.

Quality; section 1.3). This considerable difference in disease burden results in far stricter treatment requirements in low-income regions for the same source water quality in order to obtain the same risk (expressed as DALYs per year). Ideally, the default disease burden estimates in Table 7.3 should be adapted to specific national situations. In Table 7.3, no accounting is made for effects on immunocompromised persons (e.g., cryptosporidiosis in HIV/AIDS patients), which is significant in some countries. Section 3.3.3 gives more information on the DALY metric and how it is applied to derive a reference level of risk.

Only a proportion of the population may be susceptible to some pathogens, because immunity developed after an initial episode of infection or illness may provide lifelong protection. Examples include HAV and rotaviruses. It is estimated that in developing countries, all children above the age of 5 years are immune to rotaviruses because of repeated exposure in the first years of life. This translates to an average of 17% of the population being susceptible to rotavirus illness. In developed countries, rotavirus infection is also common in the first years of life, and the illness is diagnosed mainly in young children, but the percentage of young children as part of the total population is lower. This translates to an average of 6% of the population in developed countries being susceptible.

The uncertainty of the risk estimate is the result of the uncertainty and variability of the data collected in the various steps of the risk assessment. Risk assessment models should ideally account for this variability and uncertainty, although here we present only point estimates (see below).

It is important to choose the most appropriate point estimate for each of the variables. Theoretical considerations show that risks are directly proportional to the arithmetic mean of the ingested dose. Hence, arithmetic means of variables such as concentration in raw water, removal by treatment and consumption of drinking-water are recommended. This recommendation is different from the usual practice among microbiologists and engineers of converting concentrations and treatment effects to log-values and making calculations or specifications on the log-scale. Such calculations result in estimates of the geometric mean rather than the arithmetic mean, and these may significantly underestimate risk. Analysing site-specific data may therefore require going back to the raw data rather than relying on reported log-transformed values.

7.2.3 Risk-based performance target setting

The process outlined above enables estimation of risk on a population level, taking account of source water quality and impact of control. This can be compared with the reference level of risk (see section 3.3.2) or a locally developed tolerable risk. The calculations enable quantification of the degree of source protection or treatment that is needed to achieve a specified level of acceptable risk and analysis of the estimated impact of changes in control measures.

Performance targets are most frequently applied to treatment performance – i.e., to determine the microbial reduction necessary to ensure water safety. A performance target may be applied to a specific system (i.e., allow account to be taken of specific source water characteristics) or generalized (e.g., impose source water quality assumptions on all systems of a certain type or abstracting water from a certain type of source) (see also the supporting document *Water Treatment and Pathogen Control*; section 1.3).

Figure 7.2 illustrates the targets for treatment performance for a range of pathogens occurring in the raw water. For example, 10 microorganisms per litre of source water will lead to a performance target of 4.2 logs (or 99.994%) for *Cryptosporidium* or of 5.5 logs (99.99968%) for rotavirus in high-income regions (see also Table 7.4 below). The difference in performance targets for rotavirus in high- and low-income countries (5.5 and 7.6 logs; Figure 7.2) is related to the difference in disease severity by this organism. In low-income countries, the child case fatality rate is relatively high, and, as a consequence, the disease burden is higher. Also, a larger proportion of the

Figure 7.2 Performance targets for selected bacterial, viral and protozoan pathogens in relation to raw water quality (to achieve 10^{-6} DALYs per person per year)

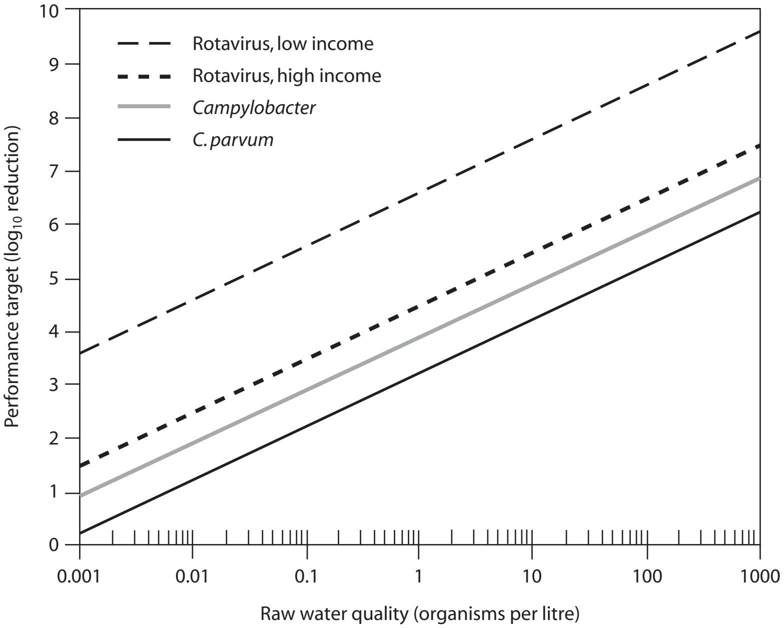


Table 7.4 Health-based targets derived from example calculation in Table 7.3

	Cryptosporidium	***Campylobacter***	**Rotavirus**[a]
Organisms per litre in source water	10	100	10
Health outcome target	10^{-6} DALYs per person per year	10^{-6} DALYs per person per year	10^{-6} DALYs per person per year
Risk of diarrhoeal illness[b]	1 per 1600 per year	1 per 4000 per year	1 per 11 000 per year
Drinking-water quality	1 per 1600 litres	1 per 8000 litres	1 per 32 000 litres
Performance target[c]	4.2 $\log_{10}$ units	5.9 $\log_{10}$ units	5.5 $\log_{10}$ units

[a] Data from high-income regions. In low-income regions, severity is typically higher, but drinking-water transmission is unlikely to dominate.

[b] For the susceptible population.

[c] Performance target is a measure of log reduction of pathogens based on source water quality.

population in low-income countries is under the age of 5 and at risk for rotavirus infection.

The derivation of these performance targets is described in Table 7.4, which provides an example of the data and calculations that would normally be used to construct a risk assessment model for waterborne pathogens. The table presents data for representatives of the three major groups of pathogens (bacteria, viruses and protozoa) from a range of sources. These example calculations aim at achieving the reference level of risk of 10^{-6} DALYs per person per year, as described in section 3.3.3. The data in the table illustrate the calculations needed to arrive at a risk estimate and are not guideline values.

7.2.4 Presenting the outcome of performance target development

Table 7.4 presents some data from Table 7.3 in a format that is more meaningful to risk managers. The average concentration of pathogens in drinking-water is included for information. It is not a WQT, nor is it intended to encourage pathogen monitoring in finished water. As an example, a concentration of 6.3×10^{-4} *Cryptosporidium* per litre (see Table 7.3) corresponds to 1 oocyst per 1600 litres (see Table 7.4). The performance target (in the row "Treatment effect" in Table 7.3), expressed as a percent reduction, is the most important management information in the risk assessment table. It can also be expressed as a log-reduction value. For example, 99.99968% reduction for rotavirus corresponds to 5.5 $\log_{10}$ units.

7.2.5 Issues in adapting risk-based performance target setting to national/local circumstances

The choice of pathogens in Table 7.4 was based mainly on availability of data on resistance to water treatment, infectivity and disease burden. The pathogens illustrated may not be priority pathogens in all regions of the world, although amending pathogen selection would normally have a small impact on the overall conclusions derived from applying the model.

Wherever possible, country- or site-specific information should be used in assessments of this type. If no specific data are available, an approximate risk estimate can be based on default values (see Table 7.5 below).

Table 7.4 accounts only for changes in water quality derived from treatment and not source protection measures, which are often important contributors to overall safety, impacting on pathogen concentration and/or variability. The risk estimates presented in Table 7.3 also assume that there is no degradation of water quality in the distribution network. These may not be realistic assumptions under all circumstances, and it is advisable to take these factors into account wherever possible.

Table 7.4 presents point estimates only and does not account for variability and uncertainty. Full risk assessment models would incorporate such factors by representing the input variables by statistical distributions rather than by point estimates. However, such models are currently beyond the means of many countries, and data to define such distributions are scarce. Producing such data may involve considerable efforts in terms of time and resources, but will lead to much improved insight into the actual source water quality and treatment performance.

The necessary degree of treatment also depends on the values assumed for variables (e.g., drinking-water consumption, fraction of the population that is susceptible) that can be taken into account in the risk assessment model. Figure 7.3 shows the effect of variation in the consumption of unboiled drinking-water on the performance targets for *Cryptosporidium parvum*. For example, if the raw water concentration

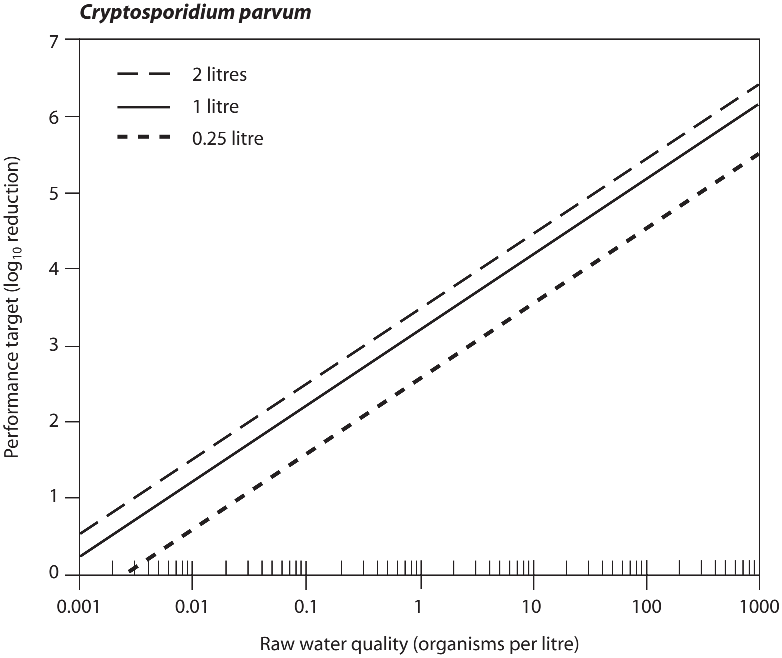


Figure 7.3 Performance targets for *Cryptosporidium parvum* in relation to the daily consumption of unboiled drinking-water (to achieve 10^{-6} DALYs per person per year)

is 1 oocyst per litre, the performance target varies between 2.6 and 3.5 $\log_{10}$ units if consumption values vary between 0.25 and 2 litres per day. Some outbreak data suggest that in developed countries, a significant proportion of the population above 5 years of age may not be immune to rotavirus illness. Figure 7.4 shows the effect of variation in the susceptible fraction of the population. For example, if the raw water concentration is 10 virus particles per litre, the performance target increases from 5.5 to 6.7 if the susceptible fraction increases from 6 to 100%.

7.2.6 Health outcome targets

Health outcome targets that identify disease reductions in a community may be applied to the WSPs developed for specified water quality interventions at community and household levels. These targets would identify expected disease reductions in communities receiving the interventions.

The prioritization of water quality interventions should focus on those aspects that are estimated to contribute more than, for example, 5% of the burden of a given disease (e.g., 5% of total diarrhoea). In many parts of the world, the implementation of a water quality intervention that results in an estimated health gain of more than

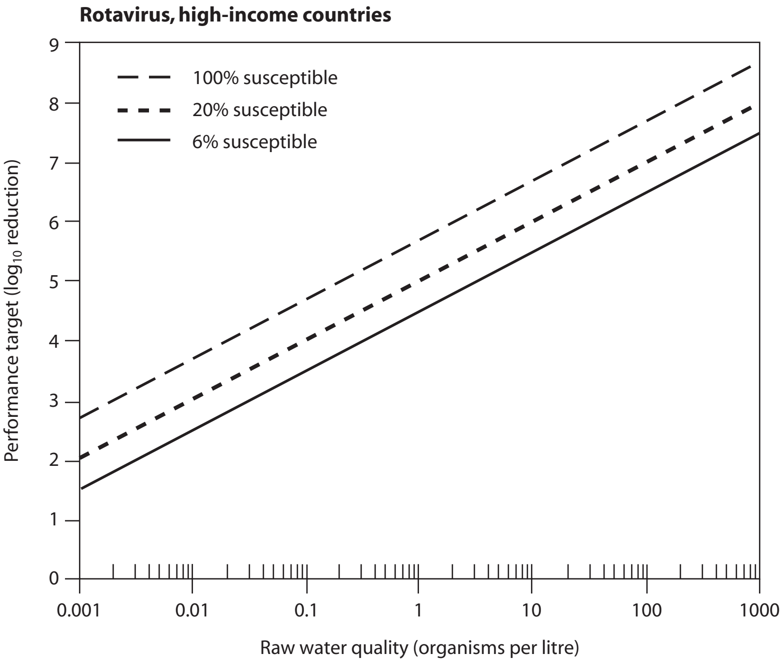


Figure 7.4 Performance targets for rotavirus in relation to the fraction of the population that is susceptible to illness (to achieve 10^{-6} DALYs per person per year)

5% would be considered extremely worthwhile. Directly demonstrating the health gains arising from improving water quality – as assessed, for example, by reduced *E. coli* counts at the point of consumption – may be possible where disease burden is high and effective interventions are applied and can be a powerful tool to demonstrate a first step in incremental water safety improvement.

Where a specified quantified disease reduction is identified as a health outcome target, it may be advisable to undertake ongoing proactive public health surveillance among representative communities rather than through passive surveillance.

7.3 Occurrence and treatment of pathogens

As discussed in section 4.1, system assessment involves determining whether the drinking-water supply chain as a whole can deliver drinking-water quality that meets identified targets. This requires an understanding of the quality of source water and the efficacy of control measures.

An understanding of pathogen occurrence in source waters is essential, because it facilitates selection of the highest-quality source for drinking-water supply, determines pathogen loads and concentrations in source waters and provides a basis for establishing treatment requirements to meet health-based targets within a WSP.

Understanding the efficacy of control measures includes validation (see sections 2.1.2 and 4.1.7). Validation is important both in ensuring that treatment will achieve the desired goals (performance targets) and in assessing areas in which efficacy may be improved (e.g., by comparing performance achieved with that shown to be achievable through well run processes).

7.3.1 Occurrence

The occurrence of pathogens and indicator organisms in groundwater and surface water sources depends on a number of factors, including intrinsic physical and chemical characteristics of the catchment area and the magnitude and range of human activities and animal sources that release pathogens to the environment.

In surface waters, potential pathogen sources include point sources, such as municipal sewerage and urban stormwater overflows, as well as non-point sources, such as contaminated runoff from agricultural areas and areas with sanitation through on-site septic systems and latrines. Other sources are wildlife and direct access of livestock to surface water bodies. Many pathogens in surface water bodies will reduce in concentration due to dilution, settling and die-off due to environmental effects (thermal, sunlight, predation, etc.).

Groundwater is often less vulnerable to the immediate influence of contamination sources due to the barrier effects provided by the overlying soil and its unsaturated zone. Groundwater contamination is more frequent where these protective barriers are breached, allowing direct contamination. This may occur through contaminated or abandoned wells or underground pollution sources, such as latrines and sewer lines. However, a number of studies have demonstrated pathogens and indicator organisms in groundwater, even at depth in the absence of such hazardous circumstances, especially where surface contamination is intense, as with land application of manures or other faecal impacts from intensive animal husbandry (e.g., feedlots). Impacts of these contamination sources can be greatly reduced by, for example, aquifer protection measures and proper well design and construction.

For more detailed discussion on both pathogen sources and key factors determining their fate, refer to the supporting documents *Protecting Surface Waters for Health* and *Protecting Groundwaters for Health* (section 1.3).

Table 7.5 presents estimates of high concentrations of enteric pathogens and microbial indicators in different types of surface waters and groundwaters, derived primarily from a review of published data. High values have been presented because they represent higher-risk situations and, therefore, greater degrees of vulnerability. The table includes two categories of data for rivers and streams: one for impacted sources and one for less impacted sources. More detailed information about these data is published in a variety of references, including several papers cited in Dangendorf et al. (2003).

The data in Table 7.5 provide a useful guide to the concentrations of enteric pathogens and indicator microorganisms in a variety of sources. However, there are a number of limitations and sources of uncertainty in these data, including:

Table 7.5 Examples of high detectable concentrations (per litre) of enteric pathogens and faecal indicators in different types of source waters from the scientific literature

Pathogen or indicator group	Lakes and reservoirs	Impacted rivers and streams	Wilderness rivers and streams	Groundwater
Campylobacter	20–500	90–2500	0–1100	0–10
Salmonella	—	3–58 000 (3–1000)[a]	1–4	—
E. coli (generic)	10 000–1 000 000	30 000–1 000 000	6000–30 000	0–1000
Viruses	1–10	30–60	0–3	0–2
Cryptosporidium	4–290	2–480	2–240	0–1
Giardia	2–30	1–470	1–2	0–1

[a] Lower range is a more recent measurement.

- the lack of knowledge on sampling locations in relation to pollution sources;
- concerns about the sensitivity of analytical techniques, particularly for viruses and protozoa; and
- the lack of knowledge about the viability and human infectivity of *Cryptosporidium* oocysts, *Giardia* cysts and viruses detected in the different studies, because the various methods used are based upon non-culture methods (e.g., microscopy or molecular/nucleic acid analysis).

While the table provides an indication of concentrations that might be present in water sources, by far the most accurate way of determining pathogen loads and concentrations in specific catchments and other water sources is by analysing water quality over a period of time, taking care to include consideration of seasonal variation and peak events such as storms. Direct measurement of pathogens and indicators in the specific source waters for which a WSP and its target pathogens are being established is recommended wherever possible, because this provides the best estimates of microbial concentrations and loads.

7.3.2 Treatment

Waters of very high quality – for example, groundwater from confined aquifers – may rely on source water and distribution system protection as the principal control measures for provision of safe water. More typically, water treatment is required to remove or destroy pathogenic microorganisms. In many cases (e.g., poor-quality surface water), multiple treatment stages are required, including, for example, coagulation, flocculation, sedimentation, filtration and disinfection. Table 7.6 provides a summary of treatment processes that are commonly used individually or in combination to achieve microbial reductions.

The microbial reductions presented in Table 7.6 are for broad groups or categories of microbes: bacteria, viruses and protozoa. This is because it is generally the case that treatment efficacy for microbial reduction differs among these microbial groups due to the inherently different properties of the microbes (e.g., size, nature of protective outer layers, physicochemical surface properties, etc.). Within these microbial groups,

Table 7.6 Reductions of bacteria, viruses and protozoa achieved by typical and enhanced water treatment processes

Treatment process	Enteric pathogen group	Baseline removal	Maximum removal possible
Pretreatment			
Roughing filters	Bacteria	50%	Up to 95% if protected from turbidity spikes by dynamic filter or if used only when ripened
	Viruses	No data available	
	Protozoa	No data available, some removal likely	Performance for protozoan removal likely to correspond to turbidity removal
Microstraining	Bacteria, viruses, protozoa	Zero	Generally ineffective
Off-stream/ bankside storage	All	Recontamination may be significant and add to pollution levels in incoming water; growth of algae may cause deterioration in quality	Avoiding intake at periods of peak turbidity equivalent to 90% removal; compartmentalized storages provide 15–230 times rates of removal
	Bacteria	Zero (assumes short circuiting)	90% removal in 10–40 days actual detention time
	Viruses	Zero (assumes short circuiting)	93% removal in 100 days actual detention time
	Protozoa	Zero (assumes short circuiting)	99% removal in 3 weeks actual detention time
Bankside infiltration	Bacteria	99.9% after 2 m 99.99% after 4 m (minimum based on virus removal)	
	Viruses	99.9% after 2 m 99.99% after 4 m	
	Protozoa	99.99%	
Coagulation/flocculation/sedimentation			
Conventional clarification	Bacteria	30%	90% (depending on the coagulant, pH, temperature, alkalinity, turbidity)
	Viruses	30%	70% (as above)
	Protozoa	30%	90% (as above)
High-rate clarification	Bacteria	At least 30%	
	Viruses	At least 30%	
	Protozoa	95%	99.99% (depending on use of appropriate blanket polymer)
Dissolved air flotation	Bacteria	No data available	
	Viruses	No data available	
	Protozoa	95%	99.9% (depending on pH, coagulant dose, flocculation time, recycle ratio)

Table 7.6 ***Continued***

Treatment process	**Enteric pathogen group**	**Baseline removal**	**Maximum removal possible**
Lime softening	Bacteria	20% at pH 9.5 for 6 h at 2–8 °C	99% at pH 11.5 for 6 h at 2–8 °C
	Viruses	90% at pH < 11 for 6 h	99.99% at pH > 11, depending on the virus and on settling time
	Protozoa	Low inactivation	99% through precipitative sedimentation and inactivation at pH 11.5
Ion exchange			
	Bacteria	Zero	
	Viruses	Zero	
	Protozoa	Zero	
Filtration			
Granular high-rate filtration	Bacteria	No data available	99% under optimum coagulation conditions
	Viruses	No data available	99.9% under optimum coagulation conditions
	Protozoa	70%	99.9% under optimum coagulation conditions
Slow sand filtration	Bacteria	50%	99.5% under optimum ripening, cleaning and refilling and in the absence of short circuiting
	Viruses	20%	99.99% under optimum ripening, cleaning and refilling and in the absence of short circuiting
	Protozoa	50%	99% under optimum ripening, cleaning and refilling and in the absence of short circuiting
Precoat filtration, including diatomaceous earth and perlite	Bacteria	30–50%	96–99.9% using chemical pretreatment with coagulants or polymers
	Viruses	90%	98% using chemical pretreatment with coagulants or polymers
	Protozoa	99.9%	99.99%, depending on media grade and filtration rate
Membrane filtration – microfiltration	Bacteria	99.9–99.99%, providing adequate pretreatment and membrane integrity conserved	
	Viruses	<90%	
	Protozoa	99.9–99.99%, providing adequate pretreatment and membrane integrity conserved	
Membrane filtration – ultrafiltration,	Bacteria	Complete removal, providing adequate pretreatment and membrane integrity conserved	

continued

Table 7.6 ***Continued***

Treatment process	Enteric pathogen group	Baseline removal	Maximum removal possible
nanofiltration and reverse osmosis	Viruses	Complete removal with nanofilters, with reverse osmosis and at lower pore sizes of ultrafilters, providing adequate pretreatment and membrane integrity conserved	
	Protozoa	Complete removal, providing adequate pretreatment and membrane integrity conserved	
Disinfection			
Chlorine	Bacteria	Ct_{99}: 0.08 mg·min/litre at 1–2 °C, pH 7; 3.3 mg·min/litre at 1–2 °C, pH 8.5	
	Viruses	Ct_{99}: 12 mg·min/litre at 0–5 °C; 8 mg·min/litre at 10 °C; both at pH 7–7.5	
	Protozoa	*Giardia* Ct_{99}: 230 mg·min/litre at 0.5 °C; 100 mg·min/litre at 10 °C; 41 mg·min/litre at 25 °C; all at pH 7–7.5 *Cryptosporidium* not killed	
Monochloramine	Bacteria	Ct_{99}: 94 mg·min/litre at 1–2 °C, pH 7; 278 mg·min/litre at 1–2 °C, pH 8.5	
	Viruses	Ct_{99}: 1240 mg·min/litre at 1 °C; 430 mg·min/litre at 15 °C; both at pH 6–9	
	Protozoa	*Giardia* Ct_{99}: 2550 mg·min/litre at 1 °C; 1000 mg·min/litre at 15 °C; both at pH 6–9 *Cryptosporidium* not inactivated	
Chlorine dioxide	Bacteria	Ct_{99}: 0.13 mg·min/litre at 1–2 °C, pH 7; 0.19 mg·min/litre at 1–2 °C, pH 8.5	
	Viruses	Ct_{99}: 8.4 mg·min/litre at 1 °C; 2.8 mg·min/litre at 15 °C; both at pH 6–9	
	Protozoa	*Giardia* Ct_{99}: 42 mg·min/litre at 1 °C; 15 mg·min/litre at 10 °C; 7.3 mg·min/litre at 25 °C; all at pH 6–9 *Cryptosporidium* Ct_{99}: 40 mg·min/litre at 22 °C, pH 8	

Table 7.6 ***Continued***

Treatment process	Enteric pathogen group	Baseline removal	Maximum removal possible
Ozone	Bacteria	Ct_{99}: 0.02 mg·min/litre at 5 °C, pH 6–7	
	Viruses	Ct_{99}: 0.9 mg·min/litre at 1 °C, 0.3 mg·min/litre at 15 °C	
	Protozoa	*Giardia* Ct_{99}: 1.9 mg·min/litre at 1 °C; 0.63 mg·min/litre at 15 °C, pH 6–9 *Cryptosporidium* Ct_{99}: 40 mg·min/litre at 1 °C; 4.4 mg·min/litre at 22 °C	
UV irradiation	Bacteria	99% inactivation: 7 mJ/cm^2	
	Viruses	99% inactivation: 59 mJ/cm^2	
	Protozoa	*Giardia* 99% inactivation: 5 mJ/cm^2 *Cryptosporidium* 99.9% inactivation: 10 mJ/cm^2	

Note: Ct and UV apply to microorganisms in suspension, not embedded in particles or in biofilm.

differences in treatment process efficiencies are smaller among the specific species, types or strains of microbes. Such differences do occur, however, and the table presents conservative estimates of microbial reductions based on the more resistant or persistent pathogenic members of that microbial group. Where differences in removal by treatment between specific members of a microbial group are great, the results for the individual microbes are presented separately in the table.

Non-piped water supplies such as roof catchments (rainwater harvesting) and water collected from wells or springs may often be contaminated with pathogens. Such sources often require treatment and protected storage to achieve safe water. Many of the processes used for water treatment in households are the same as those used for community-managed and other piped water supplies (Table 7.6). The performance of these treatment processes at the household level is likely to be similar to that for baseline removal of microbes, as shown in Table 7.6. However, there are additional water treatment technologies recommended for use in non-piped water supplies at the household level that typically are not used for piped supplies.

Further information about these water treatment processes, their operations and their performance for pathogen reduction is provided in more detail in supporting documents (for piped water supplies: *Water Treatment and Pathogen Control*; for non-piped [primarily household] water supplies: *Managing Water in the Home*; see section 1.3).

7.4 Verification of microbial safety and quality

Pathogenic agents have several properties that distinguish them from other drinking-water contaminants:

- Pathogens are discrete and not in solution.
- Pathogens are often clumped or adherent to suspended solids in water.
- The likelihood of a successful challenge by a pathogen, resulting in infection, depends upon the invasiveness and virulence of the pathogen, as well as upon the immunity of the individual.
- If infection is established, pathogens multiply in their host. Certain pathogenic bacteria are also able to multiply in food or beverages, thereby perpetuating or even increasing the chances of infection.
- Unlike many chemical agents, the dose–response of pathogens is not cumulative.

Faecal indicator bacteria, including *E. coli*, are important parameters for verification of microbial quality (see also section 2.2.1). Such water quality verification complements operational monitoring and assessments of contamination risks – for instance, through auditing of treatment works, evaluation of process control and sanitary inspection.

Faecal indicator bacteria should fulfil certain criteria to give meaningful results. They should be universally present in high numbers in the faeces of humans and other warm-blooded animals, should be readily detectable by simple methods and should not grow in natural water.

The indicator organism of choice for faecal pollution is *E. coli*. Thermotolerant coliforms can be used as an alternative to the test for *E. coli* in many circumstances.

Water intended for human consumption should contain no indicator organisms. In the majority of cases, monitoring for indicator bacteria provides a high degree of safety because of their large numbers in polluted waters.

Pathogens more resistant to conventional environmental conditions or treatment technologies may be present in treated drinking-water in the absence of *E. coli*. Retrospective studies of waterborne disease outbreaks and advances in the understanding of the behaviour of pathogens in water have shown that continued reliance on assumptions surrounding the absence or presence of *E. coli* does not ensure that optimal decisions are made regarding water safety.

Protozoa and some enteroviruses are more resistant to many disinfectants, including chlorine, and may remain viable (and pathogenic) in drinking-water following disinfection. Other organisms may be more appropriate indicators of persistent microbial hazards, and their selection as additional indicators should be evaluated in relation to local circumstances and scientific understanding. Therefore, verification may require analysis of a range of organisms, such as intestinal enterococci, (spores of) *Clostridium perfringens* and bacteriophages.

Table 7.7 presents guideline values for verification of microbial quality of drinking-water. Individual values should not be used directly from the tables. The

Table 7.7 Guideline values for verification of microbial quality[a] (see also Table 5.2)

Organisms	Guideline value
All water directly intended for drinking	
E. coli or thermotolerant coliform bacteria[b,c]	Must not be detectable in any 100-ml sample
Treated water entering the distribution system	
E. coli or thermotolerant coliform bacteria[b]	Must not be detectable in any 100-ml sample
Treated water in the distribution system	
E. coli or thermotolerant coliform bacteria[b]	Must not be detectable in any 100-ml sample

[a] Immediate investigative action must be taken if *E. coli* are detected.

[b] Although *E. coli* is the more precise indicator of faecal pollution, the count of thermotolerant coliform bacteria is an acceptable alternative. If necessary, proper confirmatory tests must be carried out. Total coliform bacteria are not acceptable indicators of the sanitary quality of water supplies, particularly in tropical areas, where many bacteria of no sanitary significance occur in almost all untreated supplies.

[c] It is recognized that in the great majority of rural water supplies, especially in developing countries, faecal contamination is widespread. Especially under these conditions, medium-term targets for the progressive improvement of water supplies should be set.

guidelines values should be used and interpreted in conjunction with the information contained in these Guidelines and other supporting documentation.

A consequence of variable susceptibility to pathogens is that exposure to drinking-water of a particular quality may lead to different health effects in different populations. For guideline derivation, it is necessary to define reference populations or, in some cases, to focus on specific sensitive subgroups. National or local authorities may wish to apply specific characteristics of their populations in deriving national standards.

7.5 Methods of detection of faecal indicator bacteria

Analysis for faecal indicator bacteria provides a sensitive, although not the most rapid, indication of pollution of drinking-water supplies. Because the growth medium and the conditions of incubation, as well as the nature and age of the water sample, can influence the species isolated and the count, microbiological examinations may have variable accuracy. This means that the standardization of methods and of laboratory procedures is of great importance if criteria for the microbial quality of water are to be uniform in different laboratories and internationally.

International standard methods should be evaluated under local circumstances before being adopted. Established standard methods are available, such as those of the ISO (Table 7.8) or methods of equivalent efficacy and reliability. It is desirable that established standard methods be used for routine examinations. Whatever method is chosen for detection of *E. coli* or thermotolerant coliforms, the importance of "resuscitating" or recovering environmentally damaged or disinfectant-damaged strains must be considered.

Table 7.8 International Organization for Standardization (ISO) standards for detection and enumeration of faecal indicator bacteria in water

ISO standard	Title (water quality)
6461-1:1986	Detection and enumeration of the spores of sulfite-reducing anaerobes (clostridia) — Part 1: Method by enrichment in a liquid medium
6461-2:1986	Detection and enumeration of the spores of sulfite-reducing anaerobes (clostridia) — Part 2: Method by membrane filtration
7704:1985	Evaluation of membrane filters used for microbiological analyses
7899-1:1984	Detection and enumeration of faecal streptococci – Part 1: Method by enrichment in a liquid medium
7899-2:1984	Detection and enumeration of faecal streptococci – Part 2: Method by membrane filtration
9308-1:1990	Detection and enumeration of coliform organisms, thermotolerant coliform organisms and presumptive *Escherichia coli* – Part 1: Membrane filtration method
9308-2:1990	Detection and enumeration of coliform organisms, thermotolerant coliform organisms and presumptive *Escherichia coli* – Part 2: Multiple tube (most probable number) method

7.6 Identifying local actions in response to microbial water quality problems and emergencies

During an emergency in which there is evidence of faecal contamination of the drinking-water supply, it may be necessary either to modify the treatment of existing sources or to temporarily use alternative sources of drinking-water. It may be necessary to increase disinfection at source, following treatment or during distribution.

If microbial quality cannot be maintained, it may be necessary to advise consumers to boil the water during the emergency (see section 7.6.1). Initiating superchlorination and undertaking immediate corrective measures may be preferable where the speed of response is sufficient to prevent significant quantities of contaminated water reaching consumers.

During outbreaks of potentially waterborne disease or when faecal contamination of a drinking-water supply is detected, the concentration of free chlorine should be increased to greater than 0.5 mg/litre throughout the system as a minimum immediate response. It is most important that decisions are taken in consultation with public health authorities and, where appropriate, civil authorities (see also section 8.6).

7.6.1 Boil water and water avoidance advisories

Water suppliers in conjunction with public health authorities should develop protocols for boil water orders and water avoidance advisories. Protocols should be prepared prior to the occurrence of incidents and incorporated within management plans. Decisions to issue advisories are often made within a short period of time, and developing responses during an event can complicate decision-making, compromise communication and undermine public confidence.

In addition to the information discussed in section 4.4.3, the protocols should deal with:

- —criteria for issuing and rescinding advisories;
- —information to be provided to the general public and specific groups; and
- —activities impacted by the advisory.

Protocols should identify mechanisms for the communication of boil water and water avoidance advisories. The mechanisms may vary, depending on the nature of the supply and the size of the community affected, and could include:

- —media releases through television, radio and newspapers;
- —telephone, e-mail and fax contact of specific facilities, community groups and local authorities;
- —posting of notices in conspicuous locations;
- —personal delivery; and
- —mail delivery.

The methods chosen should provide a reasonable surety that all of those impacted by the advisory, including residents, workers and travellers, are notified as soon as possible.

Boil water advisories should indicate that the water can be made safe by bringing it to a rolling boil. After boiling, the water should be allowed to cool down on its own without the addition of ice. This procedure is effective at all altitudes and with turbid water.

The types of event that should lead to consideration of boil water advisories include:

- —substantial deterioration in source water quality;
- —major failures associated with treatment processes or the integrity of distribution systems;
- —inadequate disinfection;
- —detection of pathogens or faecal indicators in drinking-water; and
- —epidemiological evidence suggesting that drinking-water is responsible for an outbreak of illness.

Boil water advisories are a serious measure that can have substantial adverse consequences. Advice to boil water can have negative public health consequences through scalding and increased anxiety, even after the advice is rescinded. In addition, not all consumers will follow the advice issued, even at the outset; if boil water advisories are issued frequently or are left in place for long periods, compliance will decrease. Hence, advisories should be issued only after careful consideration of all available information by the public health authority and the incident response team and conclusion that there is an ongoing risk to public health that outweighs any risk from the advice to boil water. For example, where microbial contamination is detected in samples of drinking-water, factors that should be considered in evaluating the need for an advisory include:

- —reliability and accuracy of results;
- —vulnerability of source water to contamination;
- —evidence of deterioration in source water quality;
- —source water monitoring results;
- —results from operational monitoring of treatment and disinfection processes;
- —disinfectant residuals; and
- —physical integrity of the distribution system.

The available information should be reviewed to determine the likely source of the contamination and the likelihood of recurrence or persistence.

When issued, a boil water advisory should be clear and easily understood by recipients, or it may be ignored. Advisories should normally include a description of the problem, potential health risks and symptoms, activities that are impacted, investigative actions and corrective measures that have been initiated, as well as the expected time to resolve the problem. If the advisory is related to an outbreak of illness, specific information should be provided on the nature of the outbreak, the illness and the public health response.

Boil water advisories should identify both affected and unaffected uses of drinking-water supplies. Generally, the advisory will indicate that unboiled water should not be used for drinking, preparing cold drinks, making ice, preparing or washing food or brushing teeth. Unless heavily contaminated, unboiled water will generally be safe for bathing (providing swallowing of water is avoided) and washing clothes. A boil water advisory could include specific advice for vulnerable groups, such as pregnant women and those who might be immunocompromised.

Specific advice should also be provided to facilities such as dental clinics, dialysis centres, doctors' offices, hospitals and other health care facilities, child care facilities, schools, food suppliers and manufacturers, hotels, restaurants and operators of public swimming pools and spas.

Provision of alternative supplies of drinking-water, such as bottled water or bulk water, should be considered when temporary boil water or water avoidance advisories are in place. The protocols should identify sources of alternative supplies and mechanisms for delivery.

Protocols should include criteria for rescinding boil water and water avoidance advisories. Depending on the reason for issuing the advisory, the criteria could include one or more of the following:

- —evidence that source water quality has returned to normal;
- —correction of failures associated with treatment processes or distribution systems;
- —correction of faults in disinfection processes and restoration of normal disinfectant residuals;
- —where detection of microbial contamination in drinking-water initiated the advisory, evidence that this contamination has been removed or inactivated;

- evidence that sufficient mains flushing or water displacement has removed potentially contaminated water and biofilms; and/or
- epidemiological evidence indicating that an outbreak has concluded.

When boil water and water avoidance advisories are rescinded, information should be provided through similar channels and to the same groups that received the original advice. In addition, operators/managers or occupants of large buildings and buildings with storage tanks should be advised of the need to ensure that storages and extensive internal distribution systems are thoroughly flushed before normal uses are restored.

Water avoidance advisories, which share many features with boil water advisories but are less common, are applied when the parameter of concern, primarily chemical contaminants, is not susceptible to boiling (see section 8.6).

7.6.2 Actions following an incident

It is important that any incident be properly investigated and remedial action instigated to prevent its recurrence. The WSP will require revision to take into account the experience gained, and the findings may also be of importance in informing actions regarding other water supplies to prevent a similar event from occurring elsewhere. Where appropriate, epidemiological investigations by the health authority will also help to inform actions for the future.

8

Chemical aspects

Most chemicals arising in drinking-water are of health concern only after extended exposure of years, rather than months. The principal exception is nitrate. Typically, changes in water quality occur progressively, except for those substances that are discharged or leach intermittently to flowing surface waters or groundwater supplies from, for example, contaminated landfill sites.

In some cases, there are groups of chemicals that arise from related sources – for example, the DBPs – and it may not be necessary to set standards for all of the substances for which there are guideline values. If chlorination is practised, the THMs, of which chloroform is the major component, are likely to be the main DBPs, together with the chlorinated acetic acids in some instances. In some cases, control of chloroform levels and, where appropriate, trichloroacetic acid levels will also provide an adequate measure of control over other chlorination by-products.

Several of the inorganic elements for which guideline values have been recommended are recognized to be essential elements in human nutrition. No attempt has been made here at this time to define a minimum desirable concentration of such substances in drinking-water.

Fact sheets for individual chemical contaminants are provided in chapter 12. For those contaminants for which a guideline value has been established, the fact sheets include a brief toxicological overview of the chemical, the basis for guideline derivation, treatment achievability and analytical limit of detection. More detailed chemical reviews are available (http://www.who.int/water_sanitation_health/dwq/guidelines/en/).

8.1 Chemical hazards in drinking-water

A number of chemical contaminants have been shown to cause adverse health effects in humans as a consequence of prolonged exposure through drinking-water. However, this is only a very small proportion of the chemicals that may reach drinking-water from various sources.

The substances considered here have been assessed for possible health effects, and guideline values have been proposed only on the basis of health concerns. Additional

The lists of chemicals addressed in these Guidelines do not imply that all of these chemicals will always be present or that other chemicals not addressed will be absent.

consideration of the potential effects of chemical contaminants on the acceptability of drinking-water to consumers is included in chapter 10. Some substances of health concern have effects on the acceptability of drinking-water that would normally lead to rejection of the water at concentrations significantly lower than those of health concern. For such substances, health-based guideline values are needed, for instance, for use in interpreting data collected in response to consumer complaints.

In section 2.3.2, it is indicated that "In developing national drinking-water standards based on these Guidelines, it will be necessary to take account of a variety of environmental, social, cultural, economic, dietary and other conditions affecting potential exposure. This may lead to national standards that differ appreciably from these Guidelines." This is particularly applicable to chemical contaminants, for which there is a long list, and setting standards for, or including, all of them in monitoring programmes is neither feasible nor desirable.

It is important that chemical contaminants be prioritized so that the most important are considered for inclusion in national standards and monitoring programmes.

The probability that any particular chemical may occur in significant concentrations in any particular setting must be assessed on a case-by-case basis. The presence of certain chemicals may already be known within a particular country, but others may be more difficult to assess.

In most countries, whether developing or industrialized, water sector professionals are likely to be aware of a number of chemicals that are present in significant concentrations in drinking-water supplies. A body of local knowledge that has been built up by practical experience over a period of time is invaluable. Hence, the presence of a limited number of chemical contaminants in drinking-water is usually already known in many countries and in many local systems. Significant problems, even crises, can occur, however, when chemicals posing high health risk are widespread but their presence is unknown because their long-term health effect is caused by chronic exposure as opposed to acute exposure. Such has been the case of arsenic in groundwater in Bangladesh and West Bengal, for example.

For some contaminants, there will be exposure from sources other than drinking-water, and this may need to be taken into account when setting standards and considering the need for standards. It may also be important when considering the need for monitoring. In some cases, drinking-water will be a minor source of exposure, and controlling levels in water will have little impact on overall exposure. In other cases, controlling a contaminant in water may be the most cost-effective way of reducing exposure. Drinking-water monitoring strategies, therefore, should not be considered in isolation from other potential routes of exposure to chemicals in the environment.

Table 8.1 Categorization of source of chemical constituents

Source of chemical constituents	Examples of sources
Naturally occurring	Rocks, soils and the effects of the geological setting and climate
Industrial sources and human dwellings	Mining (extractive industries) and manufacturing and processing industries, sewage, solid wastes, urban runoff, fuel leakages
Agricultural activities	Manures, fertilizers, intensive animal practices and pesticides
Water treatment or materials in contact with drinking-water	Coagulants, DBPs, piping materials
Pesticides used in water for public health	Larvicides used in the control of insect vectors of disease
Cyanobacteria	Eutrophic lakes

The scientific basis for each of the guideline values is summarized in chapter 12. This information is important in helping to modify guideline values to suit national requirements or in assessing the significance for health of concentrations of a contaminant that are greater than the guideline value.

Chemical contaminants in drinking-water may be categorized in various ways; however, the most appropriate is to consider the primary source of the contaminant – i.e., to group chemicals according to where control may be effectively exercised. This aids in the development of approaches that are designed to prevent or minimize contamination, rather than those that rely primarily on the measurement of contaminant levels in final waters.

In general, approaches to the management of chemical hazards in drinking-water vary between those where the source water is a significant contributor (with control effected, for example, through source water selection, pollution control, treatment or blending) and those from materials and chemicals used in the production and distribution of drinking-water (controlled by process optimization or product specification). In these Guidelines, chemicals are therefore divided into six major source groups, as shown in Table 8.1.

Categories may not always be clear-cut. The group of naturally occurring contaminants, for example, includes many inorganic chemicals that are found in drinking-water as a consequence of release from rocks and soils by rainfall, some of which may become problematical where there is environmental disturbance, such as in mining areas.

8.2 Derivation of chemical guideline values

The criteria used to decide whether a guideline value is established for a particular chemical constituent are as follows:

- there is credible evidence of occurrence of the chemical in drinking-water, combined with evidence of actual or potential toxicity; or

— the chemical is of significant international concern; or
— the chemical is being considered for inclusion or is included in the WHO Pesticide Evaluation Scheme (WHOPES) programme (approval programme for direct application of pesticides to drinking-water for control of insect vectors of disease).

Guideline values are derived for many chemical constituents of drinking-water. A guideline value normally represents the concentration of a constituent that does not result in any significant risk to health over a lifetime of consumption. A number of provisional guideline values have been established at concentrations that are reasonably achievable through practical treatment approaches or in analytical laboratories; in these cases, the guideline value is above the concentration that would normally represent the calculated health-based value. Guideline values are also designated as provisional when there is a high degree of uncertainty in the toxicology and health data (see also section 8.2.6).

There are two principal sources of information on health effects resulting from exposure to chemicals that can be used in deriving guideline values. The first and preferred source is studies on human populations. However, the value of such studies for many substances is limited, owing to lack of quantitative information on the concentration to which people have been exposed or on simultaneous exposure to other agents. However, for some substances, such studies are the primary basis on which guideline values are developed. The second and most frequently used source of information is toxicity studies using laboratory animals. The limitations of toxicology studies include the relatively small number of animals used and the relatively high doses administered, which create uncertainty as to the relevance of particular findings to human health. This is because there is a need to extrapolate the results from animals to humans and to the low doses to which human populations are usually exposed. In most cases, the study used to derive the guideline value is supported by a range of other studies, including human data, and these are also considered in carrying out a health risk assessment.

In order to derive a guideline value to protect human health, it is necessary to select the most suitable study or studies. Data from well conducted studies, where a clear dose–response relationship has been demonstrated, are preferred. Expert judgement was exercised in the selection of the most appropriate study from the range of information available.

8.2.1 Approaches taken

Two approaches to the derivation of guideline values are used: one for "threshold chemicals" and the other for "non-threshold chemicals" (mostly genotoxic carcinogens).

It is generally considered that the initiating event in the process of genotoxic chemical carcinogenesis is the induction of a mutation in the genetic material (DNA) of somatic cells (i.e., cells other than ova or sperm) and that there is a theoretical risk at any level of exposure (i.e., no threshold). On the other hand, there are carcinogens that are capable of producing tumours in animals or humans without exerting a genotoxic activity, but acting through an indirect mechanism. It is generally believed that a demonstrable threshold dose exists for non-genotoxic carcinogens.

In deriving guideline values for carcinogens, consideration was given to the potential mechanism(s) by which the substance may cause cancer, in order to decide whether a threshold or non-threshold approach should be used (see sections 8.2.2 and 8.2.4).

The evaluation of the potential carcinogenicity of chemical substances is usually based on long-term animal studies. Sometimes data are available on carcinogenicity in humans, mostly from occupational exposure.

On the basis of the available evidence, the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) categorizes chemical substances with respect to their potential carcinogenic risk into the following groups:

Group 1: the agent is carcinogenic to humans
Group 2A: the agent is probably carcinogenic to humans
Group 2B: the agent is possibly carcinogenic to humans
Group 3: the agent is not classifiable as to its carcinogenicity to humans
Group 4: the agent is probably not carcinogenic to humans

According to IARC, these classifications represent a first step in carcinogenic risk assessment, which leads to a second step of quantitative risk assessment where possible. In establishing guideline values for drinking-water, the IARC evaluation of carcinogenic compounds, where available, is taken into consideration.

8.2.2 Threshold chemicals

For most kinds of toxicity, it is believed that there is a dose below which no adverse effect will occur. For chemicals that give rise to such toxic effects, a tolerable daily intake (TDI) should be derived as follows, using the most sensitive end-point in the most relevant study, preferably involving administration in drinking-water:

$$\mathrm{TDI} = (\mathrm{NOAEL\ or\ LOAEL})/\mathrm{UF}$$

where:

- NOAEL = no-observed-adverse-effect level
- LOAEL = lowest-observed-adverse-effect level
- UF = uncertainty factor

The guideline value (GV) is then derived from the TDI as follows:

$$\mathrm{GV} = (\mathrm{TDI} \times \mathrm{bw} \times \mathrm{P})/\mathrm{C}$$

where:

- bw = body weight (see below)
- P = fraction of the TDI allocated to drinking-water
- C = daily drinking-water consumption (see below)

Tolerable daily intake

The TDI is an estimate of the amount of a substance in food and drinking-water, expressed on a body weight basis (mg/kg or µg/kg of body weight), that can be ingested over a lifetime without appreciable health risk.

Acceptable daily intakes (ADIs) are established for food additives and pesticide residues that occur in food for necessary technological purposes or plant protection reasons. For chemical contaminants, which usually have no intended function in drinking-water, the term "tolerable daily intake" is more appropriate than "acceptable daily intake," as it signifies permissibility rather than acceptability.

Over many years, JECFA and JMPR have developed certain principles in the derivation of ADIs. These principles have been adopted where appropriate in the derivation of TDIs used in developing guideline values for drinking-water quality.

As TDIs are regarded as representing a tolerable intake for a lifetime, they are not so precise that they cannot be exceeded for short periods of time. Short-term exposure to levels exceeding the TDI is not a cause for concern, provided the individual's intake averaged over longer periods of time does not appreciably exceed the level set. The large uncertainty factors generally involved in establishing a TDI (see below) serve to provide assurance that exposure exceeding the TDI for short periods is unlikely to have any deleterious effects upon health. However, consideration should be given to any potential acute effects that may occur if the TDI is substantially exceeded for short periods of time.

No-observed-adverse-effect level and lowest-observed-adverse-effect level

The NOAEL is defined as the highest dose or concentration of a chemical in a single study, found by experiment or observation, that causes no detectable adverse health effect. Wherever possible, the NOAEL is based on long-term studies, preferably of ingestion in drinking-water. However, NOAELs obtained from short-term studies and studies using other sources of exposure (e.g., food, air) may also be used.

If a NOAEL is not available, a LOAEL may be used, which is the lowest observed dose or concentration of a substance at which there is a detectable adverse health effect. When a LOAEL is used instead of a NOAEL, an additional uncertainty factor is normally applied (see below).

Uncertainty factors

The application of uncertainty (or safety) factors has been widely used in the derivation of ADIs and TDIs for food additives, pesticides and environmental contaminants. The derivation of these factors requires expert judgement and careful consideration of the available scientific evidence.

Table 8.2 Source of uncertainty in derivation of guideline values

Source of uncertainty	Factor
Interspecies variation (animals to humans)	1–10
Intraspecies variation (individual variations within species)	1–10
Adequacy of studies or database	1–10
Nature and severity of effect	1–10

In the derivation of guideline values, uncertainty factors are applied to the NOAEL or LOAEL for the response considered to be the most biologically significant.

In relation to exposure of the general population, the NOAEL for the critical effect in animals is normally divided by an uncertainty factor of 100. This comprises two 10-fold factors, one for interspecies differences and one for interindividual variability in humans (see Table 8.2). Extra uncertainty factors may be incorporated to allow for database deficiencies and for the severity and irreversibility of effects.

Factors lower than 10 were used, for example, for interspecies variation when humans are known to be less sensitive than the animal species studied. Inadequate studies or databases include those where a LOAEL was used instead of a NOAEL and studies considered to be shorter in duration than desirable. Situations in which the nature or severity of effect might warrant an additional uncertainty factor include studies in which the end-point was malformation of a fetus or in which the end-point determining the NOAEL was directly related to possible carcinogenicity. In the latter case, an additional uncertainty factor was usually applied for carcinogenic compounds for which the guideline value was derived using a TDI approach rather than a theoretical risk extrapolation approach.

For substances for which the uncertainty factors were greater than 1000, guideline values are designated as provisional in order to emphasize the higher level of uncertainty inherent in these values. A high uncertainty factor indicates that the guideline value may be considerably lower than the concentration at which health effects would actually occur in a real human population. Guideline values with high uncertainty are more likely to be modified as new information becomes available.

The selection and application of uncertainty factors are important in the derivation of guideline values for chemicals, as they can make a considerable difference in the values set. For contaminants for which there is sufficient confidence in the database, the guideline value was derived using a smaller uncertainty factor. For most contaminants, however, there is greater scientific uncertainty, and a relatively large uncertainty factor was used. The use of uncertainty factors enables the particular attributes of the chemical and the data available to be considered in the derivation of guideline values.

Allocation of intake

Drinking-water is not usually the sole source of human exposure to the substances for which guideline values have been set. In many cases, the intake of chemical contaminants from drinking-water is small in comparison with that from other sources, such as food, air and consumer products. Some consideration is therefore needed as to the proportion of the TDI that may be allowed from different sources in developing guidelines and risk management strategies. This approach ensures that total daily intake from all sources (including drinking-water containing concentrations of the substance at or near the guideline value) does not exceed the TDI.

Wherever possible, data concerning the proportion of total intake normally ingested in drinking-water (based on mean levels in food, air and drinking-water) or intakes estimated on the basis of consideration of physical and chemical properties were used in the derivation of the guideline values. In developing guideline values that can be applied throughout the world, it is difficult to obtain such data, which are highly variable for many chemicals. Where appropriate information is not available, values are applied that reflect the likely contribution from water for various chemicals. The values generally vary from 10% for substances for which exposure from food is probably the major source to 80% for substances for which exposure is primarily through drinking-water. Although the values chosen are, in most cases, sufficient to account for additional routes of intake (i.e., inhalation and dermal absorption) of contaminants in water, under certain circumstances, authorities may wish to take inhalation and dermal exposure into account in adapting the guidelines to local conditions (see section 2.3.2).

Where locally relevant exposure data are available, authorities are encouraged to develop context-specific guideline values that are tailored to local circumstances and conditions. For example, in areas where the intake of a particular contaminant in drinking-water is known to be much greater than that from other sources (e.g., air and food), it may be appropriate to allocate a greater proportion of the TDI to drinking-water to derive a guideline value more suited to the local conditions.

Default assumptions

There is variation in both the volume of water consumed by, and the body weight of, consumers. It is, therefore, necessary to apply some assumptions in order to determine a guideline value. The default assumption for consumption by an adult is 2 litres of water per day, while the default assumption for body weight is 60 kg. It is recognized that water intake can vary significantly in different parts of the world, particularly where consumers are involved in manual labour in hot climates. In the case of a few parameters, such as fluoride, local adjustment may be needed in setting local standards. For most other substances, the drinking-water intake range is very small (perhaps a factor of 2–4) compared with the much larger range in the toxicological uncertainty factors. In some cases, the guideline value is based on children, where they are considered to be particularly vulnerable to a particular substance. In this event, a default intake of 1 litre is assumed for a body weight of 10 kg; where the most vulnerable group is considered to be bottle-fed infants, an intake of 0.75 litre is assumed for a body weight of 5 kg.

Significant figures

The calculated TDI is used to derive the guideline value, which is then rounded to one significant figure. In some instances, ADI values with only one significant figure set by JECFA or JMPR were used to calculate the guideline value. The guideline value was generally rounded to one significant figure to reflect the uncertainty in animal toxicity data and exposure assumptions made.

8.2.3 Alternative approaches

Alternative approaches being considered in the derivation of TDIs for threshold effects include the benchmark dose (BMD) and chemical-specific adjustment factors (CSAFs). The BMD is the lower confidence limit of the dose that produces a small increase in the level of adverse effects (e.g., 5% or 10%), to which uncertainty factors can be applied to develop a tolerable intake. The BMD has a number of advantages over the NOAEL, including the fact that it is derived on the basis of data from the entire dose–response curve for the critical effect rather than from the single dose group at the NOAEL (IPCS, 1994). CSAFs, which were previously called "data-derived uncertainty factors," are derived from quantitative toxicokinetic and toxicodynamic data and replace the default values for extrapolation between species and between routes of exposure. As such, they reduce reliance on empirical mathematical modelling (IPCS, 2001).

8.2.4 Non-threshold chemicals

In the case of compounds considered to be genotoxic carcinogens, guideline values were normally determined using a mathematical model. Although several models exist, the linearized multistage model was generally adopted. Other models were considered more appropriate in a few cases. These models compute an estimate of risk at a particular level of exposure, along with upper and lower bounds of confidence on the calculation, which may include zero at the lower bound. Guideline values are conservatively presented as the concentrations in drinking-water associated with an estimated upper-bound excess lifetime cancer risk of 10^{-5} (or one additional cancer per 100 000 of the population ingesting drinking-water containing the substance at the guideline value for 70 years). This value does not equate to the number of cases of cancer that will be caused by exposure to the substance at this level. It is the maximum potential risk, taking into account large uncertainties. It is highly probable that the actual level of risk is less than this, but risks at low levels of exposure cannot be experimentally verified. Member States may consider that a different level of risk is more appropriate to their circumstances, and values relating to risks of 10^{-4} or 10^{-6} may be determined by respectively multiplying or dividing the guideline value by 10.

The mathematical models used for deriving guideline values for non-threshold chemicals cannot be verified experimentally, and they do not usually take into account a number of biologically important considerations, such as pharmacokinetics, DNA repair or protection by the immune system. They also assume the validity of a linear extrapolation of very high dose exposures in test animals to very low dose exposures in humans. As a consequence, the models used are conservative (i.e., err on the side of caution). The guideline values derived using these models should be interpreted differently from TDI-derived values because of the lack of precision of the models. Moderate short-term exposure to levels exceeding the guideline value for non-threshold chemicals does not significantly affect the risk.

8.2.5 Data quality

The following factors were taken into account in assessing the quality and reliability of available information:

- Oral studies are preferred (in particular, drinking-water studies), using the pure substance with appropriate dosing regime and a good-quality pathology.
- The database should be sufficiently broad that all potential toxicological end-points of concern have been identified.
- The quality of the studies is such that they are considered reliable; for example, there has been adequate consideration of confounding factors in epidemiological studies.
- There is reasonable consistency between studies; the end-point and study used to derive a guideline value do not contradict the overall weight of evidence.
- For inorganic substances, there is some consideration of speciation in drinking-water.
- There is appropriate consideration of multimedia exposure in the case of epidemiological studies.

In the development of guideline values, existing international approaches were carefully considered. In particular, previous risk assessments developed by the International Programme on Chemical Safety (IPCS) in EHC monographs and CICADs, IARC, JMPR and JECFA were reviewed. These assessments were relied upon except where new information justified a reassessment, but the quality of new data was critically evaluated before it was used in any risk assessment. Where international reviews were not available, other sources of data were used in the derivation of guideline values, including published reports from peer-reviewed open literature, national reviews recognized to be of high quality, information submitted by governments and other interested parties and, to a limited extent, unpublished proprietary data (primarily for the evaluation of pesticides). Future revisions and assessments of pesticides will take place primarily through WHO/IPCS/JMPR/JECFA processes.

8.2.6 Provisional guideline values

The use and designation of provisional guideline values are outlined in Table 8.3.

For non-threshold substances, in cases in which the concentration associated with an upper-bound excess lifetime cancer risk of 10^{-5} is not feasible as a result of inade-

Table 8.3 Use and designation of provisional guideline values

Situations where a provisional guideline applies	Designation	
Significant scientific uncertainties regarding derivation of health-based guideline value	P	
Calculated guideline value is below the practical quantification level	A	*(Guideline value is set at the achievable quantification level)*
Calculated guideline value is below the level that can be achieved through practical treatment methods	T	*(Guideline value is set at the practical treatment limit)*
Calculated guideline value is likely to be exceeded as a result of disinfection procedures	D	*(Guideline value is set on the basis of health, but disinfection of drinking-water remains paramount)*

quate analytical or treatment technology, a provisional guideline value (designated A or T, respectively) is recommended at a practicable level.

8.2.7 Chemicals with effects on acceptability

Some substances of health concern have effects on the taste, odour or appearance of drinking-water that would normally lead to rejection of water at concentrations significantly lower than those of concern for health. Such substances are not normally appropriate for routine monitoring. Nevertheless, health-based guideline values may be needed – for instance, for use in interpreting data collected in response to consumer complaints. In these circumstances, a health-based summary statement and guideline value are presented in the usual way. In the summary statement, the relationship between concentrations relevant to health and those relevant to the acceptability of the drinking-water is explained. In tables of guideline values, the health-based guideline values are designated with a "C."

8.2.8 Non-guideline chemicals

Additional information on many chemicals not included in these Guidelines is available from several credible sources, including WHO EHCs and CICADs (www.who.int/pcs/index), chemical risk assessment reports from JMPR, JECFA and IARC, and published documents from a number of national sources, such as the US EPA. Although these information sources may not have been reviewed for these Guidelines, they have been peer reviewed and provide readily accessible information on the toxicology of many additional chemicals. They can help drinking-water suppliers and health officials decide upon the significance (if any) of a detected chemical and on the response that might be appropriate.

8.2.9 Mixtures

Chemical contaminants of drinking-water supplies are present with numerous other inorganic and/or organic constituents. The guideline values are calculated separately for individual substances, without specific consideration of the potential for interaction of each substance with other compounds present. The large margin of uncertainty incorporated in the majority of the guideline values is considered to be sufficient to account for potential interactions. In addition, the majority of contaminants will not be continuously present at concentrations at or near their guideline value.

For many chemical contaminants, mechanisms of toxicity are different; consequently, there is no reason to assume that there are interactions. There may, however, be occasions when a number of contaminants with similar toxicological mechanisms are present at levels near their respective guideline values. In such cases, decisions concerning appropriate action should be made, taking into consideration local circumstances. Unless there is evidence to the contrary, it is appropriate to assume that the toxic effects of these compounds are additive.

8.3 Analytical aspects

As noted above, guideline values are not set at concentrations of substances that cannot reasonably be measured. In such circumstances, provisional guideline values are set at the reasonable analytical limits.

Guidance provided in this section is intended to assist readers to select appropriate analytical methods for specific circumstances.

8.3.1 Analytical achievability

Various collections of "standard" or "recommended" methods for water analysis are published by a number of national and international agencies. It is often thought that adequate analytical accuracy can be achieved provided that all laboratories use the same standard method. Experience shows that this is not always the case, as a variety of factors may affect the accuracy of the results. Examples include reagent purity, apparatus type and performance, degree of modification of the method in a particular laboratory and the skill and care of the analyst. These factors are likely to vary both between the laboratories and over time in an individual laboratory. Moreover, the precision and accuracy that can be achieved with a particular method frequently depend upon the adequacy of sampling and nature of the sample ("matrix"). While it is not essential to use standard methods, it is important that the methods used are properly validated and precision and accuracy determined before significant decisions are made based on the results. In the case of "non-specific" variables such as taste and odour, colour and turbidity, the result is method specific, and this needs to be considered when using the data to make comparisons.

A number of considerations are important in selecting methods:

- The overriding consideration is that the method chosen is demonstrated to have the required accuracy. Other factors, such as speed and convenience, should be considered only in selecting among methods that meet this primary criterion.
- There are a number of markedly different procedures for measuring and reporting the errors to which all methods are subject. This complicates and prejudices the effectiveness of method selection, and suggestions for standardizing such procedures have been made. It is therefore desirable that details of all analytical methods are published together with performance characteristics that can be interpreted unambiguously.
- If the analytical results from one laboratory are to be compared with those from others and/or with a numerical standard, it is obviously preferable for them not to have any associated systematic error. In practice, this is not possible, but each laboratory should select methods whose systematic errors have been thoroughly evaluated and shown to be acceptably small.

A qualitative ranking of analytical methods based on their degree of technical complexity is given in Table 8.4 for inorganic chemicals and in Table 8.5 for organic chemicals. These groups of chemicals are separated, as the analytical methods used differ

Table 8.4 Ranking of complexity of analytical methods for inorganic chemicals

Ranking	Example of analytical methods
1	Volumetric method, colorimetric method
2	Electrode method
3	Ion chromatography
4	High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC)
5	Flame atomic absorption spectrometry (FAAS)
6	Electrothermal atomic absorption spectrometry (EAAS)
7	Inductively coupled plasma (ICP)/atomic emission spectrometry (AES)
8	ICP/mass spectrometry (MS)

greatly. The higher the ranking, the more complex the process in terms of equipment and/or operation. In general, higher rankings are also associated with higher total costs. Analytical achievabilities of the chemical guideline values based on detection limits are given in Tables 8.6–8.10.

There are many kinds of field test kits that are used for compliance examinations as well as operational monitoring of drinking-water quality. Although the field test kits are generally available at relatively low prices, their analytical accuracy is generally less than that of the methods shown in Tables 8.4 and 8.5. It is therefore necessary to check the validity of the field test kit before applying it.

Table 8.5 Ranking of complexity of analytical methods for organic chemicals

Ranking	Example of analytical methods
1	HPLC
2	Gas chromatography (GC)
3	GC/MS
4	Headspace GC/MS
5	Purge-and-trap GC Purge-and-trap GC/MS

8.3.2 Analytical methods

In *volumetric titration*, chemicals are analysed by titration with a standardized titrant. The titration end-point is identified by the development of colour resulting from the reaction with an indicator, by the change of electrical potential or by the change of pH value.

Colorimetric methods are based on measuring the intensity of colour of a coloured target chemical or reaction product. The optical absorbance is measured using light of a suitable wavelength. The concentration is determined by means of a calibration curve obtained using known concentrations of the determinant. The UV method is similar to this method except that UV light is used.

For ionic materials, the ion concentration can be measured using an *ion-selective electrode*. The measured potential is proportional to the logarithm of the ion concentration.

Table 8.6 Analytical achievability for inorganic chemicals for which guideline values have been established, by source category[a]

	Field methods		Laboratory methods				
	Col	**Absor**	**IC**	**FAAS**	**EAAS**	**ICP**	**ICP/MS**
Naturally occurring chemicals							
Arsenic		#		+(H)	++□+++(H)	++(H)	+++
Barium				+	+++	+++	+++
Boron		++				++	+++
Chromium		#		+	+++	+++	+++
Fluoride	#	+	++				
Manganese	+	++		++	+++	+++	+++
Molybdenum					+	+++	+++
Selenium		#		#	+++(H)	++(H)	+
Uranium						+	+++
Chemicals from industrial sources and human dwellings							
Cadmium		#			++	++	+++
Cyanide	#	+	+				
Mercury					+		
Chemicals from agricultural activities							
Nitrate/nitrite	+++	+++	#				
Chemicals used in water treatment or materials in contact with drinking-water							
Antimony				#	++(H)	++(H)	+++
Copper	#	+++		+++	+++	+++	+++
Lead		#			+	+	++
Nickel		+		#	+	+++	++

[a] For definitions and notes to Table 8.6, see below Table 8.10.

Some organic compounds absorb UV light (wavelength 190–380 nm) in proportion to their concentration. *UV absorption* is useful for qualitative estimation of organic substances, because a strong correlation may exist between UV absorption and organic carbon content.

Atomic absorption spectrometry (AAS) is used for determination of metals. It is based on the phenomenon that the atom in the ground state absorbs the light of wavelengths that are characteristic to each element when light is passed through the atoms in the vapour state. Because this absorption of light depends on the concentration of atoms in the vapour, the concentration of the target element in the water sample is determined from the measured absorbance. The Beer-Lambert law describes the relationship between concentration and absorbance.

In *flame atomic absorption spectrometry (FAAS)*, a sample is aspirated into a flame and atomized. A light beam from a hollow cathode lamp of the same element as the target metal is radiated through the flame, and the amount of absorbed light is measured by the detector. This method is much more sensitive than other methods and free from spectral or radiation interference by co-existing elements. Pretreatment is either unnecessary or straightforward. However, it is not suitable for simultaneous analysis of many elements, because the light source is different for each target element.

Table 8.7 Analytical achievability for organic chemicals from industrial sources and human dwellings for which guideline values have been established[a]

	Col	GC	GC/PD	GC/EC	GC/ FID	GC/ FPD	GC/ TID	GC/ MS	PT- GC/MS	HPLC	HPLC/FD	HPLC/ UVPAD	EAAS	IC/FD
Benzene				++	+				+++					
Carbon tetrachloride				+					+					
Di(2-ethylhexyl)phthalate								++						
1,2-Dichlorobenzene			+++	+++					+++					
1,4-Dichlorobenzene			+++	+++					+++					
1,2-Dichloroethane				+++					++					
1,1-Dichloroethene				+++	+				+++					
1,2-Dichloroethene				++	++				+++					
Dichloromethane				#	+				+++					
1,4-Dioxane								+++						
Edetic acid (EDTA)								+++						
Ethylbenzene				+++	+++				+++					
Hexachlorobutadiene									+					
Nitrilotriacetic acid (NTA)		+++												
Pentachlorophenol				++					+++	+++				
Styrene				++	+				+++					
Tetrachloroethene				+++	+				+++					
Toluene					+++				+++					
Trichloroethene				+++	+				+++					+
Xylenes					+++				+++					

[a] For definitions and notes to Table 8.7, see below Table 8.10.

Table 8.8 Analytical achievability for organic chemicals from agricultural activities for which guideline values have been established[a]

	Col	GC	GC/PD	GC/EC	GC/ FID	GC/ FPD	GC/ TID	GC/ MS	PT- GC/MS	HPLC	HPLC/FD	HPLC/ UVPAD	EAAS	IC/FD
Alachlor				□				+++						
Aldicarb												+		
Aldrin and dieldrin				+										
Atrazine								+++□						
Carbofuran							++				++			
Chlordane				+										
Chlorotoluron				□										
Cyanazine								++				+		
2,4-D				++				+++						
2,4-DB				++				++						
1,2-Dibromo-3-chloropropane				□				+++	++					
1,2-Dibromoethane								+	+					
1,2-Dichloropropane				+++					+++					
1,3-Dichloropropene				+++					+++					
Dichlorprop (2,4-DP)								+++						
Dimethoate								+++						
Endrin				+				#						
Fenoprop				+										
Isoproturon				+								+++		
Lindane				+										
MCPA				+++				+++				+++		
Mecoprop				++				++						
Methoxychlor		+++												
Metolachlor				+++										
Molinate								+++						
Pendimethalin				+++			++	+++						
Simazine					+		+	+++						
2,4,5-T			+	+++										
Terbuthylazine (TBA)								+++				++		
Trifluralin		+++						+++				+		

[a] For definitions and notes to Table 8.8, see below Table 8.10.

Table 8.9 Analytical achievability for chemicals used in water treatment or from materials in contact with water for which guideline values have been established[a]

	Col	GC	GC/PD	GC/EC	GC/ FID	GC/ FPD	GC/ TID	GC/MS	PT- GC/MS	HPLC	HPLC/FD	HPLC/ UVPAD	EAAS	IC
Disinfectants														
Monochloramine	+++													
Chlorine	+++									+++				+++
Disinfection by-products														
Bromate														+
Bromodichloromethane				+++					+++					
Bromoform				+++					+++					
Chloral hydrate (trichloroacetaldehyde)				+				+						
Chlorate														□
Chlorite	□													□
Chloroform				+++					+++					
Cyanogen chloride														□
Dibromoacetonitrile				□				□						
Dibromochloromethane				+++					+++					
Dichloroacetate				□				□						
Dichloroacetonitrile				+++				+						
Formaldehyde				□				□						
Monochloroacetate		++						++						
Trichloroacetate				□				□						
2,4,6-Trichlorophenol				+++				+++						
Trihalomethanes[b]				+++					+++					
Organic contaminants from treatment chemicals														
Acrylamide		+					+				+			
Epichlorohydrin				+	+				+					
Organic contaminants from pipes and fittings														
Benzo[*a*]pyrene								++			++			
Vinyl chloride				+					+					

---

[a] For definitions and notes to Table 8.9, see below Table 8.10.

[b] See also individual THMs.

Table 8.10 Analytical achievability for pesticides used in water for public health purposes for which guideline values have been established[a]

	Col	GC	GC/PD	GC/EC	GC/ FID	GC/ FPD	GC/ TID	GC/MS	PT- GC/MS	HPLC	HPLC/FD	HPLC/ UVPAD	EAAS	IC/FD
Chlorpyrifos				+++	+++	+	+++	+++						
DDT (and metabolites)				+++				+						
Pyriproxyfen								+++						

[a] For definitions and notes to Table 8.10, see below.

Definitions to Tables 8.6–8.10

Col	Colorimetry
Absor	Absorptiometry
GC	Gas chromatography
GC/PD	Gas chromatography photoionization detector
GC/EC	Gas chromatography electron capture
GC/FID	Gas chromatography flame ionization detector
GC/FPD	Gas chromatography flame photodiode detector
GC/TID	Gas chromatography thermal ionization detector
GC/MS	Gas chromatography mass spectrometry
PT-GC/MS	Purge-and-trap gas chromatography mass spectrometry
HPLC	High-performance liquid chromatography
HPLC/FD	High-performance liquid chromatography fluorescence detector
HPLC/ UVPAD	High-performance liquid chromatography ultraviolet photodiode array detector
EAAS	Electrothermal atomic absorption spectrometry
IC	Ion chromatography
ICP	Inductively coupled plasma
ICP/MS	Inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry
FAAS	Flame atomic absorption spectrometry
IC/FAAS	Ion chromatography flame atomic absorption spectrometry
IC/FD	Ion chromatography fluorescence detector

Notes to Tables 8.6–8.10

+	The detection limit is between the guideline value and 1/10 of its value.
++	The detection limit is between 1/10 and 1/50 of the guideline value.
+++	The detection limit is under 1/100 of the guideline value.
#	The analytical method is available for detection of the concentration of the guideline value, but it is difficult to detect the concentration of 1/10 of the guideline value.
□	The detection method(s) is/are available for the item.
(H)	This method is applicable to the determination by conversion to their hydrides by hydride generator.

Electrothermal atomic absorption spectrometry (EAAS) is based on the same principle as FAAS, but an electrically heated atomizer or graphite furnace replaces the standard burner head for determination of metals. In comparison with FAAS, EAAS gives higher sensitivities and lower detection limits, and a smaller sample volume is required. EAAS suffers from more interference through light scattering by co-existing elements and requires a longer analysis time than FAAS.

The principle of *inductively coupled plasma/atomic emission spectrometry (ICP/AES)* for determination of metals is as follows. An ICP source consists of a flowing stream of argon gas ionized by an applied radio frequency. A sample aerosol is generated in a nebulizer and spray chamber and then carried into the plasma through an injector tube. A sample is heated and excited in the high-temperature plasma. The high temperature of the plasma causes the atoms to become excited. On returning to the ground state, the excited atoms produce ionic emission spectra. A monochromator is used to separate specific wavelengths corresponding to different elements, and a detector measures the intensity of radiation of each wavelength. A significant reduction in chemical interference is achieved. In the case of water with low pollution, simultaneous or sequential analysis is possible without special pretreatment to achieve low detection limits for many elements. This, coupled with the extended dynamic range from three digits to five digits, means that multi-element determination of metals can be achieved. ICP/AES has similar sensitivity to FAAS or EAAS.

In *inductively coupled plasma/mass spectrometry (ICP/MS)*, elements are atomized and excited as in ICP/AES, then passed to a mass spectrometer. Once inside the mass spectrometer, the ions are accelerated by high voltage and passed through a series of ion optics, an electrostatic analyser and, finally, a magnet. By varying the strength of the magnet, ions are separated according to mass/charge ratio and passed through a slit into the detector, which records only a very small atomic mass range at a given time. By varying the magnet and electrostatic analyser settings, the entire mass range can be scanned within a relatively short period of time. In the case of water with low pollution, simultaneous or sequential analysis is possible without special pretreatment to achieve low detection limits for many elements. This, coupled with the extended dynamic range from three digits to five digits, means that multi-element determination of metals can be achieved.

Chromatography is a separation method based on the affinity difference between two phases, the stationary and mobile phases. A sample is injected into a column, either packed or coated with the stationary phase, and separated by the mobile phase based on the difference in interaction (distribution or adsorption) between compounds and the stationary phase. Compounds with a low affinity for the stationary phase move more quickly through the column and elute earlier. The compounds that elute from the end of the column are determined by a suitable detector.

In *ion chromatography*, an ion exchanger is used as the stationary phase, and the eluant for determination of anions is typically a dilute solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate and sodium carbonate. Colorimetric, electrometric or titrimetric detectors can be used for determining individual anions. In suppressed ion chromatography, anions are converted to their highly conductive acid forms; in the carbonate–bicarbonate eluant, anions are converted to weakly conductive carbonic acid. The separated acid forms are measured by conductivity and identified on the basis of retention time as compared with their standards.

High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) is an analytical technique using a liquid mobile phase and a column containing a liquid stationary phase. Detection of the separated compounds is achieved through the use of absorbance detectors for organic compounds and through conductivity or electrochemical detectors for metallic and inorganic compounds.

Gas chromatography (GC) permits the identification and quantification of trace organic compounds. In GC, gas is used as the mobile phase, and the stationary phase is a liquid that is coated either on an inert granular solid or on the walls of a capillary column. When the sample is injected into the column, the organic compounds are vaporized and moved through the column by the carrier gas at different rates depending on differences in partition coefficients between the mobile and stationary phases. The gas exiting the column is passed to a suitable detector. A variety of detectors can be used, including flame ionization (FID), electron capture (ECD) and nitrogen–phosphorus. Since separation ability is good in this method, mixtures of substances with similar structure are systematically separated, identified and determined quantitatively in a single operation.

The *gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS)* method is based on the same principle as the GC method, using a mass spectrometer as the detector. As the gas emerges from the end of the GC column opening, it flows through a capillary column interface into the MS. The sample then enters the ionization chamber, where a collimated beam of electrons impacts the sample molecules, causing ionization and fragmentation. The next component is a mass analyser, which uses a magnetic field to separate the positively charged particles according to their mass. Several types of separating techniques exist; the most common are quadrupoles and ion traps. After the ions are separated according to their masses, they enter a detector.

The *purge-and-trap packed-column GC/MS method* or *purge-and-trap packed-column GC* method is applicable to the determination of various purgeable organic compounds that are transferred from the aqueous to the vapour phase by bubbling purge gas through a water sample at ambient temperature. The vapour is trapped with a cooled trap. The trap is heated and backflushed with the same purge gas to desorb the compounds onto a GC column. The principles of GC or GC/MS are as referred to above.

The principle of *enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)* is as follows. The protein (antibody) against the chemical of interest (antigen) is coated onto the solid material. The target chemical in the water sample binds to the antibody, and a second antibody with an enzyme attached is also added that will attach to the chemical of interest. After washing to remove any of the free reagents, a chromogen is added that will give a colour reaction due to cleavage by the enzyme that is proportional to the quantity of the chemical of interest. The ELISA method can be used to determine microcystin and synthetic surfactants.

8.4 Treatment

As noted above, where a health-based guideline value cannot be achieved by reasonably practicable treatment, then the guideline value is designated as provisional and set at the concentration that can be reasonably achieved through treatment.

Collection, treatment, storage and distribution of drinking-water involve deliberate additions of numerous chemicals to improve the safety and quality of the finished drinking-water for consumers (direct additives). In addition, water is in constant contact with pipes, valves, taps and tank surfaces, all of which have the potential to impart additional chemicals to the water (indirect additives). The chemicals used in water treatment or from materials in contact with drinking-water are discussed in more detail in section 8.5.4.

8.4.1 Treatment achievability

The ability to achieve a guideline value within a drinking-water supply depends on a number of factors, including:

— the concentration of the chemical in the raw water;
— control measures employed throughout the drinking-water system;
— nature of the raw water (groundwater or surface water, presence of natural background and other components); and
— treatment processes already installed.

If a guideline value cannot be met with the existing system, then additional treatment may need to be considered, or water should be obtained from alternative sources.

The cost of achieving a guideline value will depend on the complexity of any additional treatment or other control measures required. It is not possible to provide general quantitative information on the cost of achieving individual guideline values. Treatment costs (capital and operating) will depend not only on the factors identified above, but also on issues such as plant throughput; local costs for labour, civil and mechanical works, chemicals and electricity; life expectancy of the plant; and so on.

A qualitative ranking of treatment processes based on their degree of technical complexity is given in Table 8.11. The higher the ranking, the more complex the

Table 8.11 Ranking of technical complexity and cost of water treatment processes

Ranking	Examples of treatment processes
1	Simple chlorination Plain filtration (rapid sand, slow sand)
2	Pre-chlorination plus filtration Aeration
3	Chemical coagulation Process optimization for control of DBPs
4	Granular activated carbon (GAC) treatment Ion exchange
5	Ozonation
6	Advanced oxidation processes Membrane treatment

Table 8.12 Treatment achievability for naturally occurring chemicals for which guideline values have been established[a,b]

	Chlorination	Coagulation	Ion exchange	Precipitation softening	Activated alumina	Activated carbon	Ozonation	Membranes
Arsenic		+++ <0.005	+++ <0.005	+++ <0.005	+++ <0.005			+++ <0.005
Fluoride		++			+++ <1			+++ <1
Manganese	+++ <0.05	++					+++ <0.05	+++ <0.05
Selenium		++	+++ <0.01		+++ <0.01			+++ <0.01
Uranium		++	+++ <0.001	++	+++ <0.001			

[a] Symbols are as follows:
++ 50% or more removal
+++ 80% or more removal

[b] The table includes only those chemicals for which some treatment data are available. A blank entry in the table indicates either that the process is completely ineffective or that there are no data on the effectiveness of the process. For the most effective process(es), the table indicates the concentration of the chemical, in mg/litre, that should be achievable.

process in terms of plant and/or operation. In general, higher rankings are also associated with higher costs.

Tables 8.12–8.16 summarize the treatment processes that are capable of removing chemical contaminants of health significance. The tables include only those chemicals for which some treatment data are available.

These tables are provided to help inform decisions regarding the ability of existing treatment to meet guidelines and what additional treatment might need to be installed. They have been compiled on the basis of published literature, which includes mainly laboratory experiments, some pilot plant investigations and relatively few full-scale studies of water treatment processes. Consequently:

- Many of the treatments outlined are designed for larger treatment plants and may not necessarily be appropriate for smaller treatment plants or individual type treatment. In these cases, the choice of technology must be made on a case-by-case basis.
- The information is probably "best case," since the data would have been obtained under laboratory conditions or with a carefully controlled plant for the purposes of experimentation.
- Actual process performance will depend on the concentration of the chemical in the raw water and on general raw water quality. For example, chlorination and removal of organic chemicals and pesticides using activated carbon or ozonation will be impaired if there is a high concentration of natural organic matter.

Table 8.13 Treatment achievability for chemicals from industrial sources and human dwellings for which guideline values have been established[a,b]

	Air stripping	Coagulation	Ion exchange	Precipitation softening	Activated carbon	Ozonation	Advanced oxidation	Membranes
Cadmium		+++ <0.002	+++ <0.002	+++ <0.002				+++ <0.002
Mercury		+++ <0.0001		+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001			+++ <0.0001
Benzene	+++ <0.01				+++ <0.01	+++ <0.01		
Carbon tetrachloride	+++ <0.001	+			+++ <0.001			+++ <0.001
1,2-Dichlorobenzene	+++ <0.01				+++ <0.01	+++ <0.01		
1,4-Dichlorobenzene	+++ <0.01				+++ <0.01	+++ <0.01		
1,2-Dichloroethane	+				+++ <0.01	+	++	
1,2-Dichloroethene	+++ <0.01				+++ <0.01	+++ <0.01		
1,4-Dioxane						+++ no data		
Edetic acid (EDTA)					+++ <0.01			
Ethylbenzene	+++ <0.001	+			+++ <0.001	+++ <0.001		
Hexachlorobutadiene					+++ <0.001			
Nitrilotriacetic acid (NTA)					+++ no data			
Pentachlorophenol					+++ <0.0004			
Styrene	+++ <0.02				+++ <0.002			
Tetrachloroethene	+++ <0.001				+++ <0.001			
Toluene	+++ <0.001				+++ <0.001	+++ <0.001	+++ <0.001	
Trichloroethene	+++ <0.02				+++ <0.02	+++ <0.02	+++ <0.02	
Xylenes	+++ <0.005				+++ <0.005		+++ <0.005	

[a] Symbols are as follows:

+	Limited removal
++	50% or more removal
+++	80% or more removal

[b] The table includes only those chemicals for which some treatment data are available. A blank entry in the table indicates either that the process is completely ineffective or that there are no data on the effectiveness of the process. For the most effective process(es), the table indicates the concentration of the chemical, in mg/litre, that should be achievable.

Table 8.14 Treatment achievability for chemicals from agricultural activities for which guideline values have been established[a,b]

	Chlorination	Air stripping	Coagulation	Ion exchange	Activated carbon	Ozonation	Advanced oxidation	Membranes	Biological treatment
Nitrate				+++ <5				+++ <5	+++ <5
Nitrite	+++ <0.1					+++ <0.1	+++ <0.1		
Alachlor					+++ <0.001	++	+++ <0.001	+++ <0.001	
Aldicarb	+++ <0.001				+++ <0.001	+++ <0.001		+++ <0.001	
Aldrin/dieldrin			++		+++ <0.00002	+++ <0.00002		+++ <0.00002	
Atrazine			+		+++ <0.0001	++	+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001	
Carbofuran	+				+++ <0.001			+++ <0.001	
Chlordane					+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001			
Chlorotoluron					+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001			
Cyanazine					+++ <0.0001	+		+++ <0.0001	
2,4-Dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4-D)			+		+++ <0.001	+++ <0.001			
1,2-Dibromo-3-chloropropane		++ <0.001			+++ <0.0001				
1,2-Dibromoethane		+++ <0.0001			+++ <0.0001				
1,2-Dichloropropane (1,2-DCP)					+++ <0.001	+		+++ <0.001	
Dimethoate	+++ <0.001				++	++			
Endrin			+		+++ <0.0002				
Isoproturon	++				+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001	
Lindane					+++ <0.0001	++			
MCPA					+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001			
Mecoprop					+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001			
Methoxychlor			++		+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001			
Metalochlor					+++ <0.0001	++			

continued

Table 8.14 ***Continued***

	Chlorination	Air stripping	Coagulation	Ion exchange	Activated carbon	Ozonation	Advanced oxidation	Membranes	Biological treatment
Simazine	+				+++ <0.0001	++	+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001	
2,4,5-T			++		+++ <0.001	+			
Terbuthylazine (TBA)			+		+++ <0.0001	++			
Trifluralin					+++ <0.0001			+++ <0.0001	

[a] Symbols are as follows:
+ Limited removal
++ 50% or more removal
+++ 80% or more removal

[b] The table includes only those chemicals for which some treatment data are available. A blank entry in the table indicates either that the process is completely ineffective or that there are no data on the effectiveness of the process. For the most effective process(es), the table indicates the concentration of the chemical, in mg/litre, that should be achievable.

- For many contaminants, potentially several different processes could be appropriate, and the choice between processes should be made on the basis of technical complexity and cost, taking into account local circumstances. For example, membrane processes can remove a broad spectrum of chemicals, but simpler and cheaper alternatives are effective for the removal of most chemicals.
- It is normal practice to use a series of unit processes to achieve desired water quality objectives (e.g., coagulation, sedimentation, filtration, GAC, chlorination). Each of these may contribute to the removal of chemicals. It may be technically and

Table 8.15 Treatment achievability for pesticides used in water for public health for which guideline values have been established[a,b]

	Chlorination	Coagulation	Activated carbon	Ozonation	Advanced oxidation	Membranes
DDT and metabolites	+	+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001	+	+++ <0.0001	+++ <0.0001
Pyriproxyfen			+++ <0.001			

[a] Symbols are as follows:
+ Limited removal
+++ 80% or more removal

[b] The table includes only those chemicals for which some treatment data are available. A blank entry in the table indicates either that the process is completely ineffective or that there are no data on the effectiveness of the process. For the most effective process(es), the table indicates the concentration of the chemical, in mg/litre, that should be achievable.

Table 8.16 Treatment achievability for cyanobacterial cells and cyanotoxins for which guideline values have been established[a,b,c]

	Chlorination	Coagulation	Activated carbon	Ozonation	Advanced oxidation	Membranes
Cyanobacterial cells		+++				+++
Cyanotoxins	+++		+++	+++	+++	

[a] Chlorination or ozonation may release cyanotoxins.

[b] +++ = 80% or more removal.

[c] The table includes only those chemicals for which some treatment data are available. A blank entry in the table indicates either that the process is completely ineffective or that there are no data on the effectiveness of the process.

economically advantageous to use a combination of processes (e.g., ozonation plus GAC) to remove particular chemicals.

- The effectiveness of potential processes should be assessed using laboratory or pilot plant tests on the actual raw water concerned. These tests should be of sufficient duration to identify potential seasonal or other temporal variations in contaminant concentrations and process performance.

8.4.2 Chlorination

Chlorination can be achieved by using liquefied chlorine gas, sodium hypochlorite solution or calcium hypochlorite granules and on-site chlorine generators. Liquefied chlorine gas is supplied in pressurized containers. The gas is withdrawn from the cylinder and is dosed into water by a chlorinator, which both controls and measures the gas flow rate. Sodium hypochlorite solution is dosed using a positive-displacement electric dosing pump or gravity feed system. Calcium hypochlorite has to be dissolved in water, then mixed with the main supply. Chlorine, whether in the form of chlorine gas from a cylinder, sodium hypochlorite or calcium hypochlorite, dissolves in water to form hypochlorous acid (HOCl) and hypochlorite ion (OCl^-).

Different techniques of chlorination can be used, including breakpoint chlorination, marginal chlorination and superchlorination/dechlorination. Breakpoint chlorination is a method in which the chlorine dose is sufficient to rapidly oxidize all the ammonia nitrogen in the water and to leave a suitable free residual chlorine available to protect the water against reinfection from the point of chlorination to the point of use. Superchlorination/dechlorination is the addition of a large dose of chlorine to effect rapid disinfection and chemical reaction, followed by reduction of excess free chlorine residual. Removing excess chlorine is important to prevent taste problems. It is used mainly when the bacterial load is variable or the detention time in a tank is not enough. Marginal chlorination is used where water supplies are of high quality and is the simple dosing of chlorine to produce a desired level of free residual chlorine. The chlorine demand in these supplies is very low, and a breakpoint might not even occur.

Chlorination is employed primarily for microbial disinfection. However, chlorine also acts as an oxidant and can remove or assist in the removal of some chemicals – for example, decomposition of easily oxidized pesticides such as aldicarb; oxidation of dissolved species (e.g., manganese(II)) to form insoluble products that can be removed by subsequent filtration; and oxidation of dissolved species to more easily removable forms (e.g., arsenite to arsenate).

A disadvantage of chlorine is its ability to react with natural organic matter to produce THMs and other halogenated DBPs. However, by-product formation may be controlled by optimization of the treatment system.

8.4.3 Ozonation

Ozone is a powerful oxidant and has many uses in water treatment, including oxidation of organic chemicals. Ozone can be used as a primary disinfectant. Ozone gas (O_3) is formed by passing dry air or oxygen through a high-voltage electric field. The resultant ozone-enriched air is dosed directly into the water by means of porous diffusers at the base of baffled contactor tanks. The contactor tanks, typically about 5 m deep, provide 10–20 min of contact time. Dissolution of at least 80% of the applied ozone should be possible, with the remainder contained in the off-gas, which is passed through an ozone destructor and vented to the atmosphere.

The performance of ozonation relies on achieving the desired concentration after a given contact period. For oxidation of organic chemicals, such as a few oxidizable pesticides, a residual of about 0.5 mg/litre after a contact time of up to 20 min is typically used. The doses required to achieve this vary with the type of water but are typically in the range 2–5 mg/litre. Higher doses are needed for untreated waters, because of the ozone demand of the natural background organics.

Ozone reacts with natural organics to increase their biodegradability, measured as assimilable organic carbon. To avoid undesirable bacterial growth in distribution, ozonation is normally used with subsequent treatment, such as filtration or GAC, to remove biodegradable organics, followed by a chlorine residual, since it does not provide a disinfectant residual. Ozone is effective for the degradation of a wide range of pesticides and other organic chemicals.

8.4.4 Other disinfection processes

Other disinfection methods include chloramination, the use of chlorine dioxide, UV radiation and advanced oxidation processes.

Chloramines (monochloramine, dichloramine and "trichloramine," or nitrogen trichloride) are produced by the reaction of aqueous chlorine with ammonia. Monochloramine is the only useful chloramine disinfectant, and conditions employed for chloramination are designed to produce only monochloramine. Monochloramine is a less effective disinfectant than free chlorine, but it is persistent, and it is therefore an attractive secondary disinfectant for the maintenance of a stable distribution system residual.

Although historically chlorine dioxide was not widely used for drinking-water disinfection, it has been used in recent years because of concerns about THM production associated with chlorine disinfection. Typically, chlorine dioxide is generated immediately prior to application by the addition of chlorine gas or an aqueous chlorine solution to aqueous sodium chlorite. Chlorine dioxide decomposes in water to form chlorite and chlorate. As chlorine dioxide does not oxidize bromide (in the absence of sunlight), water treatment with chlorine dioxide will not form bromoform or bromate.

Use of UV radiation in potable water treatment has typically been restricted to small facilities. UV radiation, emitted by a low-pressure mercury arc lamp, is biocidal between wavelengths of 180 and 320 nm. It can be used to inactivate protozoa, bacteria, bacteriophage, yeast, viruses, fungi and algae. Turbidity can inhibit UV disinfection. UV radiation can act as a strong catalyst in oxidation reactions when used in conjunction with ozone.

Processes aimed at generating hydroxyl radicals are known collectively as advanced oxidation processes and can be effective for the destruction of chemicals that are difficult to treat using other methods, such as ozone alone. Chemicals can react either directly with molecular ozone or with the hydroxyl radical ($HO\cdot$), which is a product of the decomposition of ozone in water and is an exceedingly powerful indiscriminate oxidant that reacts readily with a wide range of organic chemicals. The formation of hydroxyl radicals can be encouraged by using ozone at high pH. One advanced oxidation process using ozone plus hydrogen peroxide involves dosing hydrogen peroxide simultaneously with ozone at a rate of approximately 0.4 mg of hydrogen peroxide per litre per mg of ozone dosed per litre (the theoretical optimum ratio for hydroxyl radical production) and bicarbonate.

8.4.5 Filtration

Particulate matter can be removed from raw waters by rapid gravity, horizontal, pressure or slow sand filters. Slow sand filtration is essentially a biological process, whereas the others are physical treatment processes.

Rapid gravity, horizontal and pressure filters can be used for direct filtration of raw water, without pretreatment. Rapid gravity and pressure filters are commonly used to filter water that has been pretreated by coagulation and sedimentation. An alternative process is direct filtration, in which coagulation is added to the water, which then passes directly onto the filter where the precipitated floc (with contaminants) is removed; the application of direct filtration is limited by the available storage within the filter to accommodate solids.

Rapid gravity filters

Rapid gravity sand filters usually consist of open rectangular tanks (usually <100 m^2) containing silica sand (size range 0.5–1.0 mm) to a depth of between 0.6 and 2.0 m. The water flows downwards, and solids become concentrated in the upper layers of the bed. The flow rate is generally in the range 4–20 $m^3/m^2 \cdot h$. Treated water is collected via nozzles in the floor of the filter. The accumulated solids are removed periodically by backwashing with treated water, sometimes preceded by scouring of the sand with air. A dilute sludge that requires disposal is produced.

In addition to single-medium sand filters, dual-media or multimedia filters are used. Such filters incorporate different materials, such that the structure is from coarse to fine as the water passes through the filter. Materials of suitable density are used in order to maintain the segregation of the different layers following backwashing. A common example of a dual-media filter is the anthracite–sand filter, which typically consists of a 0.2-m-deep layer of 1.5-mm anthracite over a 0.6-m-deep layer of silica sand. Anthracite, sand and garnet can be used in multimedia filters. The advantage of dual- and multimedia filters is that there is more efficient use of the whole bed depth for particle retention – the rate of headloss development can be half that of single-medium filters, which can allow higher flow rates without increasing headloss development.

Rapid gravity filters are most commonly used to remove floc from coagulated waters (see section 8.4.7). They may also be used to reduce turbidity (including adsorbed chemicals) and oxidized iron and manganese from raw waters.

Roughing filters

Roughing filters can be applied as pre-filters prior to other processes such as slow sand filters. Roughing filters with coarse gravel or crushed stones as the filter medium can successfully treat water of high turbidity (>50 NTU). The main advantage of roughing filtration is that as the water passes through the filter, particles are removed by both filtration and gravity settling. Horizontal filters can be up to 10 m long and are operated at filtration rates of 0.3–1.0 $m^3/m^2 \cdot h$.

Pressure filters

Pressure filters are sometimes used where it is necessary to maintain head in order to eliminate the need for pumping into supply. The filter bed is enclosed in a cylindrical shell. Small pressure filters, capable of treating up to about 15 m^3/h, can be manufactured in glass-reinforced plastics. Larger pressure filters, up to 4 m in diameter, are manufactured in specially coated steel. Operation and performance are generally as described for the rapid gravity filter, and similar facilities are required for backwashing and disposal of the dilute sludge.

Slow sand filters

Slow sand filters usually consist of tanks containing sand (effective size range 0.15–0.3 mm) to a depth of between 0.5 and 1.5 m. The raw water flows downwards, and turbidity and microorganisms are removed primarily in the top few centimetres of the sand. A biological layer, known as the "schmutzdecke," develops on the surface of the filter and can be effective in removing microorganisms. Treated water is collected in underdrains or pipework at the bottom of the filter. The top few centimetres of sand containing the accumulated solids are removed and replaced periodically. Slow sand filters are operated at a water flow rate of between 0.1 and 0.3 $m^3/m^2 \cdot h$.

Slow sand filters are suitable only for low-turbidity water or water that has been pre-filtered. They are used to remove algae and microorganisms, including protozoa, and, if preceded by microstraining or coarse filtration, to reduce turbidity (including adsorbed chemicals). Slow sand filtration is effective for the removal of organics, including certain pesticides and ammonia.

8.4.6 Aeration

Aeration processes are designed to achieve removal of gases and volatile compounds by air stripping. Oxygen transfer can usually be achieved using a simple cascade or diffusion of air into water, without the need for elaborate equipment. Stripping of gases or volatile compounds, however, may require a specialized plant that provides a high degree of mass transfer from the liquid phase to the gas phase.

For oxygen transfer, cascade or step aerators are designed so that water flows in a thin film to achieve efficient mass transfer. Cascade aeration may introduce a significant headloss; design requirements are between 1 and 3 m to provide a loading of 10–30 $m^3/m^2 \cdot h$. Alternatively, compressed air can be diffused through a system of submerged perforated pipes. These types of aerator are used for oxidation and precipitation of iron and manganese.

Air stripping can be used for removal of volatile organics (e.g., solvents), some taste- and odour-causing compounds and radon. Aeration processes to achieve air stripping need to be much more elaborate to provide the necessary contact between the air and water. The most common technique is cascade aeration, usually in packed towers in which water is allowed to flow in thin films over plastic media with air blown counter-current. The required tower height and diameter are functions of the volatility and concentration of the compounds to be removed and the flow rate.

8.4.7 Chemical coagulation

Chemical coagulation-based treatment is the most common approach for treatment of surface waters and is almost always based on the following unit processes.

Chemical coagulants, usually salts of aluminium or iron, are dosed to the raw water under controlled conditions to form a solid flocculent metal hydroxide. Typical coagulant doses are 2–5 mg/litre as aluminium or 4–10 mg/litre as iron. The precipitated floc removes suspended and dissolved contaminants by mechanisms of charge neutralization, adsorption and entrapment. The efficiency of the coagulation process depends on raw water quality, the coagulant or coagulant aids used and operational factors, including mixing conditions, coagulation dose and pH. The floc is removed from the treated water by subsequent solid–liquid separation processes such as sedimentation or flotation and/or rapid or pressure gravity filtration.

Effective operation of the coagulation process depends on selection of the optimum coagulant dose and also the pH value. The required dose and pH can be determined by using small-scale batch coagulation tests, often termed "jar tests." Increasing doses of coagulant are applied to raw water samples that are stirred, then allowed to settle. The optimum dose is selected as that which achieves adequate removal of colour and turbidity; the optimum pH can be selected in a similar manner. These tests have to be conducted at a sufficient frequency to keep pace with changes in raw water quality and hence coagulant demand.

Powdered activated carbon (PAC) may be dosed during coagulation to adsorb organic chemicals such as some hydrophobic pesticides. The PAC will be removed as an integral fraction of the floc and disposed of with the waterworks sludge.

The floc may be removed by sedimentation to reduce the solids loading to the subsequent rapid gravity filters. Sedimentation is most commonly achieved in horizontal flow or floc blanket clarifiers. Alternatively, floc may be removed by dissolved air flotation, in which solids are contacted with fine bubbles of air that attach to the floc, causing them to float to the surface of the tank, where they are removed periodically as a layer of sludge. The treated water from either process is passed to rapid gravity filters (see section 8.4.5), where remaining solids are removed. Filtered water may be passed to a further stage of treatment, such as additional oxidation and filtration (for removal of manganese), ozonation and/or GAC adsorption (for removal of pesticides and other trace organics), prior to final disinfection before the treated water enters supply.

Coagulation is suitable for removal of certain heavy metals and low-solubility organic chemicals, such as certain organochlorine pesticides. For other organic chemicals, coagulation is generally ineffective, except where the chemical is bound to humic material or adsorbed onto particulates.

8.4.8 Activated carbon adsorption

Activated carbon is produced by the controlled thermalization of carbonaceous material, normally wood, coal, coconut shells or peat. This activation produces a porous material with a large surface area (500–1500 m^2/g) and a high affinity for organic compounds. It is normally used either in powdered (PAC) or in granular (GAC) form. When the adsorption capacity of the carbon is exhausted, it can be reactivated by burning off the organics in a controlled manner. However, PAC (and some GAC) is normally used only once before disposal. Different types of activated carbon have different affinities for types of contaminants.

The choice between PAC and GAC will depend upon the frequency and dose required. PAC would generally be preferred in the case of seasonal or intermittent contamination or where low dosage rates are required.

PAC is dosed as a slurry into the water and is removed by subsequent treatment processes together with the waterworks sludge. Its use is therefore restricted to surface water treatment works with existing filters. GAC in fixed-bed adsorbers is used much more efficiently than PAC dosed into the water, and the effective carbon use per water volume treated would be much lower than the dose of PAC required to achieve the same removal.

GAC is used for taste and odour control. It is normally used in fixed beds, either in purpose-built adsorbers for chemicals or in existing filter shells by replacement of sand with GAC of a similar particle size. Although at most treatment works it would be cheaper to convert existing filters rather than build separate adsorbers, use of existing filters usually allows only short contact times. It is therefore common practice to install additional GAC adsorbers (in some cases preceded by ozonation) between the rapid gravity filters and final disinfection. Most groundwater sources do not have existing filters, and separate adsorbers would need to be installed.

The service life of a GAC bed is dependent on the capacity of the carbon used and the contact time between the water and the carbon, the empty bed contact time (EBCT), controlled by the flow rate of the water. EBCTs are usually in the range 5–30 min. GACs vary considerably in their capacity for specific organic compounds, which can have a considerable effect upon their service life. A guide to capacity can be obtained from published isotherm data. Carbon capacity is strongly dependent on the water source and is greatly reduced by the presence of background organic compounds. The properties of a chemical that influence its adsorption onto activated carbon include the water solubility and octanol/water partition coefficient ($\log K_{ow}$). As a general rule, chemicals with low solubility and high $\log K_{ow}$ are well adsorbed.

Activated carbon is used for the removal of pesticides and other organic chemicals, taste and odour compounds, cyanobacterial toxins and total organic carbon.

8.4.9 Ion exchange

Ion exchange is a process in which ions of like charge are exchanged between the water phase and the solid resin phase. Water softening is achieved by cation exchange. Water is passed through a bed of cationic resin, and the calcium ions and magnesium ions in the water are replaced by sodium ions. When the ion exchange resin is exhausted (i.e., the sodium ions are depleted), it is regenerated using a solution of sodium chloride. The process of "dealkalization" can also soften water. Water is passed through a bed of weakly acidic resin, and the calcium and magnesium ions are replaced by hydrogen ions. The hydrogen ions react with the carbonate and bicarbonate ions to produce carbon dioxide. The hardness of the water is thus reduced without any increase in sodium levels. Anion exchange can be used to remove contaminants such as nitrate, which is exchanged for chloride. Nitrate-specific resins are available for this purpose.

An ion exchange plant normally consists of two or more resin beds contained in pressure shells with appropriate pumps, pipework and ancillary equipment for regeneration. The pressure shells are typically up to 4 m in diameter, containing 0.6–1.5 m depth of resin.

Cation exchange can be used for removal of certain heavy metals. Potential applications of anionic resins, in addition to nitrate removal, are for removal of arsenic and selenium species.

8.4.10 Membrane processes

The membrane processes of most significance in water treatment are reverse osmosis, ultrafiltration, microfiltration and nanofiltration. These processes have traditionally been applied to the production of water for industrial or pharmaceutical applications but are now being applied to the treatment of drinking-water.

High-pressure processes

If two solutions are separated by a semi-permeable membrane (i.e., a membrane that allows the passage of the solvent but not of the solute), the solvent will naturally pass from the lower-concentration solution to the higher-concentration solution. This process is known as osmosis. It is possible, however, to force the flow of solvent in the opposite direction, from the higher to the lower concentration, by increasing the pressure on the higher-concentration solution. The required pressure differential is known as the osmotic pressure, and the process is known as reverse osmosis.

Reverse osmosis results in the production of a treated water stream and a relatively concentrated waste stream. Typical operating pressures are in the range 15–50 bar, depending on the application. Reverse osmosis rejects monovalent ions and organics of molecular weight greater than about 50 (membrane pore sizes are less than 0.002 μm). The most common application of reverse osmosis is desalination of brackish water and seawater.

Nanofiltration uses a membrane with properties between those of reverse osmosis and ultrafiltration membranes; pore sizes are typically 0.001–0.01 μm. Nanofiltration membranes allow monovalent ions such as sodium or potassium to pass but reject a high proportion of divalent ions such as calcium and magnesium and organic molecules of molecular weight greater than 200. Operating pressures are typically about 5 bar. Nanofiltration may be effective for the removal of colour and organic compounds.

Lower-pressure processes

Ultrafiltration is similar in principle to reverse osmosis, but the membranes have much larger pore sizes (typically 0.002–0.03 μm) and operate at lower pressures. Ultrafiltration membranes reject organic molecules of molecular weight above about 800 and usually operate at pressures less than 5 bar.

Microfiltration is a direct extension of conventional filtration into the submicrometre range. Microfiltration membranes have pore sizes typically in the range 0.01–12 μm and do not separate molecules but reject colloidal and suspended material at operating pressures of 1–2 bar. Microfiltration is capable of sieving out particles greater than 0.05 μm. It has been used for water treatment in combination with coagulation or PAC to remove dissolved organic carbon and to improve permeate flux.

8.4.11 Other treatment processes

Other treatment processes that can be used in certain applications include:

- precipitation softening (addition of lime, lime plus sodium carbonate or sodium hydroxide to precipitate hardness at high pH);
- biological denitrification for removal of nitrate from surface waters;
- biological nitrification for removal of ammonia from surface waters; and
- activated alumina (or other adsorbents) for specialized applications, such as removal of fluoride and arsenic.

8.4.12 Disinfection by-products – process control measures

In attempting to control DBP concentrations, it is of paramount importance that the efficiency of disinfection is not compromised and that a suitable residual level of disinfectant is maintained throughout the distribution system.

All chemical disinfectants produce inorganic and/or organic DBPs that may be of concern.

The principal DBPs formed during chlorination are THMs, chlorinated acetic acids, chlorinated ketones and haloacetonitriles, as a result of chlorination of naturally occurring organic precursors such as humic substances. Monochloramine produces lower THM concentrations than chlorine but produces other DBPs, including cyanogen chloride.

Ozone oxidizes bromide to produce hypohalous acids, which react with precursors to form brominated THMs. A range of other DBPs, including aldehydes and carboxylic acids, may also be formed. Of particular concern is bromate, formed by oxidation of bromide. Bromate may also be present in some sources of hypochlorite, but usually at concentrations that will give rise to levels in final water that are below the guideline value.

The main by-products from the use of chlorine dioxide are chlorite ion, which is an inevitable decomposition product, and chlorate ion. Chlorate is also produced in hypochlorate as it ages.

The basic strategies that can be adopted for reducing the concentrations of DBPs are:

- changing process conditions (including removal of precursor compounds prior to application);
- using a different chemical disinfectant with a lower propensity to produce by-products with the source water;
- using non-chemical disinfection; and/or
- removing DBPs prior to distribution.

Changes to process conditions

The formation of THMs during chlorination can be reduced by removing precursors prior to contact with chlorine – for example, by installing or enhancing coagulation (this may involve using higher coagulant doses and/or lower coagulation pH than are applied conventionally). DBP formation can also be reduced by lowering the applied chlorine dose; if this is done, it must be ensured that disinfection is still effective.

The pH value during chlorination affects the distribution of chlorinated by-products. Reducing the pH lowers the THM concentration, but at the expense of increased formation of haloacetic acids. Conversely, increasing the pH reduces haloacetic acid production but leads to increased THM formation.

The formation of bromate during ozonation depends on several factors, including concentrations of bromide and ozone and the pH. It is not practicable to remove bromide from raw water, and it is difficult to remove bromate once formed, although GAC filtration has been reported to be effective under certain circumstances. Bromate formation can be minimized by using lower ozone dose, shorter contact time and a lower residual ozone concentration. Operating at lower pH (e.g., pH 6.5) followed by raising the pH after ozonation also reduces bromate formation, and addition of ammonia can also be effective. Addition of hydrogen peroxide can increase or decrease bromate formation.

Changing disinfectants

It may be feasible to change disinfectant in order to achieve guideline values for DBPs. The extent to which this is possible will be dependent on raw water quality and installed treatment (e.g., for precursor removal).

It may be effective to change from chlorine to monochloramine, at least to provide a residual disinfectant within distribution, in order to reduce THM formation and subsequent development within the distribution system. While monochloramine provides a more stable residual within distribution, it is a less powerful disinfectant and should not be used as a primary disinfectant.

Chlorine dioxide can be considered as a potential alternative to both chlorine and ozone disinfection, although it does not provide a residual effect. The main concerns with chlorine dioxide are with the residual concentrations of chlorine dioxide and the by-products chlorite and chlorate. These can be addressed by controlling the dose of chlorine dioxide at the treatment plant.

Non-chemical disinfection

UV irradiation or membrane processes can be considered as alternatives to chemical disinfection. Neither of these provides any residual disinfection, and it may be considered appropriate to add a small dose of a persistent disinfectant such as chlorine or monochloramine to act as a preservative during distribution.

Removing DBPs prior to distribution

It is technically feasible to remove DBPs prior to distribution; however, this is the least attractive option for controlling DBP concentrations. Feasible processes include air stripping to remove volatile DBPs such as THMs or adsorption onto activated carbon. These processes would need to be followed by a further disinfection step to guard against microbial contamination and to ensure a residual concentration of disinfectant within distribution.

8.4.13 Treatment for corrosion control

General

Corrosion is the partial dissolution of the materials constituting the treatment and supply systems, tanks, pipes, valves and pumps. It may lead to structural failure, leaks, loss of capacity and deterioration of chemical and microbial water quality. The internal corrosion of pipes and fittings can have a direct impact on the concentration of some water constituents, including lead and copper. Corrosion control is therefore an important aspect of the management of a drinking-water system for safety.

Corrosion control involves many parameters, including the concentrations of calcium, bicarbonate, carbonate and dissolved oxygen, as well as pH. The detailed requirements differ depending on water quality and the materials used in the distribution system. The pH controls the solubility and rate of reaction of most of the metal species involved in corrosion reactions. It is particularly important in relation to the formation of a protective film at the metal surface. For some metals, alkalinity (carbonate and bicarbonate) and calcium (hardness) also affect corrosion rates.

Iron

Iron is frequently used in water distribution systems, and its corrosion is of concern. While structural failure as a result of iron corrosion is rare, water quality problems (e.g., "red water") can arise as a result of excessive corrosion of iron pipes. The corrosion of iron is a complex process that involves the oxidation of the metal, normally by dissolved oxygen, ultimately to form a precipitate of iron(III). This leads to the formation of tubercules on the pipe surface. The major water quality factors that determine whether the precipitate forms a protective scale are pH and alkalinity. The concentrations of calcium, chloride and sulfate also influence iron corrosion. Successful control of iron corrosion has been achieved by adjusting the pH to the range 6.8–7.3, hardness and alkalinity to at least 40 mg/litre (as calcium carbonate), oversaturation with calcium carbonate of 4–10 mg/litre and a ratio of alkalinity to $Cl^- + SO_4^{2-}$ of at least 5 (when both are expressed as calcium carbonate).

Silicates and polyphosphates are often described as "corrosion inhibitors," but there is no guarantee that they will inhibit corrosion in water distribution systems. However, they can complex dissolved iron (in the iron(II) state) and prevent its precipitation as visibly obvious red "rust." These compounds may act by masking the effects of corrosion rather than by preventing it. Orthophosphate is a possible corrosion inhibitor and, like polyphosphates, is used to prevent "red water."

Lead

Lead corrosion (plumbosolvency) is of particular concern. Lead piping is still common in old houses in some countries, and lead solders have been used widely for jointing copper tube. The solubility of lead is governed by the formation of lead carbonates as pipe deposits. Wherever practicable, lead pipework should be replaced.

The solubility of lead increases markedly as the pH is reduced below 8 because of the substantial decrease in the equilibrium carbonate concentration. Thus, plumbosolvency tends to be at a maximum in waters with a low pH and low alkalinity, and a useful interim control procedure pending pipe replacement is to increase the pH to 8.0–8.5 after chlorination, and possibly to dose orthophosphate.

Lead can corrode more rapidly when it is coupled to copper. The rate of such galvanic corrosion is faster than that of simple oxidative corrosion, and lead concentrations are not limited by the solubility of the corrosion products. The rate of galvanic corrosion is affected principally by chloride concentration. Galvanic corrosion is less easily controlled but can be reduced by dosing zinc in conjunction with orthophosphate and by adjustment of pH.

Treatment to reduce plumbosolvency usually involves pH adjustment. When the water is very soft (less than 50 mg of calcium carbonate per litre), the optimum pH is about 8.0–8.5. Alternatively, dosing with orthophosphoric acid or sodium orthophosphate might be more effective, particularly when plumbosolvency occurs in non-acidic waters.

Copper

The corrosion of copper pipework and hot water cylinders can cause blue water, blue or green staining of bathroom fittings and, occasionally, taste problems. Copper tubing may be subject to general corrosion, impingement attack and pitting corrosion.

General corrosion is most often associated with soft, acidic waters; waters with pH below 6.5 and hardness of less than 60 mg of calcium carbonate per litre are very aggressive to copper. Copper, like lead, can enter water by dissolution of the corrosion product, basic copper carbonate. The solubility is mainly a function of pH and total inorganic carbon. Solubility decreases with increase in pH, but increases with increase in concentrations of carbonate species. Raising the pH to between 8 and 8.5 is the usual procedure to overcome these difficulties.

Impingement attack is the result of excessive flow velocities and is aggravated in soft water at high temperature and low pH.

The pitting of copper is commonly associated with hard groundwaters having a carbon dioxide concentration above 5 mg/litre and high dissolved oxygen. Surface waters with organic colour may also be associated with pitting corrosion. Copper pipes can fail by pitting corrosion, which involves highly localized attacks leading to perforations with negligible loss of metal. Two main types of attack are recognized. Type I pitting affects cold water systems (below 40 °C) and is associated, particularly, with hard borehole waters and the presence of a carbon film in the bore of the pipe, derived from the manufacturing process. Tubes that have had the carbon removed by cleaning are immune from Type I pitting. Type II pitting occurs in hot water systems (above 60 °C) and is associated with soft waters. A high proportion of general and pitting corrosion problems are associated with new pipe in which a protective oxide layer has not yet formed.

Brass

The main corrosion problem with brasses is dezincification, which is the selective dissolution of zinc from duplex brass, leaving behind copper as a porous mass of low mechanical strength. Meringue dezincification, in which a voluminous corrosion product of basic zinc carbonate forms on the brass surface, largely depends on the ratio of chloride to alkalinity. Meringue dezincification can be controlled by maintaining a low zinc to copper ratio (1 : 3 or lower) and by keeping pH below 8.3.

General dissolution of brass can also occur, releasing metals, including lead, into the water. Impingement attack can occur under conditions of high water velocity with waters that form poorly protective corrosion product layers and that contain large amounts of dissolved or entrained air.

Zinc

The solubility of zinc in water is a function of pH and total inorganic carbon concentrations; the solubility of basic zinc carbonate decreases with increase in pH and concentrations of carbonate species. For low-alkalinity waters, an increase of pH to 8.5 should be sufficient to control the dissolution of zinc.

With galvanized iron, the zinc layer initially protects the steel by corroding preferentially. In the long term, a protective deposit of basic zinc carbonate forms. Protective deposits do not form in soft waters where the alkalinity is less than 50 mg/litre as calcium carbonate or waters containing high carbon dioxide concentrations (>25 mg/litre as carbon dioxide), and galvanized steel is unsuitable for these waters. The corrosion of galvanized steel increases when it is coupled with copper tubing.

Nickel

Nickel may arise due to the leaching of nickel from new nickel/chromium-plated taps. Low concentrations may also arise from stainless steel pipes and fittings. Nickel leaching falls off over time. An increase of pH to control corrosion of other materials should also reduce leaching of nickel.

Concrete and cement

Concrete is a composite material consisting of a cement binder in which an inert aggregate is embedded. Cement is primarily a mixture of calcium silicates and aluminates together with some free lime. Cement mortar, in which the aggregate is fine sand, is used as a protective lining in iron and steel water pipes. In asbestos–cement pipe, the aggregate is asbestos fibres. Cement is subject to deterioration on prolonged exposure to aggressive water, due either to the dissolution of lime and other soluble compounds or to chemical attack by aggressive ions such as chloride or sulfate, and this may result in structural failure. Cement contains a variety of metals that can be leached into the water. Aggressiveness to cement is related to the "aggressivity index," which has been used specifically to assess the potential for the dissolution of concrete. A pH of 8.5 or higher may be necessary to control cement corrosion.

Characterizing corrosivity

Most of the indices that have been developed to characterize the corrosion potential of waters are based on the assumption that water with a tendency to deposit a calcium carbonate scale on metal surfaces will be less corrosive. The Langelier Index (LI) is the difference between the actual pH of a water and its "saturation pH," this being the pH at which a water of the same alkalinity and calcium hardness would be at equilibrium with solid calcium carbonate. Waters with positive LI are capable of depositing calcium carbonate scale from solution.

There is no corrosion index that applies to all materials, and corrosion indices, particularly those related to calcium carbonate saturation, have given mixed results. The parameters related to calcium carbonate saturation status are, strictly speaking, indicators of the tendency to deposit or dissolve calcium carbonate (calcite) scale, not indicators of the "corrosivity" of a water. For example, there are many waters with negative LI that are non-corrosive and many with positive LI that are corrosive. Nevertheless, there are many documented instances of the use of saturation indices for corrosion control based on the concept of laying down a protective "eggshell" scale of calcite in iron pipes. In general, waters with high pH, calcium and alkalinity are less corrosive, and this tends to be correlated with a positive LI.

The ratio of the chloride and sulfate concentrations to the bicarbonate concentration (Larson ratio) has been shown to be helpful in assessing the corrosiveness of water to cast iron and steel. A similar approach has been used in studying zinc dissolution from brass fittings – the Turner diagram.

Water treatment for corrosion control

To control corrosion in water distribution networks, the methods most commonly applied are adjusting pH, increasing the alkalinity and/or hardness or adding corrosion inhibitors, such as polyphosphates, silicates and orthophosphates. The quality and maximum dose to be used should be in line with specifications for such water treatment chemicals. Although pH adjustment is an important approach, its possible impact on other aspects of water supply technology, including disinfection, must always be taken into account.

It is not always possible to achieve the desired values for all parameters. For example, the pH of hard waters cannot be increased too much, or softening will occur. The application of lime and carbon dioxide to soft waters can be used to increase both the calcium concentration and the alkalinity to at least 40 mg/litre as calcium carbonate.

8.5 Guideline values for individual chemicals, by source category

8.5.1 Naturally occurring chemicals

There are a number of sources of naturally occurring chemicals in drinking-water. All natural water contains a range of inorganic and organic chemicals. The former derive from the rocks and soil through which water percolates or over which it flows. The latter derive from the breakdown of plant material or from algae and other microorganisms that grow in the water or on sediments. Most of the naturally occurring chemicals for which guideline values have been derived or that have been considered for guideline value derivation are inorganic. Only one, microcystin-LR, a toxin produced by cyanobacteria or blue-green algae, is organic; it is discussed in section 8.5.6.

The approach to dealing with naturally occurring chemicals will vary according to the nature of the chemical and the source. For inorganic contaminants that arise from rocks and sediments, it is important to screen possible water sources to determine whether the source is suitable for use or whether it will be necessary to treat the water to remove the contaminants of concern along with microbial contaminants. In some cases, where a number of sources may be available, dilution or blending of the water containing high levels of a contaminant with a water containing much lower levels may achieve the desired result.

A number of the most important chemical contaminants (i.e., those that have been shown to cause adverse health effects as a consequence of exposure through drinking-water) fall into the category of naturally occurring chemicals. Some naturally occurring chemicals have other primary sources and are therefore discussed in other sections of this chapter.

Guideline values have not been established for the chemicals listed in Table 8.17 for the reasons indicated in the table. Summary statements are included in chapter 12.

Guideline values have been established for the chemicals listed in Table 8.18, which meet the criteria for inclusion. Summary statements are included for each in chapter 12.

8.5.2 Chemicals from industrial sources and human dwellings

Chemicals from industrial sources can reach drinking-water directly from discharges or indirectly from diffuse sources arising from the use and disposal of materials and products containing the chemical. In some cases, inappropriate handling and disposal may lead to contamination, e.g., degreasing agents that are allowed to reach ground-

Table 8.17 Naturally occurring chemicals for which guideline values have not been established

Chemical	Reason for not establishing a guideline value	Remarks
Chloride	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur	May affect acceptability of drinking-water (see chapter 10)
Hardness	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur	May affect acceptability of drinking-water (see chapter 10)
Hydrogen sulfide	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well belowthose at which toxic effects may occur	May affect acceptability of drinking-water (see chapter 10)
pH	Values in drinking-water are well below those at which toxic effects may occur	An important operational water quality parameter
Sodium	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur	May affect acceptability of drinking-water (see chapter 10)
Sulfate	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur	May affect acceptability of drinking-water (see chapter 10)
Total dissolved solids (TDS)	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur	May affect acceptability of drinking-water (see chapter 10)

Table 8.18 Guideline values for naturally occurring chemicals that are of health significance in drinking-water

Chemical	Guideline value[a] (mg/litre)	Remarks
Arsenic	0.01 (P)	
Barium	0.7	
Boron	0.5 (T)	
Chromium	0.05 (P)	For total chromium
Fluoride	1.5	Volume of water consumed and intake from other sources should be considered when setting national standards
Manganese	0.4 (C)	
Molybdenum	0.07	
Selenium	0.01	
Uranium	0.015 (P, T)	Only chemical aspects of uranium addressed

[a] P = provisional guideline value, as there is evidence of a hazard, but the available information on health effects is limited; T = provisional guideline value because calculated guideline value is below the level that can be achieved through practical treatment methods, source protection, etc.; C = concentrations of the substance at or below the health-based guideline value may affect the appearance, taste or odour of the water, resulting in consumer complaints.

water. Some of these chemicals, particularly inorganic substances, may also be encountered as a consequence of natural contamination, but this may also be a by-product of industrial activity, such as mining, that changes drainage patterns. Many of these chemicals are used in small industrial units within human settlements, and, particularly where such units are found in groups of similar enterprises, they may be a significant source of pollution. Petroleum oils are widely used in human settlements, and improper handling or disposal can lead to significant pollution of surface water and groundwater. Where plastic pipes are used, the smaller aromatic molecules in petroleum oils can sometimes penetrate the pipes where they are surrounded by earth soaked in the oil, with subsequent pollution of the local water supply.

A number of chemicals can reach water as a consequence of disposal of general household chemicals; in particular, a number of heavy metals may be found in domestic wastewater. Where wastewater is treated, these will usually partition out into the sludge. Some chemicals that are widely used both in industry and in materials used in a domestic setting are found widely in the environment, e.g., di(2-ethylhexyl)phthalate, and these may be found in water sources, although usually at low concentrations.

Some chemicals that reach drinking-water from industrial sources or human settlements have other primary sources and are therefore discussed in other sections of this chapter. Where latrines and septic tanks are poorly sited, these can lead to contamination of drinking-water sources with nitrate (see section 8.5.3).

Identification of the potential for contamination by chemicals from industrial activities and human dwellings requires assessment of activities in the catchment and of the risk that particular contaminants may reach water sources. The primary approach to addressing these contaminants is prevention of contamination by encouraging good practices. However, if contamination has occurred, then it may be necessary to consider the introduction of treatment.

Table 8.19 Chemicals from industrial sources and human dwellings excluded from guideline value derivation

Chemical	Reason for exclusion
Beryllium	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water

The chemical listed in Table 8.19 has been excluded from guideline value derivation, as a review of the literature on occurrence and/or credibility of occurrence in drinking-water has shown evidence that it does not occur in drinking-water.

Guideline values have not been established for the chemicals listed in Table 8.20 for the reasons indicated in the table. Summary statements for each are included in chapter 12.

Guideline values have been established for the chemicals listed in Table 8.21, which meet all of the criteria for inclusion. Summary statements are included in chapter 12.

8.5.3 Chemicals from agricultural activities

Chemicals are used in agriculture on crops and in animal husbandry. Nitrate may be present as a consequence of tillage when there is no growth to take up nitrate released from decomposing plants, from the application of excess inorganic or organic fertilizer and in slurry from animal production. Most chemicals that may arise from agri-

Table 8.20 Chemicals from industrial sources and human dwellings for which guideline values have not been established

Chemical	Reason for not establishing a guideline value
Dichlorobenzene, 1,3-	Toxicological data are insufficient to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Dichloroethane, 1,1-	Very limited database on toxicity and carcinogenicity
Dichloroethene, 1,1-	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Di(2-ethylhexyl)adipate	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Hexachlorobenzene	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Methyl *tertiary*-butyl ether (MTBE)	Any guideline that would be derived would be significantly higher than concentrations at which MTBE would be detected by odour
Monochlorobenzene	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur, and health-based value would far exceed lowest reported taste and odour threshold
Petroleum products	Taste and odour will in most cases be detectable at concentrations below those concentrations of concern for health, particularly with short-term exposure
Trichlorobenzenes (total)	Occur in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur, and health-based value would exceed lowest reported odour threshold
Trichloroethane, 1,1,1-	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur

culture are pesticides, although their presence will depend on many factors, and not all pesticides are used in all circumstances or climates. Contamination can result from application and subsequent movement following rainfall or from inappropriate disposal methods.

Some pesticides are also used in non-agricultural circumstances, such as the control of weeds on roads and railway lines. These pesticides are also included in this section.

Table 8.21 Guideline values for chemicals from industrial sources and human dwellings that are of health significance in drinking-water

Inorganics	Guideline value (mg/litre)	Remarks
Cadmium	0.003	
Cyanide	0.07	
Mercury	0.006	For inorganic mercury
Organics	**Guideline value[a] (μg/litre)**	**Remarks**
Benzene	10[b]	
Carbon tetrachloride	4	
Di(2-ethylhexyl)phthalate	8	
Dichlorobenzene, 1,2-	1000 (C)	
Dichlorobenzene, 1,4-	300 (C)	
Dichloroethane, 1,2-	30[b]	
Dichloroethene, 1,2-	50	
Dichloromethane	20	
Dioxane, 1,4-	50[b]	
Edetic acid (EDTA)	600	Applies to the free acid
Ethylbenzene	300 (C)	
Hexachlorobutadiene	0.6	
Nitrilotriacetic acid (NTA)	200	
Pentachlorophenol	9[b] (P)	
Styrene	20 (C)	
Tetrachloroethene	40	
Toluene	700 (C)	
Trichloroethene	20 (P)	
Xylenes	500 (C)	

[a] P = provisional guideline value, as there is evidence of a hazard, but the available information on health effects is limited; C = concentrations of the substance at or below the health-based guideline value may affect the appearance, taste or odour of the water, leading to consumer complaints.

[b] For non-threshold substances, the guideline value is the concentration in drinking-water associated with an upper-bound excess lifetime cancer risk of 10^{-5} (one additional cancer per 100 000 of the population ingesting drinking-water containing the substance at the guideline value for 70 years). Concentrations associated with estimated upper-bound excess lifetime cancer risks of 10^{-4} and 10^{-6} can be calculated by multiplying and dividing, respectively, the guideline value by 10.

Guideline values have not been established for the chemicals listed in Table 8.22, as a review of the literature on occurrence and/or credibility of occurrence in drinking-water has shown evidence that the chemicals do not occur in drinking-water.

Guideline values have not been established for the chemicals listed in Table 8.23 for the reasons indicated in the table. Summary statements are included in chapter 12.

Guideline values have been established for the chemicals listed in Table 8.24, which meet the criteria for inclusion. Summary statements are included in chapter 12.

8.5.4 Chemicals used in water treatment or from materials in contact with drinking-water

Chemicals used in water treatment and chemicals arising from materials in contact with water may give rise to contaminants in the final water.

Table 8.22 Chemicals from agricultural activities excluded from guideline value derivation

Chemical	Reason for exclusion
Amitraz	Degrades rapidly in the environment and is not expected to occur at measurable concentrations in drinking-water supplies
Chlorobenzilate	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Chlorothalonil	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Cypermethrin	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Deltamethrin	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Diazinon	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Dinoseb	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Ethylene thiourea	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Fenamiphos	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Formothion	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Hexachlorocyclohexanes (mixed isomers)	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
MCPB	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Methamidophos	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Methomyl	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Mirex	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Monocrotophos	Has been withdrawn from use in many countries and is unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Oxamyl	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Phorate	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Propoxur	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Pyridate	Not persistent and only rarely found in drinking-water
Quintozene	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Toxaphene	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Triazophos	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Tributyltin oxide	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water
Trichlorfon	Unlikely to occur in drinking-water

Some substances are deliberately added to water in the course of treatment (direct additives), some of which may be inadvertently retained in the finished water (e.g., salts, coagulant polymer residues or monomers). Chloramine and chlorine disinfectant residuals, for example, are deliberate additives, and their presence confers a benefit. Others, such as DBPs, are generated during chemical interactions between disinfectant chemicals and substances normally in water (see Table 8.25). Chlorination by-products and other DBPs may also occur in swimming pools, from which exposure by inhalation and skin absorption will be of greater importance (WHO, 2000).

Other chemicals, such as lead or copper from pipes or brass taps and chemicals leaching from coatings, may be taken up from contact with surfaces during treatment or distribution (indirect additives).

Some chemicals used in water treatment (e.g., fluoride) or in materials in contact with drinking-water (e.g., styrene) have other principal sources and are therefore discussed in detail in other sections of this chapter.

Many of these additives, both direct and indirect, are components of processes for producing safe drinking-water. The approach to monitoring and management is preferably through control of the material or chemical. It is important to optimize treatment processes and to ensure that such processes remain optimized in order to control residuals of chemicals used in treatment and to control the formation of DBPs. Inadvertent contamination caused by poor quality materials is best controlled by applying specifications governing the composition of the products themselves rather than by setting limits on the quality of finished water, whereas contamination due to the inappropriate use of additives can be addressed by guidance on use. Similarly, regulations on the quality of pipe can avoid possible contamination of water by leachable materials. Control of contamination from *in situ* applied coatings requires suitable codes of practice on their application in addition to controls on the composition of materials.

Numerous national and third-party evaluation and approval systems for additives exist throughout the world; however, many countries do not have or operate such systems. Governments and other organizations should consider establishing or adapting additive management systems and setting product quality standards and guidance on use that would apply to determining acceptable water contact products. Ideally, harmonized standards between countries or reciprocal recognition would reduce costs and increase access to such standards (see also section 1.2.9).

Guideline values have not been established for the chemicals listed in Table 8.26 for the reasons indicated in the table. Summary statements are included in chapter 12.

Table 8.23 Chemicals from agricultural activities for which guideline values have not been established

Chemical	Reason for not establishing a guideline value
Ammonia	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Bentazone	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Dichloropropane, 1,3-	Data insufficient to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Diquat	Rarely found in drinking-water, but may be used as an aquatic herbicide for the control of free-floating and submerged aquatic weeds in ponds, lakes and irrigation ditches
Endosulfan	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Fenitrothion	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Glyphosate and AMPA	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Heptachlor and heptachlor epoxide	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Malathion	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Methyl parathion	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Parathion	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Permethrin	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Phenylphenol, 2- and its sodium salt	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Propanil	Readily transformed into metabolites that are more toxic; a guideline value for the parent compound is considered inappropriate, and there are inadequate data to enable the derivation of guideline values for the metabolites

Guideline values have been established for the chemicals listed in Table 8.27, which meet the criteria for inclusion. Summary statements are included in chapter 12.

Indicator substances for monitoring chlorination by-products

Although guidelines have been established for a number of chlorination by-products, data from drinking-water supplies indicate that THMs and HAAs are adequate as indicators of the majority of chlorination by-products. The most appropriate means of controlling chlorination by-products is to remove the organic precursors, which are largely of natural origin. Measurement of THMs and, if appropriate, HAAs (e.g., where water is chlorinated at a low pH) can be used to optimize treatment efficiency and to establish the boundaries of other operational parameters that can be used to monitor treatment performance. In these circumstances, monitoring frequencies of other chlorination by-products can be reduced. Although total organohalogen (TOX) does not correlate well with either THMs or HAAs, it does correlate with total chlorination by-products and may be another potential indicator.

In all circumstances, disinfection efficiency should not be compromised in trying to meet guidelines for DBPs, including chlorination by-products, or in trying to reduce concentrations of these substances.

Contaminants from storage and generation of hypochlorite solutions

Sodium hypochlorite solutions slowly decompose — more rapidly at warmer temperatures — to produce chlorate and chlorite ions. As the solution ages and the available chlorine concentration decreases, it is necessary to dose more product to achieve the desired residual chlorine concentration, with a consequent increase in the amounts of chlorate and chlorite added to the treated water. The decomposition of solid calcium hypochlorite is much slower, and consequently contamination is less likely to be significant. However, if calcium hypochlorite solutions are prepared and stored before use, then decomposition to form chlorate and chlorite would also occur.

Sodium hypochlorite is manufactured by electrolysing sodium chloride, which naturally contains small concentrations of sodium bromide. This results in the presence of bromate in the sodium hypochlorite solution. This will contribute bromate to the treated water. The quality and acceptability of sodium hypochlorite will partly be a function of the bromate residue concentration. Industrial-grade product may not be acceptable for drinking-water applications. The sodium bromide present in sodium chloride will also be oxidized to form bromate in systems using on-site electrochemical generation of hypochlorite.

Contaminants from use of ozone and chlorine dioxide

The use of ozone can lead to elevated bromate concentrations through oxidation of bromide present in the water. As a general rule, the higher the water bromide concentration, the more bromate is produced.

Chlorine dioxide solutions can contain chlorate as a result of reactions that compete with the desired reaction for generation of chlorine dioxide. Chlorite ion is an inevitable decomposition product from the use of chlorine dioxide; typically, 60–70% of the applied dose is converted to chlorite in the treated water.

8.5.5 Pesticides used in water for public health purposes

Some pesticides are used for public health purposes, including the addition to water to control the aquatic larval stages of insects of public health significance (e.g., mosquitos for the control of malaria and typhus). There are currently four insecticide compounds and a bacterial larvicide recommended by WHO (under WHOPES) for addition to drinking-water as larvicides: temephos, methoprene, pyriproxyfen, permethrin and *Bacillus thuringiensis israelensis.* Of these, only pyriproxyfen has been reviewed to date. Other insecticides that are not recommended for addition to water for public health purposes by WHOPES but may be used in some countries as aquatic larvicides, or have been used as such in the past, include chlorpyrifos and DDT.

Table 8.24 Guideline values for chemicals from agricultural activities that are of health significance in drinking-water

Non-pesticides	Guideline value[a] (mg/litre)	Remarks
Nitrate (as NO_3^-)	50	Short-term exposure
Nitrite (as NO_2^-)	3	Short-term exposure
	0.2 (P)	Long-term exposure

Pesticides used in agriculture	Guideline value[a] (μg/litre)	Remarks
Alachlor	20[b]	
Aldicarb	10	Applies to aldicarb sulfoxide and aldicarb sulfone
Aldrin and dieldrin	0.03	For combined aldrin plus dieldrin
Atrazine	2	
Carbofuran	7	
Chlordane	0.2	
Chlorotoluron	30	
Cyanazine	0.6	
2,4-D (2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid)	30	Applies to free acid
2,4-DB	90	
1,2-Dibromo-3-chloropropane	1[b]	
1,2-Dibromoethane	0.4[b] (P)	
1,2-Dichloropropane (1,2-DCP)	40 (P)	
1,3-Dichloropropene	20[b]	
Dichlorprop	100	
Dimethoate	6	
Endrin	0.6	
Fenoprop	9	
Isoproturon	9	
Lindane	2	
MCPA	2	
Mecoprop	10	
Methoxychlor	20	
Metolachlor	10	
Molinate	6	
Pendimethalin	20	
Simazine	2	
2,4,5-T	9	
Terbuthylazine	7	
Trifluralin	20	

[a] P = provisional guideline value, as there is evidence of a hazard, but the available information on health effects is limited.

[b] For substances that are considered to be carcinogenic, the guideline value is the concentration in drinking-water associated with an upper-bound excess lifetime cancer risk of 10^{-5} (one additional cancer per 100 000 of the population ingesting drinking-water containing the substance at the guideline value for 70 years). Concentrations associated with estimated upper-bound excess lifetime cancer risks of 10^{-4} and 10^{-6} can be calculated by multiplying and dividing, respectively, the guideline value by 10.

In considering those pesticides that may be added to water used for drinking-water for purposes of protection of public health, every effort should be made not to develop guidelines that are unnecessarily stringent as to impede their use. This approach enables a suitable balance to be achieved between the protection of drinking-water

Table 8.25 Disinfection by-products present in disinfected waters (from IPCS, 2000)

Disinfectant	Significant organohalogen products	Significant inorganic products	Significant non-halogenated products
Chlorine/ hypochlorous acid	THMs, haloacetic acids, haloacetonitriles, chloral hydrate, chloropicrin, chlorophenols, *N*-chloramines, halofuranones, bromohydrins	chlorate (mostly from hypochlorite use)	aldehydes, cyanoalkanoic acids, alkanoic acids, benzene, carboxylic acids
Chlorine dioxide		chlorite, chlorate	unknown
Chloramine	haloacetonitriles, cyanogen chloride, organic chloramines, chloramino acids, chloral hydrate, haloketones	nitrate, nitrite, chlorate, hydrazine	aldehydes, ketones
Ozone	bromoform, monobromoacetic acid, dibromoacetic acid, dibromoacetone, cyanogen bromide	chlorate, iodate, bromate, hydrogen peroxide, hypobromous acid, epoxides, ozonates	aldehydes, ketoacids, ketones, carboxylic acids

quality and the control of insects of public health significance. However, it is stressed that every effort should be made to keep overall exposure and the concentration of any larvicide as low as possible.

As for the other groups of chemicals discussed in this chapter, this category is not clear-cut. It includes pesticides that are extensively used for purposes other than public health protection – for example, agricultural purposes, in the case of chlorpyrifos.

In addition to the use of larvicides approved for drinking-water application to control disease vector insects, other control measures should also be considered. For example, the stocking of fish of appropriate varieties (e.g., larvae-eating mosquitofish) in water bodies may adequately control infestations and breeding of mosquitoes in those bodies. Other mosquito breeding areas where water collects should be managed by draining, especially after rainfall.

Guideline values that have been derived for these larvicides are provided in Table 8.28. Summary statements are included in chapter 12.

8.5.6 Cyanobacterial toxins

Cyanobacteria (see also section 11.5) occur widely in lakes, reservoirs, ponds and slow-flowing rivers. Many species are known to produce toxins, i.e., “cyanotoxins,” a number of which are of concern for health. Cyanotoxins vary in structure and may be found within cells or released into water. There is wide variation in the toxicity of recognized cyanotoxins (including different structural variants within a group, e.g., microcystins), and it is likely that further toxins remain unrecognized.

The toxins are classified, according to their mode of action, as hepatotoxins (microcystins and cylindrospermopsins), neurotoxins (anatoxin-a, saxitoxins and anatoxin-a(S)) and irritants or inflammatory agents (lipopolysaccharides). The hepatotoxins are produced by various species within the genera *Microcystis*, *Planktothrix*, *Anabaena*, *Aphanizomenon*, *Nodularia*, *Nostoc*, *Cylindrospermopsis* and *Umezakia*. The cyanotoxins occurring most frequently in elevated concentrations (i.e., >1 μg/litre) seem to be microcystins (oligopeptides) and cylindrospermopsin (an alkaloid), whereas the cyanobacterial neurotoxins appear to occur in high concentrations only occasionally.

Table 8.26 Chemicals used in water treatment or materials in contact with drinking-water for which guideline values have not been established

Chemical	Reason for not establishing a guideline value
Disinfectants	
Chlorine dioxide	Rapid breakdown of chlorine dioxide; also, the chlorite provisional guideline value is protective for potential toxicity from chlorine dioxide
Dichloramine	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Iodine	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value, and lifetime exposure to iodine through water disinfection is unlikely
Silver	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Trichloramine	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Disinfection by-products	
Bromochloroacetate	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Bromochloroacetonitrile	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Chloral hydrate (trichloroacetaldehyde)	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Chloroacetones	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline values for any of the chloroacetones
Chlorophenol, 2-	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Chloropicrin	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Dibromoacetate	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Dichlorophenol, 2,4-	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Formaldehyde	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Monobromoacetate	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
MX	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Trichloroacetonitrile	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline value
Contaminants from treatment chemicals	
Aluminium	Owing to limitations in the animal data as a model for humans and the uncertainty surrounding the human data, a health-based guideline value cannot be derived; however, practicable levels based on optimization of the coagulation process in drinking-water plants using aluminium-based coagulants are derived: 0.1 mg/litre or less in large water treatment facilities, and 0.2 mg/litre or less in small facilities
Iron	Not of health concern at concentrations normally observed in drinking-water, and taste and appearance of water are affected at concentrations below the health-based value
Contaminants from pipes and fittings	
Asbestos	No consistent evidence that ingested asbestos is hazardous to health
Dialkyltins	Available data inadequate to permit derivation of health-based guideline values for any of the dialkyltins
Fluoranthene	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Inorganic tin	Occurs in drinking-water at concentrations well below those at which toxic effects may occur
Zinc	Not of health concern at concentrations normally observed in drinking-water, but may affect the acceptability of water

Table 8.27 Guideline values for chemicals used in water treatment or materials in contact with drinking-water that are of health significance in drinking-water

Disinfectants	**Guideline value[a] (mg/litre)**	**Remarks**
Chlorine	5 (C)	For effective disinfection, there should be a residual concentration of free chlorine of ≥0.5 mg/litre after at least 30 min contact time at pH <8.0
Monochloramine	3	

Disinfection by-products	**Guideline value[a] (μg/litre)**	**Remarks**
Bromate	10[b] (A, T)	
Bromodichloromethane	60[b]	
Bromoform	100	
Chlorate	700 (D)	
Chlorite	700 (D)	
Chloroform	300	
Cyanogen chloride	70	For cyanide as total cyanogenic compounds
Dibromoacetonitrile	70	
Dibromochloromethane	100	
Dichloroacetate	50[b] (T, D)	
Dichloroacetonitrile	20 (P)	
Monochloroacetate	20	
Trichloroacetate	200	
Trichlorophenol, 2,4,6-	200[b] (C)	
Trihalomethanes		The sum of the ratio of the concentration of each to its respective guideline value should not exceed 1

Contaminants from treatment chemicals	**Guideline value[a] (μg/litre)**	**Remarks**
Acrylamide	0.5[b]	
Epichlorohydrin	0.4 (P)	

Contaminants from pipes and fittings	**Guideline value[a] (μg/litre)**	**Remarks**
Antimony	20	
Benzo[*a*]pyrene	0.7[b]	
Copper	2000	Staining of laundry and sanitary ware may occur below guideline value
Lead	10	
Nickel	70	
Vinyl chloride	0.3[b]	

[a] P = provisional guideline value, as there is evidence of a hazard, but the available information on health effects is limited; A = provisional guideline value because calculated guideline value is below the practical quantification level; T = provisional guideline value because calculated guideline value is below the level that can be achieved through practical treatment methods, source control, etc.; D = provisional guideline value because disinfection is likely to result in the guideline value being exceeded; C = concentrations of the substance at or below the health-based guideline value may affect the appearance, taste or odour of the water, causing consumer complaints.

[b] For substances that are considered to be carcinogenic, the guideline value is the concentration in drinking-water associated with an upper-bound excess lifetime cancer risk of 10^{-5} (one additional cancer per 100 000 of the population ingesting drinking-water containing the substance at the guideline value for 70 years). Concentrations associated with estimated upper-bound excess lifetime cancer risks of 10^{-4} and 10^{-6} can be calculated by multiplying and dividing, respectively, the guideline value by 10.

Table 8.28 Guideline values for pesticides used in water for public health purposes that are of health significance in drinking-water

Pesticides used in water for public health purposes[a]	Guideline value (μg/litre)
Chlorpyrifos	30
DDT and metabolites	1
Permethrin	300
Pyriproxyfen	300

[a] Only pyriproxyfen is recommended by WHO for addition to water for public health purposes. Permethrin is not recommended by WHO for this purpose, as part of its policy to exclude the use of any pyrethroids for larviciding of mosquito vectors of human disease. This policy is based on concern over the possible accelerated development of vector resistance to synthetic pyrethroids, which, in their application to insecticide-treated mosquito nets, are crucial in the current global anti-malaria strategy.

Table 8.29. Guideline values for cyanotoxins that are of health significance in drinking-water

	Guideline value[a] (μg/litre)	Remarks
Microcystin-LR	1 (P)	For total microcystin-LR (free plus cell-bound)

[a] P = provisional guideline value, as there is evidence of a hazard, but the available information on health effects is limited.

Cyanotoxins can reach concentrations potentially hazardous to human health primarily in situations of high cell density through excessive growth, sometimes termed “bloom” events. These occur in response to elevated concentrations of nutrients (phosphorus and sometimes nitrogen) and may be triggered by conditions such as water body stratification and sufficiently high temperature. Blooms tend to recur in the same water bodies. Cells of some cyanobacterial species may accumulate at the surface as scums or at the theromocline of thermally stratified reservoirs. Such accumulations may develop rapidly, and they may be of short duration. In many circumstances, blooms and accumulations are seasonal.

A variety of resource protection and source management actions are available to decrease the probability of bloom occurrence, and some treatment methods, including filtration and chlorination, are available for removal of cyanobacteria and cyanotoxins. Filtration can effectively remove cyanobacterial cells and, with that, often a high share of the toxins. Oxidation through ozone or chlorine at sufficient concentrations and contact times can effectively remove most cyanotoxins dissolved in water.

Chemical analysis of cyanotoxins is not the preferred focus of routine monitoring. The preferred approach is monitoring of source water for evidence of blooms, or bloom-forming potential, and increased vigilance where such events occur. Analysis of cyanotoxins requires time, equipment and expertise, and quantitative analysis of some cyanotoxins is hampered by the lack of analytical standards. However, rapid methods, such as ELISA and enzyme assays, are becoming available for a small number, e.g., microcystins.

Chemical analysis of cyanotoxins is useful for assessing the efficacy of treatment and preventive strategies, i.e., as validation of control measures in a WSP (see chapter

4). While guideline values are derived where sufficient data exist, they are primarily intended to inform setting targets for control measures.

A provisional guideline value has been established for microcystin-LR, which meets the criteria for inclusion (see Table 8.29). Microcystin-LR is one of the most toxic of more than 70 structural variants of microcystin. Although, on a global scale, it appears to be one of the most widespread microcystins, in many regions it is not the most commonly occurring variant, and others may well be less toxic. If the provisional guideline value for microcystin-LR is used as a surrogate for their assessment and for setting targets, this serves as a worst-case estimate. A more detailed discussion of using "concentration equivalents" or "toxicity equivalents" for relating microcystins to microcystin-LR is given in Chorus & Bartram (1999).

8.6 Identifying local actions in response to chemical water quality problems and emergencies

It is difficult to give comprehensive guidance concerning emergencies in which chemicals cause massive contamination of the drinking-water supply, caused either by accident or by deliberate action. Most of the guideline values recommended in these Guidelines (see section 8.5 and annex 4) relate to a level of exposure that is regarded as tolerable throughout life. Acute toxic effects are considered for a limited number of chemicals. The length of time for which exposure to a chemical far in excess of the guideline value would have adverse effects on health will depend upon factors that vary from contaminant to contaminant. In an emergency situation, the public health authorities should be consulted about appropriate action.

The exceedance of a guideline value may not result in a significant or increased risk to health. Therefore, deviations above the guideline values in either the short or long term may not mean that the water is unsuitable for consumption. The amount by which, and the period for which, any guideline value can be exceeded without affecting public health depends upon the specific substance involved. However, exceedance should be a signal:

- as a minimum, to investigate the cause with a view to taking remedial action as necessary; and
- to consult the authority responsible for public health for advice on suitable action, taking into account the intake of the substance from sources other than drinking-water, the toxicity of the substance, the likelihood and nature of any adverse effects and the practicality of remedial measures.

If a guideline value is to be exceeded by a significant amount or for more than a few days, it may be necessary to act rapidly so as to ensure that health protective action is taken and to inform consumers of the situation so that they can act appropriately.

The primary aim with regard to chemical contaminants when a guideline is exceeded or in an emergency is to prevent exposure of the population to toxic concentrations of pollutants. However, in applying the Guidelines under such circumstances, an important consideration is that, unless there are appropriate alternative supplies of drinking-water available, maintenance of adequate quantities of water is a high priority. In the case of an incident in which chemical contaminants are spilt into a source water and enter a drinking-water supply or enter a supply through treatment or during distribution, the primary aim is to minimize the risk of adverse effects without unnecessarily disrupting the use of the water supply.

This section of the Guidelines can be used to assist evaluation of the risks associated with a particular situation and – especially if a guideline value exists or an authoritative risk assessment is available from an alternative source – support appropriate decision-making on short- and medium-term actions. The approaches proposed provide a basis for discussion between various authorities and for judging the urgency of taking further action.

Normally, a specific review of the situation will be required and should call on suitable expertise. It is important to take local circumstances into account, including the availability of alternative water supplies and exposure to the contaminant from other sources, such as food. It is also important to consider what water treatment is applied and/or available and whether this will reduce the concentration of the substance.

Where the nature of contamination is unknown, expert opinion should be sought as quickly as possible to identify the contaminants and to determine what actions can be taken to:

— prevent the contaminants from entering the supply; and/or
— minimize the exposure of the population and so minimize any potential for adverse effects.

A WSP should include planning for response to both predictable events and undefined "emergencies." Such planning facilitates rapid and appropriate response to events when they occur (see section 4.4).

Consideration of emergency planning and planning for response to incidents in which a guideline value is exceeded, covering both microbial and chemical contaminants, is discussed in section 4.4. Broader discussion of actions in emergency situations can be found in section 6.2 and, for microbial contamination, section 7.6.

8.6.1 Trigger for action

Triggers for action may include:

— detection of a spill by, or reporting of a spill to, the drinking-water supplier;
— an alarm raised by the observation of items, such as chemical drums, adjacent to a vulnerable part of the drinking-water supply;
— the detection of a substance in the water;
— a sudden change to water treatment; or
— consumer complaints (e.g., an unusual odour, taste or discoloration).

8.6.2 Investigating the situation

Each incident is unique, and it is therefore important to determine associated facts, including what the contaminant is; what the likely concentration is, and by how much the guideline has been exceeded, if at all; and the potential duration of the incident. These are important in determining the actions to be taken.

8.6.3 Talking to the right people

In any emergency, it is important that there be good communication between the various authorities, particularly the water supplier and health authorities. It will usually be the health authorities that make the final decisions, but knowledge of the water supply and the nature of the supply is vital in making the most appropriate decisions. In addition, timely and clear communication with consumers is a vital part of successfully handling drinking-water problems and emergencies.

Liaison with key authorities is discussed in section 4.4. It is particularly important to inform the public health authority of any exceedance or likely exceedance of a guideline value or other conditions likely to affect human health and to ensure that the public health authority is involved in decision-making. In the event of actions that require all consumers to be informed or where the provision of temporary supplies of drinking-water is appropriate, civil authorities should also be involved. Planning for these actions is an important part of the development of WSPs. Involving the public health authorities at an early stage enables them to obtain specialist information and to make the appropriate staff available.

8.6.4 Informing the public

Consumers may be aware of a potential problem with the safety of their drinking-water because of media coverage, their own senses or informal networks. Lack of confidence in the drinking-water or the authorities may drive consumers to alternative, potentially less safe sources. Not only do consumers have a right to information on the safety of their drinking-water, but they have an important role to play in assisting the authorities in an incident by their own actions and by carrying out the necessary measures at the household level. Trust and goodwill from consumers are extremely important in both the short and long term.

The health authorities should be involved whenever a decision to inform the public of health-based concerns or advice to adopt health protection measures such as boiling of water may be required. Such guidance needs to be both timely and clear.

8.6.5 Evaluating the significance to public health and individuals

In assessing the significance of an exceedance of a guideline value, account should be taken of:

- information underpinning the guideline value derivation;
- local exposure to the substance of concern through other routes (e.g., food);
- any sensitive subpopulations; and
- locally relevant protective measures to prevent the chemical from entering the source water or supply in the case of a spill.

Information underpinning guideline value derivation

The derivation of guideline values for chemical contaminants is described in section 8.2.

Most guideline values are derived by calculating a TDI or using an existing TDI or ADI. A proportion of the TDI or ADI is then allocated to drinking-water to make allowance for exposure from other sources, particularly food. This allocation is often 10%, but it may be as low as 1% or as high as 80%. In many circumstances, a review of likely local sources of exposure may identify that sources other than drinking-water are less significant than assumed and that a larger proportion of total exposure can be safely allocated to drinking-water. The summary statements in chapter 12 and background documents on all chemicals addressed in these Guidelines (http://www.who.int/water_sanitation_health/dwq/chemicals/en/#V) provide further information on likely sources of the chemicals concerned, including their allocation factors. When rapid decision-making is required for such chemicals, it is possible to allow 100% of the TDI to come from drinking-water for a short period (e.g., a few days) while undertaking a more substantive review. In the event that there is significant exposure from other sources or exposure is likely to be for more than a few days, then it is possible to allocate more than the allocation used in the guideline value derivation, but no more than 100%.

In some cases, the guideline value is derived from epidemiological or clinical studies in humans. In most cases (e.g., benzene, barium), these relate to long-term exposure, and short-term exposure to concentrations higher than the guideline value are unlikely to be of significant concern; however, it is important to seek expert advice. In other cases of guidelines derived from epidemiological studies, the associated health effects are acute in nature (e.g., nitrate/nitrite, copper):

- The guideline value (50 mg/litre) for nitrate is based on the occurrence of methaemoglobinaemia, or blue-baby syndrome, in bottle-fed infants. This outcome is complicated by the presence of microbial contamination, which can increase the risk to this group significantly. Methaemoglobinaemia has rarely been associated with nitrate in the absence of faecal contamination of the drinking-water. As a short-term measure, water should not be used for bottle-fed infants when nitrate levels are above 100 mg/litre; however, it may be used if medical authorities are increasingly vigilant when the nitrate concentration is between 50 and 100 mg/litre, provided that the water is known and is confirmed to be microbially safe. The guideline value for nitrate relates to a specific and vulnerable subgroup (i.e., bottle-fed infants), and therefore the guideline will be more than adequately protective for older children and adults.
- The guideline value for copper is also based on short-term exposure but is intended to protect against direct gastric irritation, which is a concentration-dependent phenomenon. The guideline value may be exceeded, but there will be an increasing risk of consumers suffering from gastrointestinal irritation as the concentration

increases above the guideline value. The occurrence of such irritation can be assessed in exposed populations.

In some cases, the guideline value is derived from a cancer risk estimate derived from studies in laboratory animals. In these cases, short-term (a few months to a year) exposure to concentrations up to 10 times the guideline value would result in only a small increase in estimated risk of cancer. Because the estimate of risk varies over a wide range, there may be no, or a very small, increase in risk. In such a circumstance, accepting a 10-fold increase in the guideline value for a short period would have no discernible impact on the risk over a lifetime. However, care would be needed to determine whether other toxicological end-points more relevant for short-term exposure, such as neurotoxicity, would become significant.

Assessing locally relevant sources of the substance of concern through other routes of exposure

The most useful sources of information regarding local exposure to substances through food and, to a lesser extent, air and other environmental routes are usually government departments dealing with food and environmental pollution. Other sources may include universities. In the absence of specific data, the Guidelines background documents consider the sources of exposure and give a generic assessment that can be used to make a local evaluation as to the potential use of a chemical and whether this would be likely to enter the food-chain. Further information is available in *Chemical Safety of Drinking-water: Assessing Priorities for Risk Management* (see section 1.3).

Sensitive subpopulations

In some cases, there may be a specific subpopulation that is at greater risk from a substance than the rest of the population. These usually relate to high exposure (e.g., bottle-fed infants) or a particular sensitivity (e.g., fetal haemoglobin and nitrate/nitrite). However, some genetic subpopulations may show greater sensitivity to particular toxicity (e.g., glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase-deficient groups and oxidative stress on red blood cells). If the potential exposure from drinking-water in an incident is greater than the TDI or exposure is likely to be extended beyond a few days, then this would require consideration in conjunction with health authorities. In such circumstances, it may be possible to target action to avoid exposure at the specific group concerned, such as supplying bottled water for bottle-fed infants.

Specific mitigation measures affecting risk assessment

Such measures relate to actions taken locally or on a household basis that can impact on the presence of a particular contaminant. For example, the presence of a substance that is volatile or heat labile will be affected by heating the water for cooking or the preparation of beverages. Where such measures are routinely undertaken by the exposed population, the risk assessment may be modified accordingly. Alternatively, such steps can be used on a household basis to reduce exposure and allow the continued use of the supply without interruption.

8.6.6 Determining appropriate action

Determining appropriate action means that various risks will need to be balanced. The interruption of water supply to consumers is a serious step and can lead to risks associated with contamination of drinking-water stored in the household with pathogens and limiting use for purposes of hygiene and health protection. Issuing a "do not drink" notice may allow the use of the supply for hygiene purposes such as showering or bathing, but creates pressure on consumers and authorities to provide a safe alternative for drinking and cooking. In some cases, this option will be expensive and could divert resources from other more important issues. Appropriate action will always be decided on a case-by-case basis in conjunction with other authorities, including the health protection and civil authorities, who may be required to participate in informing consumers, delivering alternative supplies or supervising the collection of water from bowsers and tankers. Responding to a potential risk to health from a chemical contaminant should not lead to an increase in overall health risk from disruption of supply, microbial contaminants or other chemical contaminants.

8.6.7 Consumer acceptability

Even though, in an emergency, supplying water that contains a substance present at higher concentrations than would normally be desirable may not result in an undue risk to health, the water may not be acceptable to consumers. A number of substances that can contaminate drinking-water supplies as a consequence of spills can give rise to severe problems with taste and/or odour. Under these circumstances, drinking-water may become so unpalatable as to render the water undrinkable or to cause consumers to turn to alternative drinking-water sources that may present a greater risk to health. In addition, water that is clearly contaminated may cause some consumers to feel unwell due to a perception of poor water quality. Consumer acceptability may be the most important factor in determining the advice given to consumers about whether or not the water should be used for drinking or cooking.

8.6.8 Ensuring remedial action, preventing recurrence and updating the water safety plan

The recording of an incident, the decisions taken and the reasons for them are essential parts of handling an incident. The WSP, as discussed in chapter 4, should be updated in the light of experience. This would include making sure that problem areas identified during an incident are corrected. Where possible, it would also mean that the cause of the incident is dealt with to prevent its recurrence. For example, if the incident has arisen as a consequence of a spill from industry, the source of the spill can be advised as to how to prevent another spill and the information passed on to other similar industrial establishments.

8.6.9 Mixtures

A spill may contain more than one contaminant of potential health concern (see section 8.2.9). Under these circumstances, it will be important to determine whether the substances present interact. Where the substances have a similar mechanism/mode of action, it is appropriate to consider them as additive. This may be particularly true of some pesticides, such as atrazine and simazine. In these circumstances, appropriate action must take local circumstances into consideration. Specialist advice should generally be sought.

8.6.10 Water avoidance advisories

Water avoidance advisories share many features with boil water advisories (see section 7.6.1), but are less common. Like boil water advisories, they are a serious measure that should be instituted only when there is evidence that an advisory is necessary to reduce a substantial public health risk. In cases where alternative sources of water are recommended, particular consideration should be given to the potential for microbial hazards in those alternative sources. Water avoidance advisories are applied when the parameter of concern is not susceptible to boiling or when risks from dermal contact or inhalation of the contaminant are also significant. Water avoidance advisories may also be issued when an unknown agent or chemical substance is detected in the distribution system. It is important that the water avoidance advisories include the information that boiling is ineffective and/or insufficient to reduce the risk.

As with the case of boil water advisories, water suppliers in conjunction with public health authorities should develop protocols for water avoidance advisories. Protocols should be prepared before any incident occurs and incorporated within WSPs. Decisions to issue advisories are often made within a short period of time, and developing responses during an event can complicate decision-making, compromise communication and undermine public confidence.

In addition to the information discussed in section 4.4.3, the protocols should provide information to the general public and specific groups on the following:

- criteria for issuing and rescinding advisories;
- activities impacted by the advisory; and
- alternative sources of safe water for drinking and other domestic uses.

Protocols should identify mechanisms for the communication of water avoidance advisories. The mechanisms may vary, depending on the nature of the supply and the size of the community affected, and could include:

- media releases through television, radio and newspapers;
- telephone, e-mail and fax contact of specific facilities, community groups and local authorities;

- posting of notices in conspicuous locations;
- personal delivery; and
- mail delivery.

The methods chosen should provide a reasonable assurance that all of those impacted by the advisory, including residents, workers and travellers, are notified as soon as possible.

The issuing of a water avoidance advisory may be necessary, for example, following contamination – e.g., chemical, radiological or microbial – of accidental, natural or malicious origin that leads to:

- a significant exceedance of a guideline value, which may pose a threat to health from short-term exposure;
- concentrations of a chemical with no guideline value that may pose a threat to health from short-term exposure; and
- significant odour or taste that has no identified source or that will give rise to significant public anxiety.

When issued, water avoidance advisories should provide information on the same issues included in boil water advisories (see section 7.6.1), although recommendations relating to affected uses and users will vary, depending on the nature of the problem. For example, for elevated concentrations of contaminants that are of concern only from a drinking or cooking perspective, the public could be advised to avoid using the water for drinking, food preparation, preparing cold drinks, making ice and hygienic uses such as tooth brushing. Where the advisory applies to elevated levels of chemicals that can cause skin or eye irritation or gastrointestinal upsets, the public could be advised not to use the water for drinking, cooking, tooth brushing or bathing/showering. Alternatively, specific water avoidance advice might be issued where the contamination might affect subgroups of the population – for example, pregnant women or bottle-fed infants.

As for boil water advisories, specific advice may need to be issued for dentists, doctors, hospitals and other health care facilities, child care facilities, schools, food suppliers and manufacturers, hotels, restaurants and operators of public swimming pools.

Water avoidance advisories do not equate to cessation of supply; water will generally be suitable for flushing toilets and other uses, such as clothes washing. However, suitable alternative supplies of drinking-water, such as bottled water and/or carted or tankered water, will be required for drinking and other domestic uses.

Criteria for rescinding water avoidance advisories will generally be based on evidence that the source of elevated concentrations of hazardous contaminants has been removed, that distribution systems have been appropriately flushed and that the water is safe for drinking and other uses. In buildings, the flushing would extend to storages and internal plumbing systems.

9

Radiological aspects

The objective of this chapter is to provide criteria with which to assess the safety of drinking-water with respect to its radionuclide content. The Guidelines do not differentiate between naturally occurring and artificial or human-made radionuclides.

The guidance values for radioactivity in drinking-water recommended in the first edition of the Guidelines were based on the risks of exposure to radiation sources and the health consequences of exposure to radiation. The second edition of the Guidelines incorporated the 1990 recommendations of the International Commission on Radiological Protection (ICRP, 1991). The third edition incorporates recent developments, including the ICRP publications on prolonged exposures and on dose coefficients.

Radiological hazards may derive from ionizing radiation emitted by a number of radioactive substances (chemicals) in drinking-water. Such hazards from drinking-water are rarely of public health significance, and radiation exposure from drinking-water must be assessed alongside exposure from other sources.

The approach taken in the Guidelines for controlling radiological hazards has two stages:

- —initial screening for gross alpha and/or beta activity to determine whether the activity concentrations (in Bq/litre) are below levels at which no further action is required; and
- —if these screening levels are exceeded, investigation of the concentrations of individual radionuclides and comparison with specific guidance levels.

The risk due to radon in drinking-water derived from groundwater is typically low compared with that due to total inhaled radon but is distinct, as exposure occurs through both consumption of dissolved gas and inhalation of released radon and its daughter radionuclides. Greatest exposure is general ambient inhalation and inhalation from terrestrial sources, where the gas is infiltrating into dwellings, especially into basements. Radon of groundwater origin would usually be a small increment of the total, but may indicate deposits in the region that are emitting into basements.

The screening and guidance levels apply to routine (“normal”) operational conditions of existing or new drinking-water supplies. They do not apply to a water supply contaminated during an emergency involving the release of radionuclides into the environment. Guidance and generic action levels covering emergency situations are available elsewhere (IAEA, 1996, 1997, 1999, 2002).

The current Guidelines are based on:

— a recommended reference dose level (RDL) of the committed effective dose, equal to 0.1 mSv from 1 year's consumption of drinking-water (from the possible total radioactive contamination of the annual drinking-water consumption). This comprises 10% of the intervention exemption level recommended by the ICRP for dominant commodities (e.g., food and drinking-water) for prolonged exposure situations, which is most relevant to long-term consumption of drinking-water by the public (ICRP, 2000). The RDL of 0.1 mSv is also equal to 10% of the dose limit for members of the population, recommended by both the ICRP (1991) and the International Basic Safety Standards (IAEA, 1996). These are accepted by most WHO Member States, the European Commission, FAO and WHO.

— dose coefficients for adults, provided by the ICRP.

The additional risk to health from exposure to an annual dose of 0.1 mSv associated with the intake of radionuclides from drinking-water is considered to be low for the following reasons:

- The nominal probability coefficient for radiation-induced stochastic health effects, which include fatal cancer, non-fatal cancer and severe hereditary effects for the whole population, is 7.3×10^{-2}/Sv (ICRP, 1991). Multiplying this by an RDL equal to 0.1 mSv annual exposure via drinking-water gives an estimated upper-bound lifetime risk of stochastic health effects of approximately 10^{-4}, which can be considered small in comparison with many other health risks. This reference risk estimation for radionuclides is quite reliable due to the extensive scientific databases that have included human population exposure data. As with chemical carcinogen risk extrapolations, the lower-bound risk is zero.
- Background radiation exposures vary widely across the Earth, but the average is about 2.4 mSv/year, with the highest local levels being up to 10 times higher without any detected increased health risks from population studies; 0.1 mSv therefore represents a small addition to background levels.

9.1 Sources and health effects of radiation exposure

Environmental radiation originates from a number of naturally occurring and human-made sources. Radioactive materials occur naturally everywhere in the environment (e.g., uranium, thorium and potassium-40). By far the largest proportion of human exposure to radiation comes from natural sources – from external sources of radiation, including cosmic and terrestrial radiation, and from inhalation or ingestion of radioactive materials (Figure 9.1). The United Nations Scientific Committee

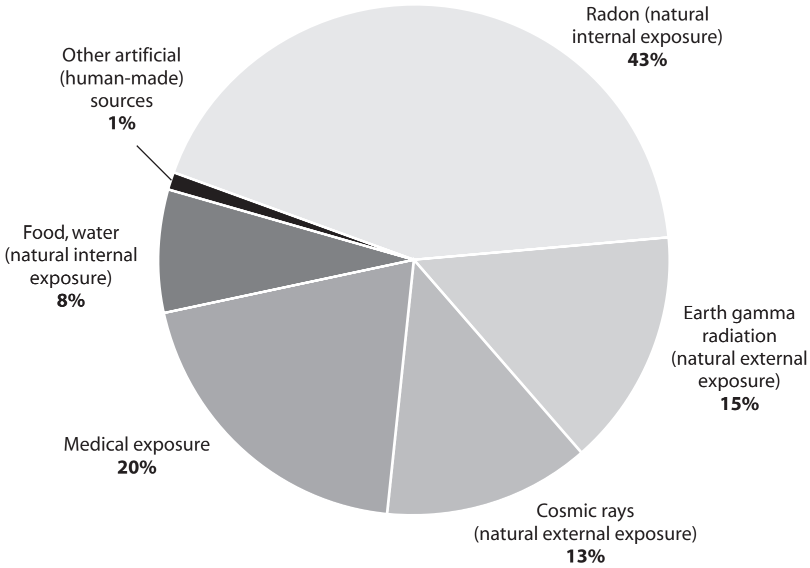


Figure 9.1 Sources and distribution of average radiation exposure for the world population

on the Effects of Atomic Radiation (UNSCEAR, 2000) has estimated that the global average annual human exposure from natural sources is 2.4 mSv/year (Table 9.1). Some sources (e.g., uranium) can be concentrated during extraction by mining and other industrial activities.

There are large local variations in human exposure to radiation, depending on a number of factors, such as height above sea level, the amount and type of radionuclides in the soil (terrestrial exposure), the composition of radionuclides in the air, food and drinking-water and the amount taken into the body via inhalation or ingestion. There are certain areas of the world, such as parts of the Kerala state in India and the Pocos del Caldas plateau in Brazil, where levels of background radiation are

Table 9.1 Average radiation dose from natural sources

Source	Worldwide average annual effective dose (mSv)	Typical range (mSv)
External exposure		
Cosmic rays	0.4	0.3–1.0
Terrestrial gamma rays[a]	0.5	0.3–0.6
Internal exposure		
Inhalation (mainly radon)	1.2	0.2–10[b]
Ingestion (food and drinking-water)	0.3	0.2–0.8
Total	**2.4**	**1–10**

[a] Terrestrial exposure is due to radionuclides in the soil and building materials.
[b] Dose from inhalation of radon may exceed 10 mSv/year in certain residential areas.
Source: UNSCEAR (2000).

relatively high. Levels of exposure for the general population in such areas may be up to 10 times higher than the average background level of 2.4 mSv given in Table 9.1. No deleterious health effects associated with this elevated radiation exposure have been detected (UNSCEAR, 2000).

Several radioactive compounds may be released into the environment, and hence into drinking-water supplies, from human activities and human-made sources (e.g., from medical or industrial use of radioactive sources). The worldwide per capita effective dose from diagnostic medical examination in 2000 was 0.4 mSv/year (typical range is 0.04–1.0 mSv/year, depending on level of health care). There is only a very small worldwide contribution from nuclear power production and nuclear weapons testing. The worldwide annual per capita effective dose from nuclear weapons testing in 2000 was estimated at 0.005 mSv; from the Chernobyl accident, 0.002 mSv; and from nuclear power production, 0.0002 mSv (UNSCEAR, 2000).

9.1.1 Radiation exposure through drinking-water

Radioactive constituents of drinking-water can result from:

- naturally occurring radioactive species (e.g., radionuclides of the thorium and uranium decay series in drinking-water sources), in particular radium-226/228 and a few others;
- technological processes involving naturally occurring radioactive materials (e.g., the mining and processing of mineral sands or phosphate fertilizer production);
- radionuclides discharged from nuclear fuel cycle facilities;
- manufactured radionuclides (produced and used in unsealed form), which might enter drinking-water supplies as a result of regular discharges and, in particular, in case of improper medical or industrial use and disposal of radioactive materials; such incidents are different from emergencies, which are outside the scope of these Guidelines; and
- past releases of radionuclides into the environment, including water sources.

The contribution of drinking-water to total exposure is typically very small and is due largely to naturally occurring radionuclides in the uranium and thorium decay series. Radionuclides from the nuclear fuel cycle and from medical and other uses of radioactive materials may, however, enter drinking-water supplies. The contributions from these sources are normally limited by regulatory control of the source or practice, and it is normally through this regulatory mechanism that remedial action should be taken in the event that such sources cause concern by contaminating drinking-water.

9.1.2 Radiation-induced health effects through drinking-water

There is evidence from both human and animal studies that radiation exposure at low to moderate doses may increase the long-term incidence of cancer. Animal studies in particular suggest that the rate of genetic malformations may be increased by radiation exposure.

No deleterious radiological health effects are expected from consumption of drinking-water if the concentrations of radionuclides are below the guidance levels (equivalent to a committed effective dose below 0.1 mSv/year).

Acute health effects of radiation, leading to reduced blood cell counts and, in very severe cases, death, occur at very high doses of exposure of the whole body or large part of the body (IAEA, 1998). Due to the low levels of radionuclides typically found in drinking-water supplies, acute health effects of radiation are not a concern for drinking-water supplies.

9.2 Units of radioactivity and radiation dose

The SI unit of radioactivity is the becquerel (Bq), where 1 Bq = 1 disintegration per second. Guidance levels for drinking-water are given as the activity of the radionuclide per litre, called the activity concentration (Bq/litre). The radiation dose resulting from ingestion of a radionuclide depends on a number of chemical and biological factors. These include the fraction of the intake that is absorbed from the gut, the organs or tissues to which the radionuclide is transported and the time during which the radionuclide remains in the organ or tissue before excretion. The nature of the radiation emitted on decay and the sensitivity of the irradiated organs or tissues to radiation must also be considered.

The absorbed dose refers to how much energy is deposited in material by the radiation. The SI unit for absorbed dose is the gray (Gy), where 1 Gy = 1 J/kg (joule per kilogram).

The equivalent dose is the product of the absorbed dose and a factor related to the particular type of radiation (depending on the ionizing capacity and density).

The effective dose of radiation received by a person is, in simple terms, the sum of the equivalent doses received by all tissues or organs, weighted for "tissue weighting factors." These reflect different sensitivities to radiation of different organs and tissues in the human body. The SI unit for the equivalent and effective dose is the sievert (Sv), where 1 Sv = 1 J/kg.

To reflect the persistence of radionuclides in the body once ingested, the committed effective dose is a measure of the total effective dose received over a lifetime (70 years) following intake of a radionuclide (internal exposure).

The term "dose" may be used as a general term to mean either absorbed dose (Gy) or effective dose (Sv), depending on the situation. For monitoring purposes, doses are determined from the activity concentration of the radionuclide in a given material. In the case of water, activity concentration is given in becquerels per litre (Bq/litre). This value can be related to an effective dose per year (mSv/year) using a dose coefficient (mSv/Bq) and the average annual consumption of water (litres/year).

The effective dose arising from the ingestion of a radioisotope in a particular chemical form can be estimated using a dose coefficient. Data for age-related dose coefficients for ingestion of radionuclides have been published by the ICRP and the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA). Table 9.2 shows the dose coefficients for

Table 9.2 Dose coefficients for ingestion of radionuclides by adult members of the public

Category	Radionuclide	Dose coefficient (mSv/Bq)
Natural uranium series	Uranium-238	4.5×10^{-5}
	Uranium-234	4.9×10^{-5}
	Thorium-230	2.1×10^{-4}
	Radium-226	2.8×10^{-4}
	Lead-210	6.9×10^{-4}
	Polonium-210	1.2×10^{-3}
Natural thorium series	Thorium-232	2.3×10^{-4}
	Radium-228	6.9×10^{-4}
	Thorium-228	7.2×10^{-5}
Fission products	Caesium-134	1.9×10^{-5}
	Caesium-137	1.3×10^{-5}
	Strontium-90	2.8×10^{-5}
	Iodine-131	2.2×10^{-5}
Other radionuclides	Tritium	1.8×10^{-8}
	Carbon-14	5.8×10^{-7}
	Plutonium-239	2.5×10^{-4}
	Americium-241	2.0×10^{-4}

naturally occurring radionuclides or those arising from human activities that might be found in drinking-water supplies (IAEA, 1996; ICRP, 1996).

9.3 Guidance levels for radionuclides in drinking-water

The guidance levels for radionuclides in drinking-water are presented in Table 9.3 for radionuclides originating from natural sources or discharged into the environment as the result of current or past activities. These levels also apply to radionuclides released due to nuclear accidents that occurred more than 1 year previously. The activity concentration values in Table 9.3 correspond to an RDL of 0.1 mSv/year from each radionuclide listed if their concentration in the drinking-water consumed during the year does not exceed these values. The associated risk estimate was given at the beginning of this chapter. However, for the first year immediately after an accident, generic action levels for foodstuffs apply as described in the International Basic Safety Standards (IAEA, 1996) and other relevant WHO and IAEA publications (WHO, 1988; IAEA, 1997, 1999).

The guidance levels for radionuclides in drinking-water were calculated by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{GL} = \mathrm{IDC}/(\mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{ing}} \cdot \mathrm{q})$$

where:

GL = guidance level of radionuclide in drinking-water (Bq/litre),
IDC = individual dose criterion, equal to 0.1 mSv/year for this calculation,
$\mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{ing}}$ = dose coefficient for ingestion by adults (mSv/Bq),
q = annual ingested volume of drinking-water, assumed to be 730 litres/year.

Table 9.3 Guidance levels for radionuclides in drinking-water

Radionuclides	Guidance level (Bq/litre)[a]	Radionuclides	Guidance level (Bq/litre)[a]	Radionuclides	Guidance level (Bq/litre)[a]
^{3}H	10 000	^{93}Mo	100	^{140}La	100
^{7}Be	10 000	^{99}Mo	100	^{139}Ce	1000
^{14}C	100	^{96}Tc	100	^{141}Ce	100
^{22}Na	100	^{97}Tc	1000	^{143}Ce	100
^{32}P	100	^{97m}Tc	100	^{144}Ce	10
^{33}P	1 000	^{99}Tc	100	^{143}Pr	100
^{35}S	100	^{97}Ru	1000	^{147}Nd	100
^{36}Cl	100	^{103}Ru	100	^{147}Pm	1000
^{45}Ca	100	^{106}Ru	10	^{149}Pm	100
^{47}Ca	100	^{105}Rh	1000	^{151}Sm	1000
^{46}Sc	100	^{103}Pd	1000	^{153}Sm	100
^{47}Sc	100	^{105}Ag	100	^{152}Eu	100
^{48}Sc	100	^{110m}Ag	100	^{154}Eu	100
^{48}V	100	^{111}Ag	100	^{155}Eu	1000
^{51}Cr	10 000	^{109}Cd	100	^{153}Gd	1000
^{52}Mn	100	^{115}Cd	100	^{160}Tb	100
^{53}Mn	10 000	^{115m}Cd	100	^{169}Er	1000
^{54}Mn	100	^{111}In	1000	^{171}Tm	1000
^{55}Fe	1 000	^{114m}In	100	^{175}Yb	1000
^{59}Fe	100	^{113}Sn	100	^{182}Ta	100
^{56}Co	100	^{125}Sn	100	^{181}W	1000
^{57}Co	1 000	^{122}Sb	100	^{185}W	1000
^{58}Co	100	^{124}Sb	100	^{186}Re	100
^{60}Co	100	^{125}Sb	100	^{185}Os	100
^{59}Ni	1 000	^{123m}Te	100	^{191}Os	100
^{63}Ni	1 000	^{127}Te	1000	^{193}Os	100
^{65}Zn	100	^{127m}Te	100	^{190}Ir	100
^{71}Ge	10 000	^{129}Te	1000	^{192}Ir	100
^{73}As	1 000	^{129m}Te	100	^{191}Pt	1000
^{74}As	100	^{131}Te	1000	^{193m}Pt	1000
^{76}As	100	^{131m}Te	100	^{198}Au	100
^{77}As	1 000	^{132}Te	100	^{199}Au	1000
^{75}Se	100	^{125}I	10	^{197}Hg	1000
^{82}Br	100	^{126}I	10	^{203}Hg	100
^{86}Rb	100	^{129}I	1000	^{200}Tl	1000
^{85}Sr	100	^{131}I	10	^{201}Tl	1000
^{89}Sr	100	^{129}Cs	1000	^{202}Tl	1000
^{90}Sr	10	^{131}Cs	1000	^{204}Tl	100
^{90}Y	100	^{132}Cs	100	^{203}Pb	1000
^{91}Y	100	^{134}Cs	10	^{206}Bi	100
^{93}Zr	100	^{135}Cs	100	^{207}Bi	100
^{95}Zr	100	^{136}Cs	100	^{210}Bi[b]	100
^{93m}Nb	1 000	^{137}Cs	10	^{210}Pb[b]	0.1
^{94}Nb	100	^{131}Ba	1000	^{210}Po[b]	0.1
^{95}Nb	100	^{140}Ba	100	^{223}Ra[b]	1
^{224}Ra[b]	1	^{235}U[b]	1	^{242}Cm	10
^{225}Ra	1	^{236}U[b]	1	^{243}Cm	1
^{226}Ra[b]	1	^{237}U	100	^{244}Cm	1
^{228}Ra[b]	0.1	^{238}U[b,c]	10	^{245}Cm	1

continued

Table 9.3 ***Continued***

Radionuclides	Guidance level (Bq/litre)	Radionuclides	Guidance level (Bq/litre)	Radionuclides	Guidance level (Bq/litre)
^{227}Th[b]	10	^{237}Np	1	^{246}Cm	1
^{228}Th[b]	1	^{239}Np	100	^{247}Cm	1
^{229}Th	0.1	^{236}Pu	1	^{248}Cm	0.1
^{230}Th[b]	1	^{237}Pu	1000	^{249}Bk	100
^{231}Th[b]	1 000	^{238}Pu	1	^{246}Cf	100
^{232}Th[b]	1	^{239}Pu	1	^{248}Cf	10
^{234}Th[b]	100	^{240}Pu	1	^{249}Cf	1
^{230}Pa	100	^{241}Pu	10	^{250}Cf	1
^{231}Pa[b]	0.1	^{242}Pu	1	^{251}Cf	1
^{233}Pa	100	^{244}Pu	1	^{252}Cf	1
^{230}U	1	^{241}Am	1	^{253}Cf	100
^{231}U	1 000	^{242}Am	1000	^{254}Cf	1
^{232}U	1	^{242m}Am	1	^{253}Es	10
^{233}U	1	^{243}Am	1	^{254}Es	10
^{234}U[b]	10			^{254m}Es	100

[a] Guidance levels are rounded according to averaging the log scale values (to 10^n if the calculated value was below 3×10^n and above $3 \times 10^{n-1}$).

[b] Natural radionuclides.

[c] The provisional guideline value for uranium in drinking-water is 15 µg/litre based on its chemical toxicity for the kidney (see section 8.5).

The higher age-dependent dose coefficients calculated for children (accounting for the higher uptake and/or metabolic rates) do not lead to significantly higher doses due to the lower mean volume of drinking-water consumed by infants and children. Consequently, the recommended RDL of committed effective dose of 0.1 mSv/year from 1 year's consumption of drinking-water applies independently of age.

9.4 Monitoring and assessment for dissolved radionuclides

9.4.1 Screening of drinking-water supplies

The process of identifying individual radioactive species and determining their concentration requires sophisticated and expensive analysis, which is normally not justified, because the concentrations of radionuclides in most circumstances are very low. A more practical approach is to use a screening procedure, where the total radioactivity present in the form of alpha and beta radiation is first determined, without regard to the identity of specific radionuclides.

Screening levels for drinking-water below which no further action is required are 0.5 Bq/litre for gross alpha activity and 1 Bq/litre for gross beta activity. The gross beta activity screening level was published in the second edition of the Guidelines and, in the worse case (radium-222), would lead to a dose close to the guidance RDL of 0.1 mSv/year. The screening level for gross alpha activity is 0.5 Bq/litre (instead of the former 0.1 Bq/litre), as this activity concentration reflects values nearer the radionuclide-specific guidance RDL.

9.4.2 Strategy for assessing drinking-water

If either of the screening levels is exceeded, then the specific radionuclides producing this activity should be identified and their individual activity concentrations measured. From these data, an estimate of committed effective dose for each radionuclide should be made and the sum of these doses determined. If the following additive formula is satisfied, no further action is required:

$$\sum_{\mathrm{i}} \frac{\mathrm{C_i}}{\mathrm{GL_i}} \leq 1$$

where:

$\mathrm{C_i}$ = the measured activity concentration of radionuclide i, and
$\mathrm{GL_i}$ = the guidance level value (see Table 9.3) of radionuclide i that, at an intake of 2 litres/day for 1 year, will result in a committed effective dose of 0.1 mSv/year.

Where the sum exceeds unity for a single sample, the RDL of 0.1 mSv would be exceeded only if the exposure to the same measured concentrations were to continue for a full year. *Hence, such a sample does not in itself imply that the water is unsuitable for consumption* but should be regarded as an indication that further investigation, including additional sampling, is needed. Gross beta and gross alpha activity screening has to be repeated first, then radionuclide-specific analysis conducted only if subsequently measured gross values exceed the recommended practical screening values (1 Bq/litre and 0.5 Bq/litre, respectively).

The application of these recommendations is summarized in Figure 9.2.

The gross beta measurement includes a contribution from potassium-40, a beta emitter that occurs naturally in a fixed ratio to stable potassium. Potassium is an essential element for humans and is absorbed mainly from ingested food. Potassium-40 does not accumulate in the body but is maintained at a constant level independent of intake. The contribution of potassium-40 to beta activity should therefore be subtracted following a separate determination of total potassium. The specific activity of potassium-40 is 30.7 Bq/g of potassium. However, not all the radiation from potassium-40 appears as beta activity. The beta activity of potassium-40 is 27.6 Bq/g of stable potassium, which is the factor that should be used to calculate the beta activity due to potassium-40.

9.4.3 Remedial measures

If the RDL of 0.1 mSv/year is being exceeded on aggregate, then the options available to the competent authority to reduce the dose should be examined. Where remedial measures are contemplated, any strategy considered should first be justified (in the sense that it achieves a net benefit) and then optimized in accordance with the recommendations of ICRP (1989, 1991) in order to produce the maximum net benefit.

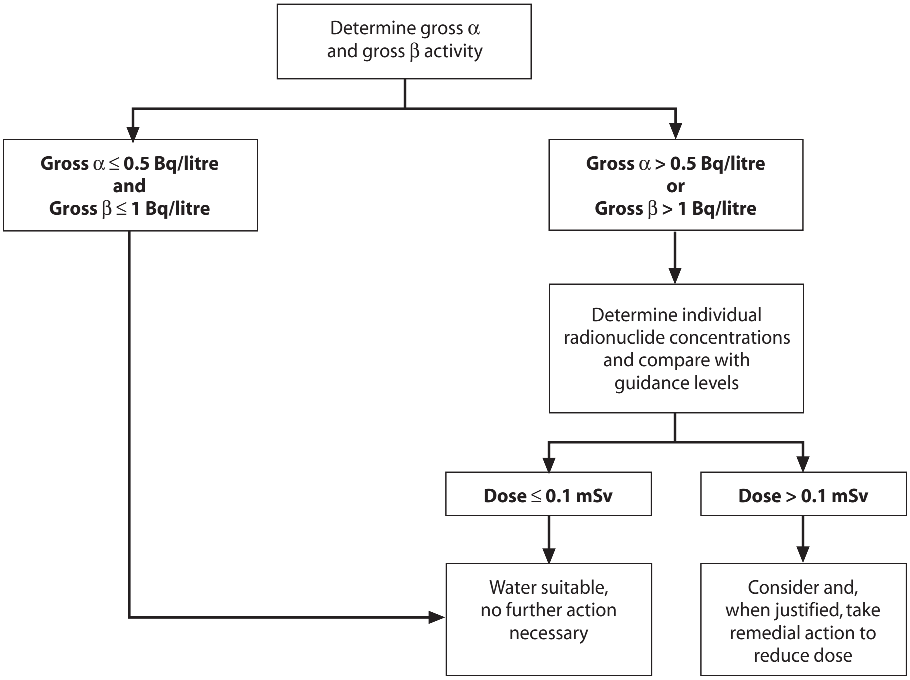


Figure 9.2 Application of screening and guidance levels for radionuclides in drinking-water

9.5 Radon

9.5.1 Radon in air and water

The largest fraction of natural radiation exposure comes from radon, a radioactive gas (see Table 9.1 and Figure 9.1), due to decay of radium contained in rocks and soil as part of the uranium radionuclide chain. The term radon in general refers mostly to radon-222. Radon is present virtually everywhere on Earth, but particularly in the air over land and in buildings.

Underground rock containing natural uranium continuously releases radon into water in contact with it (groundwater). Radon is readily released from surface water; consequently, groundwater has potentially much higher concentrations of radon than surface water. The average concentration of radon is usually less than 0.4 Bq/litre in public water supplies derived from surface waters and about 20 Bq/litre from groundwater sources. However, some wells have been identified with higher concentrations, up to 400 times the average, and in rare cases exceeding 10 kBq/litre.

In assessing the dose from radon ingestion, it is important that water processing technology that can remove radon be considered before consumption is taken into account. Moreover, the use of radon-containing groundwater supplies not treated for radon removal (usually by aeration) for general domestic purposes will increase the levels of radon in the indoor air, thus increasing the dose from indoor inhalation. This dose depends markedly on the forms of domestic usage and housing construction (NCRP, 1989), because most of the indoor air radon usually enters from the foundation of the house in contact with the ground rather than from the water. The amount and form of water intake, other domestic usage of water and the construction of houses vary widely throughout the world.

UNSCEAR (2000) refers to a US NAS (1999) report and calculates the "average doses from radon in drinking water to be as low as 0.025 mSv/year via inhalation and 0.002 mSv/year from ingestion" compared with the inhalation dose of 1.1 mSv/year from radon and its decay products in air.

9.5.2 Risk

One report estimates that 12% of lung cancer deaths in the USA are linked to radon (radon-222 and its short-lived decay products) in indoor air (US NAS, 1999). Thus, radon causes about 19 000 deaths (in the range of 15 000–22 000) due to lung cancer annually out of a total of about 160 000 deaths from lung cancer, which are mainly as a result of smoking tobacco (US NRC, 1999).

US NAS (1999) reports an approximately 100-fold smaller risk from exposure to radon in drinking-water (i.e., 183 deaths each year). In addition to the 19 000 deaths from lung cancer caused by radon in indoor air, a further 160 were estimated to result from inhaling radon that was emitted from water used in the home. For comparison, about 700 lung cancer deaths each year were attributed to exposure to natural levels of radon while people are outdoors.

The US NAS (1999) also assessed that the risk of stomach cancer caused by drinking-water that contains dissolved radon is extremely small, with the probability of about 20 deaths annually compared with the 13 000 deaths from stomach cancer that arise each year from other causes in the USA.

9.5.3 Guidance on radon in drinking-water supplies

Controls should be implemented if the radon concentration of drinking-water for public water supplies exceeds 100 Bq/litre. Any new, especially public, drinking-water supply using groundwater should be tested prior to being used for general consumption. If the radon concentration exceeds 100 Bq/litre, treatment of the water source should be undertaken to reduce the radon levels to well below 100 Bq/litre. If there are significant amounts of radon-producing minerals around the water source, then it may be appropriate for larger drinking-water supplies to test for radon concentration periodically – for example, every 5 years.

9.6 Sampling, analysis and reporting

9.6.1 Measuring gross alpha and gross beta activity concentrations

To analyse drinking-water for gross alpha and gross beta activities (excluding radon), the most common approach is to evaporate a known volume of the sample to dryness and measure the activity of the residue. As alpha radiation is easily absorbed within a thin layer of solid material, the reliability and sensitivity of the method for alpha determination may be reduced in samples with a high TDS content.

Table 9.4 Methods for the analysis of gross alpha and gross beta activities in drinking-water

Method, reference	Technique	Detection limit	Application
International Organization for Standardization: ISO-9695 (for gross beta) ISO-9696 (gross alpha) (ISO, 1991a, 1991b)	Evaporation	0.02–0.1 Bq/litre	Groundwater with TDS greater than 0.1 g/litre
American Public Health Association (APHA, 1998)	Co-precipitation	0.02 Bq/litre	Surface water and groundwater (TDS is not a factor)

Where possible, standardized methods should be used to determine concentrations of gross alpha and gross beta activities. Three procedures for this analysis are listed in Table 9.4.

The determination of gross beta activity using the evaporation method includes the contribution from potassium-40. An additional analysis of total potassium is therefore required if the gross beta screening value is exceeded.

The co-precipitation technique (APHA, 1998) excludes the contribution due to potassium-40; therefore, determination of total potassium is not necessary. This method is not applicable to assessment of water samples containing certain fission products, such as caesium-137. However, under normal circumstances, concentrations of fission products in drinking-water supplies are extremely low.

9.6.3 Measuring radon

There are difficulties in deriving activity concentrations of radon-222 in drinking-water arising from the ease with which radon is released from water during handling. Stirring and transferring water from one container to another will liberate dissolved radon. According to the widely used Pylon technique (Pylon, 1989, 2003), detection of radon in drinking-water is performed using a water degassing unit and Lucas scintillation chambers. Water that has been left to stand will have reduced radon activity, and boiling will remove radon completely.

9.6.4 Sampling

New groundwater sources for public supplies should be sampled at least once to determine their suitability for drinking-water supply before design and construction to characterize the radiological quality of the water supply and to assess any seasonal variation in radionuclide concentrations. This should include analysis for radon and radon daughters.

Once measurements indicate the normal range of the supply, then the sampling frequency can be reduced to, for example, every 5 years. However, if sources of potential radionuclide contamination exist nearby (e.g., mining activity or nuclear reactors), then sampling should be more frequent. Less significant surface and underground drinking-water sources may be sampled less frequently.

Levels of radon and radon daughters in groundwater supplies are usually stable over time. Monitoring of water for radon and its daughters can therefore be relatively infrequent. Knowledge of the geology of the area should be considered in determining whether the source is likely to contain significant concentrations of radon and radon daughters. An additional risk factor would be the presence of mining in the vicinity; in such circumstances, more frequent monitoring may be appropriate.

Guidance on assessing water quality, sampling techniques and programmes and the preservation and handling of samples is given in the Australian and New Zealand Standard (AS, 1998).

9.6.5 Reporting of results

The analytical results for each sample should contain the following information:

- sample identifying code or information;
- reference date and time for the reported results (e.g., sample collection date);
- identification of the standard analytical method used or a brief description of any non-standard method used;
- identification of the radionuclide(s) or type and total radioactivity determined;
- measurement-based concentration or activity value calculated using the appropriate blank for each radionuclide;
- estimates of the counting uncertainty and total projected uncertainty; and
- minimum detectable concentration for each radionuclide or parameter analysed.

The estimate of total projected uncertainty of the reported result should include the contributions from all the parameters within the analytical method (i.e., counting and other random and systematic uncertainties or errors).

10

Acceptability aspects

The most undesirable constituents of drinking-water are those capable of having a direct adverse impact on public health. Many of these are described in other chapters of these Guidelines.

To a large extent, consumers have no means of judging the safety of their drinking-water themselves, but their attitude towards their drinking-water supply and their drinking-water suppliers will be affected to a considerable extent by the aspects of water quality that they are able to perceive with their own senses. It is natural for consumers to regard with suspicion water that appears dirty or discoloured or that has an unpleasant taste or smell, even though these characteristics may not in themselves be of direct consequence to health.

The provision of drinking-water that is not only safe but also acceptable in appearance, taste and odour is of high priority. Water that is aesthetically unacceptable will undermine the confidence of consumers, lead to complaints and, more importantly, possibly lead to the use of water from sources that are less safe.

> The appearance, taste and odour of drinking-water should be acceptable to the consumer.

It is important to consider whether existing or proposed water treatment and distribution practices can affect the acceptability of drinking-water. For example, a change in disinfection practice may generate an odorous compound such as trichloramine in the treated water. Other effects may be indirect, such as the disturbance of internal pipe deposits and biofilms when changing between or blending waters from different sources in distribution systems.

The acceptability of drinking-water to consumers is subjective and can be influenced by many different constituents. The concentration at which constituents are objectionable to consumers is variable and dependent on individual and local factors, including the quality of the water to which the community is accustomed and a variety of social, environmental and cultural considerations. Guideline values have not been established for constituents influencing water quality that have no direct link to adverse health impacts.

In the summaries in this chapter and chapter 12, reference is made to levels likely to give rise to complaints from consumers. These are not precise numbers, and problems may occur at lower or higher levels, depending on individual and local circumstances.

It is not normally appropriate to directly regulate or monitor substances of health concern whose effects on the acceptability of water would normally lead to rejection of the water at concentrations significantly lower than those of concern for health; rather, these substances may be addressed through a general requirement that water be acceptable to the majority of consumers. For such substances, a health-based summary statement and guideline value are derived in these Guidelines in the usual way. In the summary statement, this is explained, and information on acceptability is described. In the tables of guideline values (see chapter 8 and Annex 4), the health-based guideline value is designated with a "C," with a footnote explaining that while the substance is of health significance, water would normally be rejected by consumers at concentrations well below the health-based guideline value. Monitoring of such substances should be undertaken in response to consumer complaints.

There are other water constituents that are of no direct consequence to health at the concentrations at which they normally occur in water but which nevertheless may be objectionable to consumers for various reasons.

10.1 Taste, odour and appearance

Taste and odour can originate from natural inorganic and organic chemical contaminants and biological sources or processes (e.g., aquatic microorganisms), from contamination by synthetic chemicals, from corrosion or as a result of water treatment (e.g., chlorination). Taste and odour may also develop during storage and distribution due to microbial activity.

Taste and odour in drinking-water may be indicative of some form of pollution or of a malfunction during water treatment or distribution. It may therefore be an indication of the presence of potentially harmful substances. The cause should be investigated and the appropriate health authorities should be consulted, particularly if there is a sudden or substantial change.

Colour, cloudiness, particulate matter and visible organisms may also be noticed by consumers and may create concerns about the quality and acceptability of a drinking-water supply.

10.1.1 Biologically derived contaminants

There are a number of diverse organisms that may have no public health significance but which are undesirable because they produce taste and odour. As well as affecting the acceptability of the water, they indicate that water treatment and/or the state of maintenance and repair of the distribution system are insufficient.

Actinomycetes and fungi

Actinomycetes and fungi can be abundant in surface water sources, including reservoirs, and they also can grow on unsuitable materials in the water supply distribution systems, such as rubber. They can give rise to geosmin, 2-methyl isoborneol and other substances, resulting in objectionable tastes and odours in the drinking-water.

Animal life[1]

Invertebrate animals are naturally present in many water resources used as sources for the supply of drinking-water and often infest shallow, open wells. Small numbers of invertebrates may also pass through water treatment works where the barriers to particulate matter are not completely effective and colonize the distribution system. Their motility may enable them and their larvae to penetrate filters at the treatment works and vents on storage reservoirs.

The types of animal concerned can be considered, for control purposes, as belonging to two groups. First, there are free-swimming organisms in the water itself or on water surfaces, such as the crustaceans *Gammarus pulex* (freshwater shrimp), *Crangonyx pseudogracilis*, *Cyclops* spp. and *Chydorus sphaericus.* Second, there are other animals that either move along surfaces or are anchored to them (e.g., water louse *Asellus aquaticus*, snails, zebra mussel *Dreissena polymorpha*, other bivalve molluscs and the bryozoan *Plumatella* sp.) or inhabit slimes (e.g., *Nais* spp., nematodes and the larvae of chironomids). In warm weather, slow sand filters can sometimes discharge the larvae of gnats (*Chironomus* and *Culex* spp.) into the water.

Many of these animals can survive, deriving food from bacteria, algae and protozoa in the water or present on slimes on pipe and tank surfaces. Few, if any, water distribution systems are completely free of animals. However, the density and composition of animal populations vary widely, from heavy infestations, including readily visible species that are objectionable to consumers, to sparse occurrences of microscopic species.

The presence of animals has largely been regarded by piped drinking-water suppliers in temperate regions as an acceptability problem, either directly or through their association with discoloured water. In tropical and subtropical countries, on the other hand, there are species of aquatic animal that act as secondary hosts for parasites. For example, the small crustacean *Cyclops* is the intermediate host of the guinea worm *Dracunculus medinensis* (see sections 7.1.1 and 11.4). However, there is no evidence that guinea worm transmission occurs from piped drinking-water supplies. The presence of animals in drinking-water, especially if visible, raises consumer concern about the quality of the drinking-water supply and should be controlled.

Penetration of waterworks and mains is more likely to be a problem when low-quality raw waters are abstracted and high-rate filtration processes are used. Pre-chlorination assists in destroying animal life and in its removal by filtration.

---

[1] The section was drawn largely from Evins (2004).

Production of high-quality water, maintenance of chlorine residuals in the distribution system and the regular cleaning of water mains by flushing or swabbing will usually control infestation.

Treatment of invertebrate infestations in piped distribution systems is discussed in detail in chapter 6 of the supporting document *Safe, Piped Water* (section 1.3).

Cyanobacteria and algae

Blooms of cyanobacteria and other algae in reservoirs and in river waters may impede coagulation and filtration, causing coloration and turbidity of water after filtration. They can also give rise to geosmin, 2-methyl isoborneol and other chemicals, which have taste thresholds in drinking-water of a few nanograms per litre. Some cyanobacterial products – cyanotoxins – are also of direct health significance (see section 8.5.6).

Iron bacteria

In waters containing ferrous and manganous salts, oxidation by iron bacteria (or by exposure to air) may cause rust-coloured deposits on the walls of tanks, pipes and channels and carry-over of deposits into the water.

10.1.2 Chemically derived contaminants

Aluminium

Naturally occurring aluminium as well as aluminium salts used as coagulants in drinking-water treatment are the most common sources of aluminium in drinking-water. The presence of aluminium at concentrations in excess of 0.1–0.2 mg/litre often leads to consumer complaints as a result of deposition of aluminium hydroxide floc in distribution systems and the exacerbation of discoloration of water by iron. It is therefore important to optimize treatment processes in order to minimize any residual aluminium entering the supply. Under good operating conditions, aluminium concentrations of less than 0.1 mg/litre are achievable in many circumstances. Available evidence does not support the derivation of a health-based guideline value for aluminium in drinking-water (see sections 8.5.4 and 12.5).

Ammonia

The threshold odour concentration of ammonia at alkaline pH is approximately 1.5 mg/litre, and a taste threshold of 35 mg/litre has been proposed for the ammonium cation. Ammonia is not of direct relevance to health at these levels, and no health-based guideline value has been proposed (see sections 8.5.3 and 12.6).

Chloride

High concentrations of chloride give a salty taste to water and beverages. Taste thresholds for the chloride anion depend on the associated cation and are in the range of 200–300 mg/litre for sodium, potassium and calcium chloride. Concentrations in excess of 250 mg/litre are increasingly likely to be detected by taste, but some consumers may become accustomed to low levels of chloride-induced taste. No health-based guideline value is proposed for chloride in drinking-water (see sections 8.5.4 and 12.22).

Chlorine

Most individuals are able to taste or smell chlorine in drinking-water at concentrations well below 5 mg/litre, and some at levels as low as 0.3 mg/litre. At a residual free chlorine concentration of between 0.6 and 1.0 mg/litre, there is an increasing likelihood that some consumers may object to the taste. The taste threshold for chlorine is below the health-based guideline value (see sections 8.5.4 and 12.23).

Chlorophenols

Chlorophenols generally have very low taste and odour thresholds. The taste thresholds in water for 2-chlorophenol, 2,4-dichlorophenol and 2,4,6-trichlorophenol are 0.1, 0.3 and 2 μg/litre, respectively. Odour thresholds are 10, 40 and 300 μg/litre, respectively. If water containing 2,4,6-trichlorophenol is free from taste, it is unlikely to present a significant risk to health (see section 12.26). Microorganisms in distribution systems may sometimes methylate chlorophenols to produce chlorinated anisoles, for which the odour threshold is considerably lower.

Colour

Drinking-water should ideally have no visible colour. Colour in drinking-water is usually due to the presence of coloured organic matter (primarily humic and fulvic acids) associated with the humus fraction of soil. Colour is also strongly influenced by the presence of iron and other metals, either as natural impurities or as corrosion products. It may also result from the contamination of the water source with industrial effluents and may be the first indication of a hazardous situation. The source of colour in a drinking-water supply should be investigated, particularly if a substantial change has taken place.

Most people can detect colours above 15 true colour units (TCU) in a glass of water. Levels of colour below 15 TCU are usually acceptable to consumers, but acceptability may vary. High colour could also indicate a high propensity to produce by-products from disinfection processes. No health-based guideline value is proposed for colour in drinking-water.

Copper

Copper in a drinking-water supply usually arises from the corrosive action of water leaching copper from copper pipes. Concentrations can vary significantly with the period of time the water has been standing in contact with the pipes; for example, first-draw water would be expected to have a higher copper concentration than a fully flushed sample. High concentrations can interfere with the intended domestic uses of the water. Copper in drinking-water may increase the corrosion of galvanized iron and steel fittings. Staining of laundry and sanitary ware occurs at copper concentrations above 1 mg/litre. At levels above 5 mg/litre, copper also imparts a colour and an undesirable bitter taste to water. Although copper can give rise to taste, it should be acceptable at the health-based guideline value (see sections 8.5.4 and 12.31).

Dichlorobenzenes

Odour thresholds of 2–10 and 0.3–30 μg/litre have been reported for 1,2- and 1,4-dichlorobenzene, respectively. Taste thresholds of 1 and 6 μg/litre have been reported for 1,2- and 1,4-dichlorobenzene, respectively. The health-based guideline values derived for 1,2- and 1,4-dichlorobenzene (see sections 8.5.4 and 12.42) far exceed the lowest reported taste and odour thresholds for these compounds.

Dissolved oxygen

The dissolved oxygen content of water is influenced by the source, raw water temperature, treatment and chemical or biological processes taking place in the distribution system. Depletion of dissolved oxygen in water supplies can encourage the microbial reduction of nitrate to nitrite and sulfate to sulfide. It can also cause an increase in the concentration of ferrous iron in solution, with subsequent discoloration at the tap when the water is aerated. No health-based guideline value is recommended.

Ethylbenzene

Ethylbenzene has an aromatic odour; the reported odour threshold in water ranges from 2 to 130 μg/litre. The lowest reported odour threshold is 100-fold lower than the health-based guideline value (see sections 8.5.4 and 12.60). The taste threshold ranges from 72 to 200 μg/litre.

Hardness

Hardness caused by calcium and magnesium is usually indicated by precipitation of soap scum and the need for excess use of soap to achieve cleaning. Public acceptability of the degree of hardness of water may vary considerably from one community to another, depending on local conditions. In particular, consumers are likely to notice changes in hardness.

The taste threshold for the calcium ion is in the range of 100–300 mg/litre, depending on the associated anion, and the taste threshold for magnesium is probably lower than that for calcium. In some instances, consumers tolerate water hardness in excess of 500 mg/litre.

Depending on the interaction of other factors, such as pH and alkalinity, water with a hardness above approximately 200 mg/litre may cause scale deposition in the treatment works, distribution system and pipework and tanks within buildings. It will also result in excessive soap consumption and subsequent “scum” formation. On heating, hard waters form deposits of calcium carbonate scale. Soft water, with a hardness of less than 100 mg/litre, may, on the other hand, have a low buffering capacity and so be more corrosive for water pipes.

No health-based guideline value is proposed for hardness in drinking-water.

Hydrogen sulfide

The taste and odour thresholds of hydrogen sulfide in water are estimated to be between 0.05 and 0.1 mg/litre. The "rotten eggs" odour of hydrogen sulfide is particularly noticeable in some groundwaters and in stagnant drinking-water in the distribution system, as a result of oxygen depletion and the subsequent reduction of sulfate by bacterial activity.

Sulfide is oxidized rapidly to sulfate in well aerated or chlorinated water, and hydrogen sulfide levels in oxygenated water supplies are normally very low. The presence of hydrogen sulfide in drinking-water can be easily detected by the consumer and requires immediate corrective action. It is unlikely that a person could consume a harmful dose of hydrogen sulfide from drinking-water, and hence a health-based guideline value has not been derived for this compound (see sections 8.5.1 and 12.71).

Iron

Anaerobic groundwater may contain ferrous iron at concentrations of up to several milligrams per litre without discoloration or turbidity in the water when directly pumped from a well. On exposure to the atmosphere, however, the ferrous iron oxidizes to ferric iron, giving an objectionable reddish-brown colour to the water.

Iron also promotes the growth of "iron bacteria," which derive their energy from the oxidation of ferrous iron to ferric iron and in the process deposit a slimy coating on the piping. At levels above 0.3 mg/litre, iron stains laundry and plumbing fixtures. There is usually no noticeable taste at iron concentrations below 0.3 mg/litre, although turbidity and colour may develop. No health-based guideline value is proposed for iron (see sections 8.5.4 and 12.74).

Manganese

At levels exceeding 0.1 mg/litre, manganese in water supplies causes an undesirable taste in beverages and stains sanitary ware and laundry. The presence of manganese in drinking-water, like that of iron, may lead to the accumulation of deposits in the distribution system. Concentrations below 0.1 mg/litre are usually acceptable to consumers. Even at a concentration of 0.2 mg/litre, manganese will often form a coating on pipes, which may slough off as a black precipitate. The health-based guideline value for manganese is 4 times higher than this acceptability threshold of 0.1 mg/litre (see sections 8.5.1 and 12.79).

Monochloramine

Most individuals are able to taste or smell monochloramine, generated from the reaction of chlorine with ammonia, in drinking-water at concentrations well below

5 mg/litre, and some at levels as low as 0.3 mg/litre. The taste threshold for monochloramine is below the health-based guideline value (see sections 8.5.4 and 12.89).

Monochlorobenzene

Taste and odour thresholds of 10–20 μg/litre and odour thresholds ranging from 40 to 120 μg/litre have been reported for monochlorobenzene. A health-based guideline value has not been derived for monochlorobenzene (see sections 8.5.4 and 12.91), although the health-based value that could be derived far exceeds the lowest reported taste and odour threshold in water.

Petroleum oils

Petroleum oils can give rise to the presence of a number of low molecular weight hydrocarbons that have low odour thresholds in drinking-water. Although there are no formal data, experience indicates that these may have lower odour thresholds when several are present as a mixture. Benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene and xylenes are considered individually in this section, as health-based guideline values have been derived for these chemicals. However, a number of other hydrocarbons, particularly alkylbenzenes such as trimethylbenzene, may give rise to a very unpleasant "diesel-like" odour at concentrations of a few micrograms per litre.

pH and corrosion

Although pH usually has no direct impact on consumers, it is one of the most important operational water quality parameters. Careful attention to pH control is necessary at all stages of water treatment to ensure satisfactory water clarification and disinfection (see the supporting document *Safe, Piped Water*; section 1.3). For effective disinfection with chlorine, the pH should preferably be less than 8; however, lower-pH water is likely to be corrosive. The pH of the water entering the distribution system must be controlled to minimize the corrosion of water mains and pipes in household water systems. Alkalinity and calcium management also contribute to the stability of water and control its aggressiveness to pipe and appliance. Failure to minimize corrosion can result in the contamination of drinking-water and in adverse effects on its taste and appearance. The optimum pH required will vary in different supplies according to the composition of the water and the nature of the construction materials used in the distribution system, but it is usually in the range 6.5–8. Extreme values of pH can result from accidental spills, treatment breakdowns and insufficiently cured cement mortar pipe linings or cement mortar linings applied when the alkalinity of the water is low. No health-based guideline value has been proposed for pH (see sections 8.5.1 and 12.100).

Sodium

The taste threshold concentration of sodium in water depends on the associated anion and the temperature of the solution. At room temperature, the average taste threshold for sodium is about 200 mg/litre. No health-based guideline value has been derived (see sections 8.5.1 and 12.108).

Styrene

Styrene has a sweet odour, and reported odour thresholds for styrene in water range from 4 to 2600 μg/litre, depending on temperature. Styrene may therefore be detected in water at concentrations below its health-based guideline value (see sections 8.5.2 and 12.109).

Sulfate

The presence of sulfate in drinking-water can cause noticeable taste, and very high levels might cause a laxative effect in unaccustomed consumers. Taste impairment varies with the nature of the associated cation; taste thresholds have been found to range from 250 mg/litre for sodium sulfate to 1000 mg/litre for calcium sulfate. It is generally considered that taste impairment is minimal at levels below 250 mg/litre. No health-based guideline value has been derived for sulfate (see sections 8.5.1 and 12.110).

Synthetic detergents

In many countries, persistent types of anionic detergent have been replaced by others that are more easily biodegraded, and hence the levels found in water sources have decreased substantially. The concentration of detergents in drinking-water should not be allowed to reach levels giving rise to either foaming or taste problems. The presence of any detergent may indicate sanitary contamination of source water.

Toluene

Toluene has a sweet, pungent, benzene-like odour. The reported taste threshold ranges from 40 to 120 μg/litre. The reported odour threshold for toluene in water ranges from 24 to 170 μg/litre. Toluene may therefore affect the acceptability of water at concentrations below its health-based guideline value (see sections 8.5.2 and 12.114).

Total dissolved solids

The palatability of water with a TDS level of less than 600 mg/litre is generally considered to be good; drinking-water becomes significantly and increasingly unpalatable at TDS levels greater than about 1000 mg/litre. The presence of high levels of TDS may also be objectionable to consumers, owing to excessive scaling in water pipes, heaters, boilers and household appliances. No health-based guideline value for TDS has been proposed (see sections 8.5.1 and 12.115).

Trichlorobenzenes

Odour thresholds of 10, 5–30 and 50 μg/litre have been reported for 1,2,3-, 1,2,4- and 1,3,5-trichlorobenzene, respectively. A taste and odour threshold concentration of

30 µg/litre has been reported for 1,2,4-trichlorobenzene. A health-based guideline value was not derived for trichlorobenzenes, although the health-based value that could be derived (see sections 8.5.2 and 12.117) exceeds the lowest reported odour threshold in water of 5 µg/litre.

Turbidity

Turbidity in drinking-water is caused by particulate matter that may be present from source water as a consequence of inadequate filtration or from resuspension of sediment in the distribution system. It may also be due to the presence of inorganic particulate matter in some groundwaters or sloughing of biofilm within the distribution system. The appearance of water with a turbidity of less than 5 NTU is usually acceptable to consumers, although this may vary with local circumstances.

Particulates can protect microorganisms from the effects of disinfection and can stimulate bacterial growth. In all cases where water is disinfected, the turbidity must be low so that disinfection can be effective. The impact of turbidity on disinfection efficiency is discussed in more detail in section 4.1.

Turbidity is also an important operational parameter in process control and can indicate problems with treatment processes, particularly coagulation/sedimentation and filtration.

No health-based guideline value for turbidity has been proposed; ideally, however, median turbidity should be below 0.1 NTU for effective disinfection, and changes in turbidity are an important process control parameter.

Xylenes

Xylene concentrations in the range of 300 µg/litre produce a detectable taste and odour. The odour threshold for xylene isomers in water has been reported to range from 20 to 1800 µg/litre. The lowest odour threshold is well below the health-based guideline value derived for the compound (see sections 8.5.2 and 12.124).

Zinc

Zinc imparts an undesirable astringent taste to water at a taste threshold concentration of about 4 mg/litre (as zinc sulfate). Water containing zinc at concentrations in excess of 3–5 mg/litre may appear opalescent and develop a greasy film on boiling. Although drinking-water seldom contains zinc at concentrations above 0.1 mg/litre, levels in tap water can be considerably higher because of the zinc used in older galvanized plumbing materials. No health-based guideline value has been proposed for zinc in drinking-water (see sections 8.5.4 and 12.125).

10.1.3 Treatment of taste, odour and appearance problems

The following water treatment techniques are generally effective in removing organic chemicals that cause tastes and odours:

- —aeration (see section 8.4.6);
- —activated carbon (GAC or PAC) (see section 8.4.8); and
- —ozonation (see section 8.4.3).

Tastes and odours caused by disinfectants and DBPs are best controlled through careful operation of the disinfection process. In principle, they can be removed by activated carbon.

Manganese can be removed by chlorination followed by filtration. Techniques for removing hydrogen sulfide include aeration, GAC, filtration and oxidation. Ammonia can be removed by biological nitrification. Precipitation softening or cation exchange can reduce hardness. Other taste- and odour-causing inorganic chemicals (e.g., chloride and sulfate) are generally not amenable to treatment (see the supporting document *Chemical Safety of Drinking-water*; section 1.3).

10.2 Temperature

Cool water is generally more palatable than warm water, and temperature will impact on the acceptability of a number of other inorganic constituents and chemical contaminants that may affect taste. High water temperature enhances the growth of microorganisms and may increase taste, odour, colour and corrosion problems.

11

Microbial fact sheets

Fact sheets are provided on potential waterborne pathogens as well as on indicator and index microorganisms.

The potential waterborne pathogens include:

- bacteria, viruses, protozoa and helminths identified in Table 7.1 and Figure 7.1, with the exception of *Schistosoma*, which is primarily spread by contact with contaminated surface water during bathing and washing;
- potentially emerging pathogens, including *Helicobacter pylori*, *Tsukamurella*, *Isospora belli* and microsporidia, for which waterborne transmission is plausible but unconfirmed;
- *Bacillus*, which includes the foodborne pathogenic species *Bacillus cereus* but for which there is no evidence at this time of waterborne transmission; and
- hazardous cyanobacteria.

The human health effects caused by waterborne transmission vary in severity from mild gastroenteritis to severe and sometimes fatal diarrhoea, dysentery, hepatitis and typhoid fever. Contaminated water can be the source of large outbreaks of disease, including cholera, dysentery and cryptosporidiosis; for the majority of waterborne pathogens, however, there are other important sources of infection, such as person-to-person contact and food.

Most waterborne pathogens are introduced into drinking-water supplies in human or animal faeces, do not grow in water and initiate infection in the gastrointestinal tract following ingestion. However, *Legionella*, atypical mycobacteria, *Burkholderia pseudomallei* and *Naegleria fowleri* are environmental organisms that can grow in water and soil. Besides ingestion, other routes of transmission can include inhalation, leading to infections of the respiratory tract (e.g., *Legionella*, atypical mycobacteria), and contact, leading to infections at sites as diverse as the skin and brain (e.g., *Naegleria fowleri*, *Burkholderia pseudomallei*).

Of all the waterborne pathogens, the helminth *Dracunculus medinensis* is unique in that it is the only pathogen that is solely transmitted through drinking-water.

The fact sheets on potential pathogens include information on human health effects, sources and occurrence, routes of transmission and the significance of drinking-water as a source of infection. The fact sheets on microorganisms that can be used as indicators of the effectiveness of control measures or as indices for the potential presence of pathogenic microorganisms provide information on indicator value, source and occurrence, application and significance of detection.

11.1 Bacterial pathogens

Most bacterial pathogens potentially transmitted by water infect the gastrointestinal tract and are excreted in the faeces of infected humans and other animals. However, there are also some waterborne bacterial pathogens, such as *Legionella*, *Burkholderia pseudomallei* and atypical mycobacteria, that can grow in water and soil. The routes of transmission of these bacteria include inhalation and contact (bathing), with infections occurring in the respiratory tract, in skin lesions or in the brain.

11.1.1 Acinetobacter

General description

Acinetobacter spp. are Gram-negative, oxidase-negative, non-motile coccobacilli (short plump rods). Owing to difficulties in naming individual species and biovars, the term *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus baumannii* complex is used in some classification schemes to cover all subgroups of this species, such as *A. baumannii*, *A. iwoffii* and *A. junii*.

Human health effects

Acinetobacter spp. are usually commensal organisms, but they occasionally cause infections, predominantly in susceptible patients in hospitals. They are opportunistic pathogens that may cause urinary tract infections, pneumonia, bacteraemia, secondary meningitis and wound infections. These diseases are predisposed by factors such as malignancy, burns, major surgery and weakened immune systems, such as in neonates and elderly individuals. The emergence and rapid spread of multidrug-resistant *A. calcoaceticus baumannii* complex, causing nosocomial infections, are of concern in health care facilities.

Source and occurrence

Acinetobacter spp. are ubiquitous inhabitants of soil, water and sewage environments. *Acinetobacter* has been isolated from 97% of natural surface water samples in numbers of up to 100/ml. The organisms have been found to represent 1.0–5.5% of the HPC flora in drinking-water samples and have been isolated from 5–92% of distribution water samples. In a survey of untreated groundwater supplies in the USA, *Acinetobacter* spp. were detected in 38% of the groundwater supplies at an arithmetic mean density of 8/100 ml. The study also revealed that slime production, a virulence factor for *A. calcoaceticus*, was not significantly different between well water isolates and clinical strains, suggesting some degree of pathogenic potential for strains isolated from groundwater. *Acinetobacter* spp. are part of the natural microbial flora of the skin and occasionally the respiratory tract of healthy individuals.

Routes of exposure

Environmental sources within hospitals and person-to-person transmission are the likely sources for most outbreaks of hospital infections. Infection is most commonly associated with contact with wounds and burns or inhalation by susceptible individuals. In patients with *Acinetobacter* bacteraemia, intravenous catheters have also been identified as a source of infection. Outbreaks of infection have been associated with water baths and room humidifiers. Ingestion is not a usual source of infection.

Significance in drinking-water

While *Acinetobacter* spp. are often detected in treated drinking-water supplies, an association between the presence of *Acinetobacter* spp. in drinking-water and clinical disease has not been confirmed. There is no evidence of gastrointestinal infection through ingestion of *Acinetobacter* spp. in drinking-water among the general population. However, transmission of non-gastrointestinal infections by drinking-water may be possible in susceptible individuals, particularly in settings such as health care facilities and hospitals. As discussed in chapter 6, specific WSPs should be developed for buildings, including hospitals and other health care facilities. These plans need to take account of particular sensitivities of occupants. *Acinetobacter* spp. are sensitive to disinfectants such as chlorine, and numbers will be low in the presence of a disinfectant residual. Control measures that can limit growth of the bacteria in distribution systems include treatment to optimize organic carbon removal, restriction of the residence time of water in distribution systems and maintenance of disinfectant residuals. *Acinetobacter* spp. are detected by HPC, which can be used together with parameters such as disinfectant residuals to indicate conditions that could support growth of these organisms. However, *E. coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) cannot be used as an index for the presence/absence of *Acinetobacter* spp.

Selected bibliography

Bartram J et al., eds. (2003) *Heterotrophic plate counts and drinking-water safety: the significance of HPCs for water quality and human health*. WHO Emerging Issues in Water and Infectious Disease Series. London, IWA Publishing.

Bergogne-Berezin E, Towner KJ (1996) *Acinetobacter* as nosocomial pathogens: microbiological, clinical and epidemiological features. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews*, 9:148–165.

Bifulco JM, Shirey JJ, Bissonnette GK (1989) Detection of *Acinetobacter* spp. in rural drinking water supplies. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, 55:2214–2219.

Jellison TK, McKinnon PS, Rybak MJ (2001) Epidemiology, resistance and outcomes of *Acinetobacter baumannii* bacteremia treated with imipenem-cilastatin or ampicillin-sulbactam. *Pharmacotherapy*, 21:142–148.

Rusin PA et al. (1997) Risk assessment of opportunistic bacterial pathogens in drinking-water. *Reviews of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*, 152:57–83.

11.1.2 Aeromonas

General description

Aeromonas spp. are Gram-negative, non-spore-forming, facultative anaerobic bacilli belonging to the family Vibrionaceae. They bear many similarities to the Enterobacteriaceae. The genus is divided into two groups. The group of psychrophilic non-motile aeromonads consists of only one species, *A. salmonicida*, an obligate fish pathogen that is not considered further here. The group of mesophilic motile (single polar flagellum) aeromonads is considered of potential human health significance and consists of the species *A. hydrophila*, *A. caviae*, *A. veronii* subsp. *sobria*, *A. jandaei*, *A. veronii* subsp. *veronii* and *A. schubertii*. The bacteria are normal inhabitants of fresh water and occur in water, soil and many foods, particularly meat and milk.

Human health effects

Aeromonas spp. can cause infections in humans, including septicaemia, particularly in immunocompromised patients, wound infections and respiratory tract infections. There have been some claims that *Aeromonas* spp. can cause gastrointestinal illness, but epidemiological evidence is not consistent. Despite marked toxin production by *Aeromonas* spp. *in vitro*, diarrhoea has not yet been introduced in test animals or human volunteers.

Source and occurrence

Aeromonas spp. occur in water, soil and food, particularly meat, fish and milk. *Aeromonas* spp. are generally readily found in most fresh waters, and they have been detected in many treated drinking-water supplies, mainly as a result of growth in distribution systems. The factors that affect the occurrence of *Aeromonas* spp. in water distribution systems are not fully understood, but organic content, temperature, the residence time of water in the distribution network and the presence of residual chlorine have been shown to influence population sizes.

Routes of exposure

Wound infections have been associated with contaminated soil and water-related activities, such as swimming, diving, boating and fishing. Septicaemia can follow from such wound infections. In immunocompromised individuals, septicaemia may arise from aeromonads present in their own gastrointestinal tract.

Significance in drinking-water

Despite frequent isolation of *Aeromonas* spp. from drinking-water, the body of evidence does not provide significant support for waterborne transmission. Aeromonads typically found in drinking-water do not belong to the same DNA homology groups as those associated with cases of gastroenteritis. The presence of *Aeromonas* spp. in drinking-water supplies is generally considered a nuisance. Entry of aeromonads into distribution systems can be minimized by adequate disinfection. Control measures that can limit growth of the bacteria in distribution systems include treatment to optimize organic carbon removal, restriction of the residence time of water in distribution systems and maintenance of disinfectant residuals. *Aeromonas* spp. are detected by HPC, which can be used together with parameters such as disinfectant residuals to indicate conditions that could support growth of these organisms. However, *E. coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) cannot be used as an index for the presence/absence of *Aeromonas* spp.

Selected bibliography

Bartram J et al., eds. (2003) *Heterotrophic plate counts and drinking-water safety: the significance of HPCs for water quality and human health*. WHO Emerging Issues in Water and Infectious Disease Series. London, IWA Publishing.

Borchardt MA, Stemper ME, Standridge JH (2003) *Aeromonas* isolates from human diarrheic stool and groundwater compared by pulsed-field gel electrophoresis. *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, 9:224–228.

WHO (2002) *Aeromonas*. In: *Guidelines for drinking-water quality*, 2nd ed. *Addendum: Microbiological agents in drinking water.* Geneva, World Health Organization.

11.1.3 Bacillus

General description

Bacillus spp. are large (4–10 µm), Gram-positive, strictly aerobic or facultatively anaerobic encapsulated bacilli. They have the important feature of producing spores that are exceptionally resistant to unfavourable conditions. *Bacillus* spp. are classified into the subgroups *B. polymyxa*, *B. subtilis* (which includes *B. cereus* and *B. licheniformis*), *B. brevis* and *B. anthracis*.

Human health effects

Although most *Bacillus* spp. are harmless, a few are pathogenic to humans and animals. *Bacillus cereus* causes food poisoning similar to staphylococcal food poisoning. Some strains produce heat-stable toxin in food that is associated with spore germination and gives rise to a syndrome of vomiting within 1–5 h of ingestion. Other strains produce a heat-labile enterotoxin after ingestion that causes diarrhoea within 10–15 h. *Bacillus cereus* is known to cause bacteraemia in immunocompromised patients as well as symptoms such as vomiting and diarrhoea. *Bacillus anthracis* causes anthrax in humans and animals.

Source and occurrence

Bacillus spp. commonly occur in a wide range of natural environments, such as soil and water. They form part of the HPC bacteria, which are readily detected in most drinking-water supplies.

Routes of exposure

Infection with *Bacillus* spp. is associated with the consumption of a variety of foods, especially rice, pastas and vegetables, as well as raw milk and meat products. Disease may result from the ingestion of the organisms or toxins produced by the organisms. Drinking-water has not been identified as a source of infection of pathogenic *Bacillus* spp., including *Bacillus cereus.* Waterborne transmission of *Bacillus* gastroenteritis has not been confirmed.

Significance in drinking-water

Bacillus spp. are often detected in drinking-water supplies, even supplies treated and disinfected by acceptable procedures. This is largely due to the resistance of spores to disinfection processes. Owing to a lack of evidence that waterborne *Bacillus* spp. are clinically significant, specific management strategies are not required.

Selected bibliography

Bartram J et al., eds. (2003) *Heterotrophic plate counts and drinking-water safety: the significance of HPCs for water quality and human health*. WHO Emerging Issues in Water and Infectious Disease Series. London, IWA Publishing.

11.1.4 Burkholderia pseudomallei

General description

Burkholderia pseudomallei is a Gram-negative bacillus commonly found in soil and muddy water, predominantly in tropical regions such as northern Australia and south-east Asia. The organism is acid tolerant and survives in water for prolonged periods in the absence of nutrients.

Human health effects

Burkholderia pseudomallei can cause the disease melioidosis, which is endemic in northern Australia and other tropical regions. The most common clinical manifestation is pneumonia, which may be fatal. In some of these areas, melioidosis is the most common cause of community-acquired pneumonia. Cases appear throughout the year but peak during the rainy season. Many patients present with milder forms of pneumonia, which respond well to appropriate antibiotics, but some may present with a severe septicaemic pneumonia. Other symptoms include skin abscesses or ulcers, abscesses in internal organs and unusual neurological illnesses, such as brainstem encephalitis and acute paraplegia. Although melioidosis can occur in healthy children and adults, it occurs mainly in people whose defence mechanisms against infection are impaired by underlying conditions or poor general health associated with poor nutrition or living conditions.

Source and occurrence

The organism occurs predominantly in tropical regions, typically in soil or surface-accumulated muddy water, from where it may reach raw water sources and also drinking-water supplies. The number of organisms in drinking-water that would constitute a significant risk of infection is not known.

Routes of exposure

Most infections appear to be through contact of skin cuts or abrasions with contaminated water. In south-east Asia, rice paddies represent a significant source of infection. Infection may also occur via other routes, particularly through inhalation or ingestion. The relative importance of these routes of infection is not known.

Significance in drinking-water

In two Australian outbreaks of melioidosis, indistinguishable isolates of *B. pseudomallei* were cultured from cases and the drinking-water supply. The detection of the organisms in one drinking-water supply followed replacement of water pipes and chlorination failure, while the second supply was unchlorinated. Within a WSP, control measures that should provide effective protection against this organism include application of established treatment and disinfection processes for drinking-water coupled with protection of the distribution system from contamination, including during repairs and maintenance. HPC and disinfectant residual as measures of water treatment effectiveness and application of appropriate mains repair procedures could be used to indicate protection against *B. pseudomallei.* Because of the environmental occurrence of *B. pseudomallei*, *E. coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) is not a suitable index for the presence/absence of this organism.

Selected bibliography

Ainsworth R, ed. (2004) *Safe piped water: Managing microbial water quality in piped distribution systems*. IWA Publishing, London, for the World Health Organization, Geneva.

Currie BJ (2000) The epidemiology of melioidosis in Australia and Papua New Guinea. *Acta Tropica*, 74:121–127.

Currie BJ et al. (2001) A cluster of melioidosis cases from an endemic region is clonal and is linked to the water supply using molecular typing of *Burkholderia pseudomallei* isolates. *American Journal of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene*, 65:177–179.

Inglis TJJ et al. (2000) Outbreak strain of *Burkholderia pseudomallei* traced to water treatment plant. *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, 6:56–59.

11.1.5 Campylobacter

General description

Campylobacter spp. are microaerophilic (require decreased oxygen) and capnophilic (require increased carbon dioxide), Gram-negative, curved spiral rods with a single unsheathed polar flagellum. *Campylobacter* spp. are one of the most important causes of acute gastroenteritis worldwide. *Campylobacter jejuni* is the most frequently isolated species from patients with acute diarrhoeal disease, whereas *C. coli*, *C. laridis* and *C. fetus* have also been isolated in a small proportion of cases. Two closely related genera, *Helicobacter* and *Archobacter*, include species previously classified as *Campylobacter* spp.

Human health effects

An important feature of *C. jejuni* is relatively high infectivity compared with other bacterial pathogens. As few as 1000 organisms can cause infection. Most symptomatic infections occur in infancy and early childhood. The incubation period is usually 2–4 days. Clinical symptoms of *C. jejuni* infection are characterized by abdominal pain, diarrhoea (with or without blood or faecal leukocytes), vomiting, chills and fever. The infection is self-limited and resolves in 3–7 days. Relapses may occur in 5–10% of untreated patients. Other clinical manifestations of *C. jejuni* infections in humans include reactive arthritis and meningitis. Several reports have associated *C. jejuni* infection with Guillain-Barré syndrome, an acute demyelinating disease of the peripheral nerves.

Source and occurrence

Campylobacter spp. occur in a variety of environments. Wild and domestic animals, especially poultry, wild birds and cattle, are important reservoirs. Pets and other animals may also be reservoirs. Food, including meat and unpasteurized milk, are important sources of *Campylobacter* infections. Water is also a significant source. The occurrence of the organisms in surface waters has proved to be strongly dependent on rainfall, water temperature and the presence of waterfowl.

Routes of exposure

Most *Campylobacter* infections are reported as sporadic in nature, with food considered a common source of infection. Transmission to humans typically occurs by the consumption of animal products. Meat, particularly poultry products, and unpasteurized milk are important sources of infection. Contaminated drinking-water supplies have been identified as a source of outbreaks. The number of cases in these outbreaks ranged from a few to several thousand, with sources including unchlorinated or inadequately chlorinated surface water supplies and faecal contamination of water storage reservoirs by wild birds.

Significance in drinking-water

Contaminated drinking-water supplies have been identified as a significant source of outbreaks of campylobacteriosis. The detection of waterborne outbreaks and cases appears to be increasing. Waterborne transmission has been confirmed by the isolation of the same strains from patients and drinking-water they had consumed. Within a WSP, control measures that can be applied to manage potential risk from *Campylobacter* spp. include protection of raw water supplies from animal and human waste, adequate treatment and protection of water during distribution. Storages of treated and disinfected water should be protected from bird faeces. *Campylobacter* spp. are faecally borne pathogens and are not particularly resistant to disinfection. Hence, *E. coli* (or thermotolerant coliforms) is an appropriate indicator for the presence/absence of *Campylobacter* spp. in drinking-water supplies.

Selected bibliography

Frost JA (2001) Current epidemiological issues in human campylobacteriosis. *Journal of Applied Microbiology*, 90:85S–95S.

Koenraad PMFJ, Rombouts FM, Notermans SHW (1997) Epidemiological aspects of thermophilic *Campylobacter* in water-related environments: A review. *Water Environment Research*, 69:52–63.

Kuroki S et al. (1991) Guillain-Barré syndrome associated with *Campylobacter* infection. *Pediatric Infectious Diseases Journal*, 10:149–151.

11.1.6 Escherichia coli pathogenic strains

General description

Escherichia coli is present in large numbers in the normal intestinal flora of humans and animals, where it generally causes no harm. However, in other parts of the body, *E. coli* can cause serious disease, such as urinary tract infections, bacteraemia and meningitis. A limited number of enteropathogenic strains can cause acute diarrhoea. Several classes of enteropathogenic *E. coli* have been identified on the basis of different virulence factors, including enterohaemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC), enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC), enteropathogenic *E. coli* (EPEC), enteroinvasive *E. coli* (EIEC), enteroaggregative *E. coli* (EAEC) and diffusely adherent *E. coli* (DAEC). More is known about the first four classes named; the pathogenicity and prevalence of EAEC and DAEC strains are less well established.

Human health effects

EHEC serotypes, such as *E. coli* O157:H7 and *E. coli* O111, cause diarrhoea that ranges from mild and non-bloody to highly bloody, which is indistinguishable from haemorrhagic colitis. Between 2% and 7% of cases can develop the potentially fatal haemolytic uraemic syndrome (HUS), which is characterized by acute renal failure and haemolytic anaemia. Children under 5 years of age are at most risk of developing HUS. The infectivity of EHEC strains is substantially higher than that of the other strains. As few as 100 EHEC organisms can cause infection. ETEC produces heat-labile or heat-stable *E. coli* enterotoxin, or both toxins simultaneously, and is an important cause of diarrhoea in developing countries, especially in young children. Symptoms of ETEC infection include mild watery diarrhoea, abdominal cramps, nausea and headache. Infection with EPEC has been associated with severe, chronic, non-bloody diarrhoea, vomiting and fever in infants. EPEC infections are rare in developed countries, but occur commonly in developing countries, with infants presenting with malnutrition, weight loss and growth retardation. EIEC causes watery and occasionally bloody diarrhoea where strains invade colon cells by a pathogenic mechanism similar to that of *Shigella*.

Source and occurrence

Enteropathogenic *E. coli* are enteric organisms, and humans are the major reservoir, particularly of EPEC, ETEC and EIEC strains. Livestock, such as cattle and sheep and, to a lesser extent, goats, pigs and chickens, are a major source of EHEC strains. The latter have also been associated with raw vegetables, such as bean sprouts. The pathogens have been detected in a variety of water environments.

Routes of exposure

Infection is associated with person-to-person transmission, contact with animals, food and consumption of contaminated water. Person-to-person transmissions are particularly prevalent in communities where there is close contact between individuals, such as nursing homes and day care centres.

Significance in drinking-water

Waterborne transmission of pathogenic *E. coli* has been well documented for recreational waters and contaminated drinking-water. A well publicized waterborne outbreak of illness caused by *E. coli* O157:H7 (and *Campylobacter jejuni*) occurred in the farming community of Walkerton in Ontario, Canada. The outbreak took place in May 2000 and led to 7 deaths and more than 2300 illnesses. The drinking-water supply was contaminated by rainwater runoff containing cattle excreta. Within a WSP, control measures that can be applied to manage potential risk from enteropathogenic *E. coli* include protection of raw water supplies from animal and human waste, adequate treatment and protection of water during distribution. There is no indication that the response of enteropathogenic strains of *E. coli* to water treatment and disinfection procedures differs from that of other *E. coli*. Hence, conventional testing for *E. coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliform bacteria) provides an appropriate index for the enteropathogenic serotypes in drinking-water. This applies even though standard tests will generally not detect EHEC strains.

Selected bibliography

Nataro JP, Kaper JB (1998) Diarrheagenic *Escherichia coli*. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews*, 11:142–201.

O'Connor DR (2002) *Report of the Walkerton Inquiry: The events of May 2000 and related issues. Part 1: A summary*. Toronto, Ontario, Ontario Ministry of the Attorney General, Queen's Printer for Ontario.

11.1.7 Helicobacter pylori

General description

Helicobacter pylori, originally classified as *Campylobacter pylori*, is a Gram-negative, microaerophilic, spiral-shaped, motile bacterium. There are at least 14 species of *Helicobacter*, but only *H. pylori* has been identified as a human pathogen.

Human health effects

Helicobacter pylori is found in the stomach; although most infections are asymptomatic, the organism is associated with chronic gastritis, which may lead to complications such as peptic and duodenal ulcer disease and gastric cancer. Whether the organism is truly the cause of these conditions remains unclear. The majority of *H. pylori* infections are initiated in childhood and without treatment are chronic. The infections are more prevalent in developing countries and are associated with overcrowded living conditions. Interfamilial clustering is common.

Source and occurrence

Humans appear to be the primary host of *H. pylori*. Other hosts may include domestic cats. There is evidence that *H. pylori* is sensitive to bile salts, which would reduce the likelihood of faecal excretion, although it has been isolated from faeces of young children. *Helicobacter pylori* has been detected in water. Although *H. pylori* is unlikely to grow in the environment, it has been found to survive for 3 weeks in biofilms and up to 20–30 days in surface waters. In a study conducted in the USA, *H. pylori* was found in the majority of surface water and shallow groundwater samples. The presence of *H. pylori* was not correlated with the presence of *E. coli*. Possible contamination of the environment can be through children with diarrhoea or through vomiting by children as well as adults.

Routes of exposure

Person-to-person contact within families has been identified as the most likely source of infection through oral–oral transmission. *Helicobacter pylori* can survive well in mucus or vomit. However, it is difficult to detect in mouth or faecal samples. Faecal–oral transmission is also considered possible.

Significance in drinking-water

Consumption of contaminated drinking-water has been suggested as a potential source of infection, but further investigation is required to establish any link with waterborne transmission. Humans are the principal source of *H. pylori*, and the organism is sensitive to oxidizing disinfectants. Hence, control measures that can be applied to protect drinking-water supplies from *H. pylori* include preventing contamination by human waste and adequate disinfection. *Escherichia coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) is not a reliable index for the presence/absence of this organism.

Selected bibliography

Dunn BE, Cohen H, Blaser MJ (1997) *Helicobacter pylori*. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews*, 10:720–741.

Hegarty JP, Dowd MT, Baker KH (1999) Occurrence of *Helicobacter pylori* in surface water in the United States. *Journal of Applied Microbiology*, 87:697–701.

Hulten K et al. (1996) *Helicobacter pylori* in drinking-water in Peru. *Gastroenterology*, 110:1031–1035.

Mazari-Hiriart M, López-Vidal Y, Calva JJ (2001) *Helicobacter pylori* in water systems for human use in Mexico City. *Water Science and Technology*, 43:93–98.

11.1.8 Klebsiella

General description

Klebsiella spp. are Gram-negative, non-motile bacilli that belong to the family Enterobacteriaceae. The genus *Klebsiella* consists of a number of species, including *K. pneumoniae*, *K. oxytoca*, *K. planticola* and *K. terrigena*. The outermost layer of *Klebsiella* spp. consists of a large polysaccharide capsule that distinguishes the organisms from other members of the family. Approximately 60–80% of all *Klebsiella* spp. isolated from faeces and clinical specimens are *K. pneumoniae* and are positive in the thermotolerant coliform test. *Klebsiella oxytoca* has also been identified as a pathogen.

Human health effects

Klebsiella spp. have been identified as colonizing hospital patients, where spread is associated with the frequent handling of patients (e.g., in intensive care units). Patients at highest risk are those with impaired immune systems, such as the elderly or very young, patients with burns or excessive wounds, those undergoing immunosuppressive therapy or those with HIV/AIDS infection. Colonization may lead to invasive infections. On rare occasions, *Klebsiella* spp., notably *K. pneumoniae* and *K. oxytoca*, may cause serious infections, such as destructive pneumonia.

Source and occurrence

Klebsiella spp. are natural inhabitants of many water environments, and they may multiply to high numbers in waters rich in nutrients, such as pulp mill wastes, textile finishing plants and sugar-cane processing operations. In drinking-water distribution systems, they are known to colonize washers in taps. The organisms can grow in water distribution systems. *Klebsiella* spp. are also excreted in the faeces of many healthy humans and animals, and they are readily detected in sewage-polluted water.

Routes of exposure

Klebsiella can cause nosocomial infections, and contaminated water and aerosols may be a potential source of the organisms in hospital environments and other health care facilities.

Significance in drinking-water

Klebsiella spp. are not considered to represent a source of gastrointestinal illness in the general population through ingestion of drinking-water. *Klebsiella* spp. detected in drinking-water are generally biofilm organisms and are unlikely to represent a health risk. The organisms are reasonably sensitive to disinfectants, and entry into distribution systems can be prevented by adequate treatment. Growth within distribution systems can be minimized by strategies that are designed to minimize biofilm growth, including treatment to optimize organic carbon removal, restriction of the residence time of water in distribution systems and maintenance of disinfectant residuals. *Klebsiella* is a coliform and can be detected by traditional tests for total coliforms.

Selected bibliography

Ainsworth R, ed. (2004) *Safe, piped water: Managing microbial water quality in piped distribution systems*. IWA Publishing, London, for the World Health Organization, Geneva.

Bartram J et al., eds. (2003) *Heterotrophic plate counts and drinking-water safety: the significance of HPCs for water quality and human health*. WHO Emerging Issues in Water and Infectious Disease Series. London, IWA Publishing.

11.1.9 Legionella

General description

The genus *Legionella*, a member of the family Legionellaceae, has at least 42 species. Legionellae are Gram-negative, rod-shaped, non-spore-forming bacteria that require L-cysteine for growth and primary isolation. *Legionella* spp. are heterotrophic bacteria found in a wide range of water environments and can proliferate at temperatures above 25 °C.

Human health effects

Although all *Legionella* spp. are considered potentially pathogenic for humans, *L. pneumophila* is the major waterborne pathogen responsible for legionellosis, of which two clinical forms are known: Legionnaires' disease and Pontiac fever. The former is a pneumonic illness with an incubation period of 3–6 days. Host factors influence the likelihood of illness: males are more frequently affected than females, and most cases occur in the 40- to 70-year age group. Risk factors include smoking, alcohol abuse, cancer, diabetes, chronic respiratory or kidney disease and immunosuppression, as in transplant recipients. Pontiac fever is a milder, self-limiting disease with a high attack rate and an onset (5 h to 3 days) and symptoms similar to those of influenza: fever, headache, nausea, vomiting, aching muscles and coughing. Studies of seroprevalence of antibodies indicate that many infections are asymptomatic.

Source and occurrence

Legionella spp. are members of the natural flora of many freshwater environments, such as rivers, streams and impoundments, where they occur in relatively low numbers. However, they thrive in certain human-made water environments, such as water cooling devices (cooling towers and evaporative condensers) associated with air conditioning systems, hot water distribution systems and spas, which provide suitable temperatures (25–50 °C) and conditions for their multiplication. Devices that support multiplication of *Legionella* have been associated with outbreaks of Legionnaires' disease. *Legionella* survive and grow in biofilms and sediments and are more easily detected from swab samples than from flowing water. Legionellae can be ingested by trophozoites of certain amoebae such as *Acanthamoeba*, *Hartmanella* and *Naegleria*, which may play a role in their persistence in water environments.

Routes of exposure

The most common route of infection is the inhalation of aerosols containing the bacteria. Such aerosols can be generated by contaminated cooling towers, warm water showers, humidifiers and spas. Aspiration has also been identified as a route of infection in some cases associated with contaminated water, food and ice. There is no evidence of person-to-person transmission.

Significance in drinking-water

Legionella spp. are common waterborne organisms, and devices such as cooling towers, hot water systems and spas that utilize mains water have been associated with outbreaks of infection. Owing to the prevalence of *Legionella*, the potential for ingress into drinking-water systems should be considered as a possibility, and control measures should be employed to reduce the likelihood of survival and multiplication. Disinfection strategies designed to minimize biofilm growth and temperature control can minimize the potential risk from *Legionella* spp. The organisms are sensitive to disinfection. Monochloramine has been shown to be particularly effective, probably due to its stability and greater effectiveness against biofilms. Water temperature is an important element of control strategies. Wherever possible, water temperatures should be kept outside the range of 25–50 °C. In hot water systems, storages should be maintained above 55 °C, and similar temperatures throughout associated pipework will prevent growth of the organism. However, maintaining temperatures of hot water above 50 °C may represent a scalding risk in young children, the elderly and other vulnerable groups. Where temperatures in hot or cold water distribution systems cannot be maintained outside the range of 25–50 °C, greater attention to disinfection and strategies aimed at limiting development of biofilms are required. Accumulation of sludge, scale, rust, algae or slime deposits in water distribution systems supports the growth of *Legionella* spp., as does stagnant water. Systems that are kept clean and flowing are less likely to support excess growth of *Legionella* spp. Care should also be taken to select plumbing materials that do not support microbial growth and the development of biofilms.

Legionella spp. represent a particular concern in devices such as cooling towers and hot water systems in large buildings. As discussed in chapter 6, specific WSPs incorporating control measures for *Legionella* spp. should be developed for these buildings. *Legionella* are not detected by HPC techniques, and *E. coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) is not a suitable index for the presence/absence of this organism.

Selected bibliography

Codony F et al. (2002) Factors promoting colonization by legionellae in residential water distribution systems: an environmental case–control survey. *European Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases*, 21:717–721.

Emmerson AM (2001) Emerging waterborne infections in health-care settings. *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, 7:272–276.

Rusin PA et al. (1997) Risk assessment of opportunistic bacterial pathogens in drinking-water. *Reviews of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*, 152:57–83.

WHO (in preparation) *Legionella and the prevention of legionellosis*. Geneva, World Health Organization.

11.1.10 Mycobacterium

General description

The tuberculous or “typical” species of *Mycobacterium*, such as *M. tuberculosis*, *M. bovis*, *M. africanum* and *M. leprae*, have only human or animal reservoirs and are not transmitted by water. In contrast, the non-tuberculous or “atypical” species of *Mycobacterium* are natural inhabitants of a variety of water environments. These aerobic, rod-shaped and acid-fast bacteria grow slowly in suitable water environments and on culture media. Typical examples include the species *M. gordonae*, *M. kansasii*, *M. marinum*, *M. scrofulaceum*, *M. xenopi*, *M. intracellulare* and *M. avium* and the more rapid growers *M. chelonae* and *M. fortuitum*. The term *M. avium* complex has been used to describe a group of pathogenic species including *M. avium* and *M. intracellulare*. However, other atypical mycobacteria are also pathogenic. A distinct feature of all *Mycobacterium* spp. is a cell wall with high lipid content, which is used in identification of the organisms using acid-fast staining.

Human health effects

Atypical *Mycobacterium* spp. can cause a range of diseases involving the skeleton, lymph nodes, skin and soft tissues, as well as the respiratory, gastrointestinal and genitourinary tracts. Manifestations include pulmonary disease, Buruli ulcer, osteomyelitis and septic arthritis in people with no known predisposing factors. These bacteria are a major cause of disseminated infections in immunocompromised patients and are a common cause of death in HIV-positive persons.

Source and occurrence

Atypical *Mycobacterium* spp. multiply in a variety of suitable water environments, notably biofilms. One of the most commonly occurring species is *M. gordonae*. Other species have also been isolated from water, including *M. avium*, *M. intracellulare*, *M. kansasii*, *M. fortuitum* and *M. chelonae*. High numbers of atypical *Mycobacterium* spp. may occur in distribution systems after events that dislodge biofilms, such as flushing or flow reversals. They are relatively resistant to treatment and disinfection and have been detected in well operated and maintained drinking-water supplies with HPC less than 500/ml and total chlorine residuals of up to 2.8 mg/litre. The growth of these organisms in biofilms reduces the effectiveness of disinfection. In one survey, the organisms were detected in 54% of ice and 35% of public drinking-water samples.

Routes of exposure

Principal routes of infection appear to be inhalation, contact and ingestion of contaminated water. Infections by various species have been associated with their presence in drinking-water supplies. In 1968, an endemic of *M. kansasii* infections was associated with the presence of the organisms in the drinking-water supply, and the spread of the organisms was associated with aerosols from showerheads. In Rotterdam, Netherlands, an investigation into the frequent isolation of *M. kansasii* from clinical specimens revealed the presence of the same strains, confirmed by phage type and weak nitrase activity, in tap water. An increase in numbers of infections by the *M. avium* complex in Massachusetts, USA, has also been attributed to their incidence in drinking-water. In all these cases, there is only circumstantial evidence of a causal relationship between the occurrence of the bacteria in drinking-water and human disease. Infections have been linked to contaminated water in spas.

Significance in drinking-water

Detections of atypical mycobacteria in drinking-water and the identified routes of transmission suggest that drinking-water supplies are a plausible source of infection. There are limited data on the effectiveness of control measures that could be applied to reduce the potential risk from these organisms. One study showed that a water treatment plant could achieve a 99% reduction in numbers of mycobacteria from raw water. Atypical mycobacteria are relatively resistant to disinfection. Persistent residual disinfectant should reduce numbers of mycobacteria in the water column but is unlikely to be effective against organisms present in biofilms. Control measures that are designed to minimize biofilm growth, including treatment to optimize organic carbon removal, restriction of the residence time of water in distribution systems and maintenance of disinfectant residuals, could result in less growth of these organisms. Mycobacteria are not detected by HPC techniques, and *E. coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) is not a suitable index for the presence/absence of this organism.

Selected bibliography

Bartram J et al., eds. (2003) *Heterotrophic plate counts and drinking-water safety: the significance of HPCs for water quality and human health*. WHO Emerging Issues in Water and Infectious Disease Series. London, IWA Publishing.

Bartram J et al., eds. (2004) *Pathogenic mycobacteria in water: A guide to public health consequences, monitoring and management*. Geneva, World Health Organization.

Covert TC et al. (1999) Occurrence of nontuberculous mycobacteria in environmental samples. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, 65:2492–2496.

Falkinham JO, Norton CD, LeChevallier MW (2001) Factors influencing numbers of *Mycobacterium avium*, *Mycobacterium intracellulare* and other mycobacteria in drinking water distribution systems. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, 66:1225–1231.

Grabow WOK (1996) Waterborne diseases: Update on water quality assessment and control. *Water SA*, 22:193–202.

Rusin PA et al. (1997) Risk assessment of opportunistic bacterial pathogens in drinking-water. *Reviews of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology*, 152:57–83.

Singh N, Yu VL (1994) Potable water and *Mycobacterium avium* complex in HIV patients: is prevention possible? *Lancet*, 343:1110–1111.

Von Reyn CF et al. (1994) Persistent colonization of potable water as a source of *Mycobacterium avium* infection in AIDS. *Lancet*, 343:1137–1141.

11.1.11 Pseudomonas aeruginosa

General description

Pseudomonas aeruginosa is a member of the family Pseudomonadaceae and is a polarly flagellated, aerobic, Gram-negative rod. When grown in suitable media, it produces the non-fluorescent bluish pigment pyocyanin. Many strains also produce the fluorescent green pigment pyoverdin. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, like other fluorescent pseudomonads, produces catalase, oxidase and ammonia from arginine and can grow on citrate as the sole source of carbon.

Human health effects

Pseudomonas aeruginosa can cause a range of infections but rarely causes serious illness in healthy individuals without some predisposing factor. It predominantly colonizes damaged sites such as burn and surgical wounds, the respiratory tract of people with underlying disease and physically damaged eyes. From these sites, it may invade the body, causing destructive lesions or septicaemia and meningitis. Cystic fibrosis and immunocompromised patients are prone to colonization with *P. aeruginosa,* which may lead to serious progressive pulmonary infections. Water-related folliculitis and ear infections are associated with warm, moist environments such as swimming pools and spas. Many strains are resistant to a range of antimicrobial agents, which can increase the significance of the organism in hospital settings.

Source and occurrence

Pseudomonas aeruginosa is a common environmental organism and can be found in faeces, soil, water and sewage. It can multiply in water environments and also on the surface of suitable organic materials in contact with water. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is a recognized cause of hospital-acquired infections with potentially serious complications. It has been isolated from a range of moist environments such as sinks, water baths, hot water systems, showers and spa pools.

Routes of exposure

The main route of infection is by exposure of susceptible tissue, notably wounds and mucous membranes, to contaminated water or contamination of surgical instruments. Cleaning of contact lenses with contaminated water can cause a form of keratitis. Ingestion of drinking-water is not an important source of infection.

Significance in drinking-water

Although *P. aeruginosa* can be significant in certain settings such as health care facilities, there is no evidence that normal uses of drinking-water supplies are a source of infection in the general population. However, the presence of high numbers of *P. aeruginosa* in potable water, notably in packaged water, can be associated with complaints about taste, odour and turbidity. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is sensitive to disinfection, and entry into distribution systems can be minimized by adequate disinfection. Control measures that are designed to minimize biofilm growth, including treatment to optimize organic carbon removal, restriction of the residence time of water in distribution systems and maintenance of disinfectant residuals, should reduce the growth of these organisms. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is detected by HPC, which can be used together with parameters such as disinfectant residuals to indicate conditions that could support growth of these organisms. However, as *P. aeruginosa* is a common environmental organism, *E. coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) cannot be used for this purpose.

Selected bibliography

Bartram J et al., eds. (2003) *Heterotrophic plate counts and drinking-water safety: the significance of HPCs for water quality and human health*. WHO Emerging Issues in Water and Infectious Disease Series. London, IWA Publishing.

de Victorica J, Galván M (2001) *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* as an indicator of health risk in water for human consumption. *Water Science and Technology*, 43:49–52.

Hardalo C, Edberg SC (1997) *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*: Assessment of risk from drinking-water. *Critical Reviews in Microbiology*, 23:47–75.

11.1.12 Salmonella

General description

Salmonella spp. belong to the family Enterobacteriaceae. They are motile, Gram-negative bacilli that do not ferment lactose, but most produce hydrogen sulfide or gas from carbohydrate fermentation. Originally, they were grouped into more than 2000 species (serotypes) according to their somatic (O) and flagellar (H) antigens (Kauffmann-White classification). It is now considered that this classification is below species level and that there are actually no more than 2–3 species (*Salmonella enterica* or *Salmonella choleraesuis*, *Salmonella bongori* and *Salmonella typhi*), with the serovars being subspecies. All of the enteric pathogens except *S. typhi* are members of the species *S. enterica*. Convention has dictated that subspecies are abbreviated, so that *S. enterica* serovar Paratyphi A becomes *S.* Paratyphi A.

Human health effects

Salmonella infections typically cause four clinical manifestations: gastroenteritis (ranging from mild to fulminant diarrhoea, nausea and vomiting), bacteraemia or septicaemia (high spiking fever with positive blood cultures), typhoid fever / enteric fever (sustained fever with or without diarrhoea) and a carrier state in persons with previous infections. In regard to enteric illness, *Salmonella* spp. can be divided into two fairly distinct groups: the typhoidal species/serovars (*Salmonella typhi* and *S.* Paratyphi) and the remaining non-typhoidal species/serovars. Symptoms of non-typhoidal gastroenteritis appear from 6 to 72 h after ingestion of contaminated food or water. Diarrhoea lasts 3–5 days and is accompanied by fever and abdominal pain. Usually the disease is self-limiting. The incubation period for typhoid fever can be 1–14 days but is usually 3–5 days. Typhoid fever is a more severe illness and can be fatal. Although typhoid is uncommon in areas with good sanitary systems, it is still prevalent elsewhere, and there are many millions of cases each year.

Source and occurrence

Salmonella spp. are widely distributed in the environment, but some species or serovars show host specificity. Notably, *S. typhi* and generally *S.* Paratyphi are restricted to humans, although livestock can occasionally be a source of *S.* Paratyphi. A large number of serovars, including *S.* Typhimurium and *S.* Enteritidis, infect humans and also a wide range of animals, including poultry, cows, pigs, sheep, birds and even reptiles. The pathogens typically gain entry into water systems through faecal contamination from sewage discharges, livestock and wild animals. Contamination has been detected in a wide variety of foods and milk.

Routes of exposure

Salmonella is spread by the faecal–oral route. Infections with non-typhoidal serovars are primarily associated with person-to-person contact, the consumption of a variety of contaminated foods and exposure to animals. Infection by typhoid species is associated with the consumption of contaminated water or food, with direct person-to-person spread being uncommon.

Significance in drinking-water

Waterborne typhoid fever outbreaks have devastating public health implications. However, despite their widespread occurrence, non-typhoidal *Salmonella* spp. rarely cause drinking-water-borne outbreaks. Transmission, most commonly involving *S.* Typhimurium, has been associated with the consumption of contaminated groundwater and surface water supplies. In an outbreak of illness associated with a communal rainwater supply, bird faeces were implicated as a source of contamination. *Salmonella* spp. are relatively sensitive to disinfection. Within a WSP, control measures that can be applied to manage risk include protection of raw water supplies from animal and human waste, adequate treatment and protection of water during distribution. *Escherichia coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) is a generally reliable index for *Salmonella* spp. in drinking-water supplies.

Selected bibliography

Angulo FJ et al. (1997) A community waterborne outbreak of salmonellosis and the effectiveness of a boil water order. *American Journal of Public Health*, 87:580–584.

Escartin EF et al. (2002) Potential *Salmonella* transmission from ornamental fountains. *Journal of Environmental Health*, 65:9–12.

Koplan JP et al. (1978) Contaminated roof-collected rainwater as a possible cause of an outbreak of salmonellosis. *Journal of Hygiene*, 81:303–309.

11.1.13 Shigella

General description

Shigella spp. are Gram-negative, non-spore-forming, non-motile, rod-like members of the family Enterobacteriaceae, which grow in the presence or absence of oxygen. Members of the genus have a complex antigenic pattern, and classification is based on their somatic O antigens, many of which are shared with other enteric bacilli, including *E. coli*. There are four species: *S. dysenteriae*, *S. flexneri*, *S. boydii* and *S. sonnei*.

Human health effects

Shigella spp. can cause serious intestinal diseases, including bacillary dysentery. Over 2 million infections occur each year, resulting in about 600 000 deaths, predominantly in developing countries. Most cases of *Shigella* infection occur in children under 10 years of age. The incubation period for shigellosis is usually 24–72 h. Ingestion of as few as 10–100 organisms may lead to infection, which is substantially less than the infective dose of most other enteric bacteria. Abdominal cramps, fever and watery diarrhoea occur early in the disease. All species can produce severe disease, but illness due to *S. sonnei* is usually relatively mild and self-limiting. In the case of *S. dysenteriae*, clinical manifestations may proceed to an ulceration process, with bloody diarrhoea and high concentrations of neutrofils in the stool. The production of Shiga toxin by the pathogen plays an important role in this outcome. *Shigella* spp. seem to be better adapted to cause human disease than most other enteric bacterial pathogens.

Source and occurrence

Humans and other higher primates appear to be the only natural hosts for the shigellae. The bacteria remain localized in the intestinal epithelial cells of their hosts. Epidemics of shigellosis occur in crowded communities and where hygiene is poor. Many cases of shigellosis are associated with day care centres, prisons and psychiatric institutions. Military field groups and travellers to areas with poor sanitation are also prone to infection.

Routes of exposure

Shigella spp. are enteric pathogens predominantly transmitted by the faecal–oral route through person-to-person contact, contaminated food and water. Flies have also been identified as a transmission vector from contaminated faecal waste.

Significance in drinking-water

A number of large waterborne outbreaks of shigellosis have been recorded. As the organisms are not particularly stable in water environments, their presence in drinking-water indicates recent human faecal pollution. Available data on prevalence in water supplies may be an underestimate, because detection techniques generally used can have a relatively low sensitivity and reliability. The control of *Shigella* spp. in drinking-water supplies is of special public health importance in view of the severity of the disease caused. *Shigella* spp. are relatively sensitive to disinfection. Within a WSP, control measures that can be applied to manage potential risk include protection of raw water supplies from human waste, adequate treatment and protection of water during distribution. *Escherichia coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) is a generally reliable index for *Shigella* spp. in drinking-water supplies.

Selected bibliography

Alamanos Y et al. (2000) A community waterborne outbreak of gastro-enteritis attributed to *Shigella sonnei*. *Epidemiology and Infection*, 125:499–503.

Pegram GC, Rollins N, Espay Q (1998) Estimating the cost of diarrhoea and epidemic dysentery in Kwa-Zulu-Natal and South Africa. *Water SA*, 24:11–20.

11.1.14 Staphylococcus aureus

General description

Staphylococcus aureus is an aerobic or anaerobic, non-motile, non-spore-forming, catalase- and coagulase-positive, Gram-positive coccus, usually arranged in grapelike irregular clusters. The genus *Staphylococcus* contains at least 15 different species. Apart from *S. aureus*, the species *S. epidermidis* and *S. saprophyticus* are also associated with disease in humans.

Human health effects

Although *Staphylococcus aureus* is a common member of the human microflora, it can produce disease through two different mechanisms. One is based on the ability of the organisms to multiply and spread widely in tissues, and the other is based on the ability of the organisms to produce extracellular enzymes and toxins. Infections based on the multiplication of the organisms are a significant problem in hospitals and other health care facilities. Multiplication in tissues can result in manifestations such as boils, skin sepsis, post-operative wound infections, enteric infections, septicaemia, endocarditis, osteomyelitis and pneumonia. The onset of clinical symptoms for these infections is relatively long, usually several days. Gastrointestinal disease (enterocolitis or food poisoning) is caused by a heat-stable staphylococcal enterotoxin and characterized by projectile vomiting, diarrhoea, fever, abdominal cramps, electrolyte imbalance and loss of fluids. Onset of disease in this case has a characteristic short incubation period of 1–8 h. The same applies to the toxic shock syndrome caused by toxic shock syndrome toxin-1.

Source and occurrence

Staphylococcus aureus is relatively widespread in the environment but is found mainly on the skin and mucous membranes of animals. The organism is a member of the normal microbial flora of the human skin and is found in the nasopharynx of 20–30% of adults at any one time. Staphylococci are occasionally detected in the gastrointestinal tract and can be detected in sewage. *Staphylococcus aureus* can be released by human contact into water environments such as swimming pools, spa pools and other recreational waters. It has also been detected in drinking-water supplies.

Routes of exposure

Hand contact is by far the most common route of transmission. Inadequate hygiene can lead to contamination of food. Foods such as ham, poultry and potato and egg salads kept at room or higher temperature offer an ideal environment for the multiplication of *S. aureus* and the release of toxins. The consumption of foods containing *S. aureus* toxins can lead to enterotoxin food poisoning within a few hours.

Significance in drinking-water

Although *S. aureus* can occur in drinking-water supplies, there is no evidence of transmission through the consumption of such water. Although staphylococci are slightly more resistant to chlorine residuals than *E. coli*, their presence in water is readily controlled by conventional treatment and disinfection processes. Since faecal material is not their usual source, *E. coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) is not a suitable index for *S. aureus* in drinking-water supplies.

Selected bibliography

Antai SP (1987) Incidence of *Staphylococcus aureus*, coliforms and antibiotic-resistant strains of *Escherichia coli* in rural water supplies in Port Harcourt. *Journal of Applied Bacteriology*, 62:371–375.

LeChevallier MW, Seidler RJ (1980) *Staphylococcus aureus* in rural drinking-water. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, 39:739–742.

11.1.15 Tsukamurella

General description

The genus *Tsukamurella* belongs to the family Nocardiaceae. *Tsukamurella* spp. are Gram-positive, weakly or variably acid-fast, non-motile, obligate aerobic, irregular rod-shaped bacteria. They are actinomycetes related to *Rhodococcus*, *Nocardia* and *Mycobacterium*. The genus was created in 1988 to accommodate a group of chemically unique organisms characterized by a series of very long chain (68–76 carbons), highly unsaturated mycolic acids, *meso*-diaminopimelic acid and arabinogalactan, common to the genus *Corynebacterium*. The type species is *T. paurometabola*, and the following additional species were proposed in the 1990s: *T. wratislaviensis*, *T. inchonensis*, *T. pulmonis*, *T. tyrosinosolvens* and *T. strandjordae*.

Human health effects

Tsukamurella spp. cause disease mainly in immunocompromised individuals. Infections with these microorganisms have been associated with chronic lung diseases, immune suppression (leukaemia, tumours, HIV/AIDS infection) and post-operative wound infections. *Tsukamurella* were reported in four cases of catheter-related bacteraemia and in individual cases including chronic lung infection, necrotizing tenosynovitis with subcutaneous abscesses, cutaneous and bone infections, meningitis and peritonitis.

Source and occurrence

Tsukamurella spp. exist primarily as environmental saprophytes in soil, water and foam (thick stable scum on aeration vessels and sedimentation tanks) of activated sludge. *Tsukamurella* are represented in HPC populations in drinking-water.

Routes of exposure

Tsukamurella spp. appear to be transmitted through devices such as catheters or lesions. The original source of the contaminating organisms is unknown.

Significance in drinking-water

Tsukamurella organisms have been detected in drinking-water supplies, but the significance is unclear. There is no evidence of a link between organisms in water and illness. As *Tsukamurella* is an environmental organism, *E. coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) is not a suitable index for this organism.

Selected bibliography

Bartram J et al., eds. (2003) *Heterotrophic plate counts and drinking-water safety: the significance of HPCs for water quality and human health*. WHO Emerging Issues in Water and Infectious Disease Series. London, IWA Publishing.

Kattar MM et al. (2001) *Tsukamurella strandjordae* sp. nov., a proposed new species causing sepsis. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology*, 39:1467–1476.

Larkin JA et al. (1999) Infection of a knee prosthesis with *Tsukamurella* species. *Southern Medical Journal*, 92:831–832.

11.1.16 Vibrio

General description

Vibrio spp. are small, curved (comma-shaped), Gram-negative bacteria with a single polar flagellum. Species are typed according to their O antigens. There are a number of pathogenic species, including *V. cholerae*, *V. parahaemolyticus* and *V. vulnificus*. *Vibrio cholerae* is the only pathogenic species of significance from freshwater environments. While a number of serotypes can cause diarrhoea, only O1 and O139 currently cause the classical cholera symptoms in which a proportion of cases suffer fulminating and severe watery diarrhoea. The O1 serovar has been further divided into "classical" and "El Tor" biotypes. The latter is distinguished by features such as the ability to produce a dialysable heat-labile haemolysin, active against sheep and goat red blood cells. The classical biotype is considered responsible for the first six cholera pandemics, while the El Tor biotype is responsible for the seventh pandemic that commenced in 1961. Strains of *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 that cause cholera produce an enterotoxin (cholera toxin) that alters the ionic fluxes across the intestinal mucosa, resulting in substantial loss of water and electrolytes in liquid stools. Other factors associated with infection are an adhesion factor and an attachment pilus. Not all strains of serotypes O1 or O139 possess the virulence factors, and they are rarely possessed by non-O1/O139 strains.

Human health effects

Cholera outbreaks continue to occur in many areas of the developing world. Symptoms are caused by heat-labile cholera enterotoxin carried by toxigenic strains of *V.*

cholerae O1/O139. A large percentage of infected persons do not develop illness; about 60% of the classical and 75% of the El Tor group infections are asymptomatic. Symptomatic illness ranges from mild or moderate to severe disease. The initial symptoms of cholera are an increase in peristalses followed by loose, watery and mucus-flecked "rice-water" stools that may cause a patient to lose as much as 10–15 litres of liquid per day. Decreasing gastric acidity by administration of sodium bicarbonate reduces the infective dose of *V. cholerae* O1 from more than 10^8 to about 10^4 organisms. Case fatality rates vary according to facilities and preparedness. As many as 60% of untreated patients may die as a result of severe dehydration and loss of electrolytes, but well established diarrhoeal disease control programmes can reduce fatalities to less than 1%. Non-toxigenic strains of *V. cholerae* can cause self-limiting gastroenteritis, wound infections and bacteraemia.

Source and occurrence

Non-toxigenic *V. cholerae* is widely distributed in water environments, but toxigenic strains are not distributed as widely. Humans are an established source of toxigenic *V. cholerae*; in the presence of disease, the organism can be detected in sewage. Although *V. cholerae* O1 can be isolated from water in areas without disease, the strains are not generally toxigenic. Toxigenic *V. cholerae* has also been found in association with live copepods as well as other aquatic organisms, including molluscs, crustaceans, plants, algae and cyanobacteria. Numbers associated with these aquatic organisms are often higher than in the water column. Non-toxigenic *V. cholerae* has been isolated from birds and herbivores in areas far away from marine and coastal waters. The prevalence of *V. cholerae* decreases as water temperatures fall below 20 °C.

Routes of exposure

Cholera is typically transmitted by the faecal–oral route, and the infection is predominantly contracted by the ingestion of faecally contaminated water and food. The high numbers required to cause infection make person-to-person contact an unlikely route of transmission.

Significance in drinking-water

Contamination of water due to poor sanitation is largely responsible for transmission, but this does not fully explain the seasonality of recurrence, and factors other than poor sanitation must play a role. The presence of the pathogenic *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 serotypes in drinking-water supplies is of major public health importance and can have serious health and economic implications in the affected communities. *Vibrio cholerae* is highly sensitive to disinfection processes. Within a WSP, control measures that can be applied to manage potential risk from toxigenic *V. cholerae* include protection of raw water supplies from human waste, adequate treatment and protection of water during distribution. *Vibrio cholerae* O1 and non-O1 have been detected in the absence of *E. coli*, and this organism (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) is not a reliable index for *V. cholerae* in drinking-water.

Selected bibliography

Kaper JB, Morris JG, Levine MM (1995) Cholera. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews*, 8:48–86.

Ogg JE, Ryder RA, Smith HL (1989) Isolation of *Vibrio cholerae* from aquatic birds in Colorado and Utah. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, 55:95–99.

Rhodes JB, Schweitzer D, Ogg JE (1985) Isolation of non-O1 *Vibrio cholerae* associated with enteric disease of herbivores in western Colorado. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology*, 22:572–575.

WHO (2002) *Vibrio cholerae*. In: *Guidelines for drinking-water quality*, 2nd ed. *Addendum: Microbiological agents in drinking water*. Geneva, World Health Organization, pp. 119–142.

11.1.17 Yersinia

General description

The genus *Yersinia* is classified in the family Enterobacteriaceae and comprises seven species. The species *Y. pestis*, *Y. pseudotuberculosis* and certain serotypes of *Y. enterocolitica* are pathogens for humans. *Yersinia pestis* is the cause of bubonic plague through contact with rodents and their fleas. *Yersinia* spp. are Gram-negative rods that are motile at 25 °C but not at 37 °C.

Human health effects

Yersinia enterocolitica penetrates cells of the intestinal mucosa, causing ulcerations of the terminal ilium. Yersiniosis generally presents as an acute gastroenteritis with diarrhoea, fever and abdominal pain. Other clinical manifestations include greatly enlarged painful lymph nodes referred to as “buboes.” The disease seems to be more acute in children than in adults.

Source and occurrence

Domestic and wild animals are the principal reservoir for *Yersinia* spp.; pigs are the major reservoir of pathogenic *Y. enterocolitica*, whereas rodents and small animals are the major reservoir of *Y. pseudotuberculosis*. Pathogenic *Y. enterocolitica* has been detected in sewage and polluted surface waters. However, *Y. enterocolitica* strains detected in drinking-water are more commonly non-pathogenic strains of probable environmental origin. At least some species and strains of *Yersinia* seem to be able to replicate in water environments if at least trace amounts of organic nitrogen are present, even at temperatures as low as 4 °C.

Routes of exposure

Yersinia spp. are transmitted by the faecal–oral route, with the major source of infection considered to be foods, particularly meat and meat products, milk and dairy products. Ingestion of contaminated water is also a potential source of infection. Direct transmission from person to person and from animals to humans is also known to occur.

Significance in drinking-water

Although most *Yersinia* spp. detected in water are probably non-pathogenic, circumstantial evidence has been presented to support transmission of *Y. enterocolitica* and *Y. pseudotuberculosis* to humans from untreated drinking-water. The most likely source of pathogenic *Yersinia* spp. is human or animal waste. The organisms are sensitive to disinfection processes. Within a WSP, control measures that can be used to minimize the presence of pathogenic *Yersinia* spp. in drinking-water supplies include protection of raw water supplies from human and animal waste, adequate disinfection and protection of water during distribution. Owing to the long survival and/or growth of some strains of *Yersinia* spp. in water, *E. coli* (or, alternatively, thermotolerant coliforms) is not a suitable index for the presence/absence of these organisms in drinking-water.

Selected bibliography

Aleksic S, Bockemuhl J (1988) Serological and biochemical characteristics of 416 *Yersinia* strains from well water and drinking water plants in the Federal Republic of Germany: lack of evidence that these strains are of public health significance. *Zentralblatt für Bakteriologie, Mikrobiologie und Hygiene B*, 185:527–533.

Inoue M et al. (1988) Three outbreaks of *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* infection. *Zentralblatt für Bakteriologie, Mikrobiologie und Hygiene B*, 186:504–511.

Ostroff SM et al. (1994) Sources of sporadic *Yersinia enterocolitica* infections in Norway: a prospective case control study. *Epidemiology and Infection*, 112:133–141.

Waage AS et al. (1999) Detection of low numbers of pathogenic *Yersinia enterocolitica* in environmental water and sewage samples by nested polymerase chain reaction. *Journal of Applied Microbiology*, 87:814–821.

11.2 Viral pathogens

Viruses associated with waterborne transmission are predominantly those that can infect the gastrointestinal tract and are excreted in the faeces of infected humans (enteric viruses). With the exception of hepatitis E, humans are considered to be the only source of human infectious species. Enteric viruses typically cause acute disease with a short incubation period. Water may also play a role in the transmission of other viruses with different modes of action. As a group, viruses can cause a wide variety of infections and symptoms involving different routes of transmission, routes and sites of infection and routes of excretion. The combination of these routes and sites of infection can vary and will not always follow expected patterns. For example, viruses that are considered to primarily cause respiratory infections and symptoms are usually transmitted by person-to-person spread of respiratory droplets. However, some of these respiratory viruses may be discharged in faeces, leading to potential contamination of water and subsequent transmission through aerosols and droplets. Another example is viruses excreted in urine, such as polyomaviruses, which could contaminate and then be potentially transmitted by water, with possible long-term health effects, such as cancer, that are not readily associated epidemiologically with waterborne transmission.

11.2.1 Adenoviruses

General description

The family Adenoviridae is classified into the two genera *Mastadenovirus* (mammal hosts) and *Aviadenovirus* (avian hosts). Adenoviruses are widespread in nature, infecting birds, mammals and amphibians. To date, 51 antigenic types of human adenoviruses (HAds) have been described. HAds have been classified into six groups (A–F) on the basis of their physical, chemical and biological properties. Adenoviruses consist of a double-stranded DNA genome in a non-enveloped icosahedral capsid with a diameter of about 80 nm and unique fibres. The subgroups A–E grow readily in cell culture, but serotypes 40 and 41 are fastidious and do not grow well. Identification of serotypes 40 and 41 in environmental samples is generally based on polymerase chain reaction (PCR) techniques with or without initial cell culture amplification.

Human health effects

HAds cause a wide range of infections with a spectrum of clinical manifestations. These include infections of the gastrointestinal tract (gastroenteritis), the respiratory tract (acute respiratory diseases, pneumonia, pharyngoconjunctival fever), the urinary tract (cervicitis, urethritis, haemorrhagic cystitis) and the eyes (epidemic keratoconjunctivitis, also known as "shipyard eye"; pharyngoconjunctival fever, also known as "swimming pool conjunctivitis"). Different serotypes are associated with specific illnesses; for example, types 40 and 41 are the main cause of enteric illness. Adenoviruses are an important source of childhood gastroenteritis. In general, infants and children are most susceptible to adenovirus infections, and many infections are asymptomatic. High attack rates in outbreaks imply that infecting doses are low.

Source and occurrence

Adenoviruses are excreted in large numbers in human faeces and are known to occur in sewage, raw water sources and treated drinking-water supplies worldwide. Although the subgroup of enteric adenoviruses (mainly types 40 and 41) is a major cause of gastroenteritis worldwide, notably in developing communities, little is known about the prevalence of these enteric adenoviruses in water sources. The limited availability